

THE COMPENDIUM OF THE SUPER-DOCTRINE (PHILOSOPHY)
ABHIDHARMASAMUCCAYA
by ASAṄGA

Translated and annotated by Walpola Rahula

second edition, 1980

translated from the French by Gelongma Karma Migme Chodron

2000

This translation is dedicated to my beloved teacher,

Khenchen the Venerable Thrangu Rinpoche

A. INTRODUCTION.....	7
AA. ASAṄGA	7
AB. ABHIDHARMASAMUCCAYA.....	11
ABA. First Part.....	11
ABB. Second Part.....	12
AC. The Translation	16
B. THE COMPENDIUM OF CHARACTERISTICS (Lakṣaṇasamuccaya).....	1
BA. CHAPTER ONE: Three dharmas (tridharma)	1
BAA. FIRST SECTION Three Dharmas (Skandha, Dhātu, Āyatana)	1
BAA.1. How many (kati),.....	1
BAA.2. For what purpose (kim upādāya),.....	3
BAA.3. Characteristics (lakṣaṇa),.....	3
BAA.4. Arrangement/Definition (vyavasthāna) [MW: condition, state, circumstances].....	5
BAA.4.1. Arrangement/Definition of the Aggregates	5
BAA.4.1.1. Arrangement/Definition of the aggregate of form.....	5
BAA.4.1.2. Definition of the aggregate of sensation	6
BAA.4.1.3. Definition of the aggregate of perception	7
BAA.4.1.4. Definition of the aggregate of formations	7
BAA.4.1.4.a. (A) Volition/intention, together with the other mental phenomena (caitasika dharma).....	8
BAA.4.1.4.b. (B) Formations not associated with mind (cittaviprayukta saṃskāra)....	17
BAA.4.1.5. Definition of the aggregate of consciousness	19
BAA.4.2. Definition of the elements.....	21
BAA.4.3. Definition of the sphere	23
BAA.5. Example (drśṭānta).....	23
BAA.6. Succession/gradation (anukrama)	24
BAA.7. Meaning (artha).....	25
BAB. SECOND SECTION Division/Classification of Aspects (Prakāraprabheda).....	27
BAB.1. Summary statement on the various methods of classifying the aggregates, elements and spheres	56
BB. CHAPTER II Grouping (Samgraha)	59
BC. CHAPTER III: Connectedness (Samprayoga)	62
BD. CHAPTER IV: Accompaniment (Samanvāgama).....	64
C. COMPENDIUM OF ASCERTAINMENT (VINIŚCAYASAMUCCAYA)	66
CA. CHAPTER ONE ASCERTAINMENT OF THE TRUTHS (Satyaviniścaya).....	66
CAA. FIRST SECTION: Duḥkhasatya.....	66

CAA.1.	The truth of suffering in reference to the life of beings and the basis of life	66
CAA.2.	The eight types of suffering	68
CAA.3.	The six types of suffering	69
CAA.4.	The two types of suffering	69
CAA.5.	The four general characteristics of the truth of suffering	70
CAA.5.1.	The general characteristic of impermanence	70
CAA.5.2.	The general characteristic of suffering	72
CAA.5.3.	The general characteristic of emptiness	73
CAA.5.4.	The general characteristic of non-self.....	74
CAA.6.	The momentary characteristic of impermanence	74
CAA.7.	The momentary characteristic of matter	74
CAA.8.	The four great elements and the derivatives	74
CAA.9.	The atom established by ultimate analysis	75
CAA.10.	Another set of eight types of suffering	75
CAA.11.	The Three types of death	76
CAA.12.	Intermediate existence.....	77
CAB.	SECOND SECTION: Samudayasatya.....	78
CAB.1.	The defilements (kleśa)	78
CAB.1.1.	Enumeration (parisaṃkhyāna).....	79
CAB.1.2.	Characteristics (lakṣaṇa).....	79
CAB.1.3.	Sudden appearance (utthāna).....	79
CAB.1.4.	Object (ālambana).....	79
CAB.1.5.	Connection (samprayoga)	79
CAB.1.6.	Synonyms (paryāya)	80
CAB.1.7.	Depravities (vipratipatti).....	92
CAB.1.8.	Realms (dhātu)	92
CAB.1.9.	Groupings (nikāya)	93
CAB.1.10.	Abandonment (prahāṇa)	94
CAB.2.	Actions dominated by the defilements (kleśādhipateyakarma)	95
CAB.2.1.	2 Types of action	96
CAB.2.2.	10 types of bad or good action	96
CAB.2.3.	3 Types of determinate actions	98
CAB.2.4.	3 Types of results of the 10 types of bad or good actions	99
CAB.2.4.1.	Projecting and completing action.....	99
CAB.2.4.2.	The order of the results of maturation	100
CAB.2.5.	3 Types of action: meritorious, demeritorious, unchanging.....	100

CAB.2.6.	4 Types of Action: common, non-common, strong, weak	102
CAB.2.7.	Retribution vs. the possibility of the religious life and nirvāṇa.....	104
CAB.2.8.	3 types of action: disciplined, undisciplined, neither-disciplined-nor undisciplined..	105
CAB.2.8.1.	disciplined action: 3 types.....	105
CAB.2.8.1.a.	The code of Discipline	105
CAB.2.8.1.b.	The discipline of meditation.....	107
CAB.2.8.1.c.	The discipline of the pure realm	107
CAB.2.8.2.	Undisciplined action	107
CAB.2.8.3.	action that is neither disciplined nor undisciplined	107
CAB.2.9.	3 types of action: producing a pleasant, unpleasant and neither pleasant nor unpleasant sensation.....	107
CAB.2.10.	3 types of action: produces results in the present lifetime, etc	108
CAB.2.11.	4 Types of action: Black, white, black and white, neither	109
CAB.2.12.	Actions of purification and silence.....	110
CAB.2.13.	Giving	110
CAB.2.14.	How a monk becomes virtuous, etc.....	111
CAB.2.15.	How to practice bodily and vocal conduct	112
CAB.2.16.	Why do sentient beings have their own action as their belonging	113
CAB.2.17.	Conceivability and inconceivability of the maturation of actions	113
CAB.3.	The four general characterisitscs of the truth of the origin	115
CAC.	THIRD SECTION: Nirodhasatya	116
CAC.1.	Its characteristic (lakṣaṇa)	116
CAC.2.	Its depth (gāmbhīrya)	117
CAC.3.	Its conventional meaning (saṃvṛtti).....	117
CAC.4.	Its absolute meaning (paramārtha),	117
CAC.5.	Its incomplete state (aparipūri),	117
CAC.6.	its complete state (paripūri).....	118
CAC.7.	Its unembellished state (nirlaṅkāra),.....	118
CAC.8.	Its embellished state (sālaṅkāra)	118
CAC.9.	Its residue (śeṣa),	118
CAC.10.	Its absence of residue (aśeṣa),	119
CAC.11.	Its supreme state (agra).....	119
CAC.12.	Its synonyms (paryāya)	119
CAC.13.	The Four general characteristics of the truth of cessation	122
CAD.	FOURTH SECTION: Mārgasatya	123
CAD.1.	The characteristic of the truth of the path	123

CAD.2. The enumeration of the path	123
CAD.2.1. The path of preparation (sambhāramārga),.....	123
CAD.2.2. the Path of application (prayagamārga)	124
CAD.2.3. The Path of seeing (darśanamārga)	125
CAD.2.3.1. division by knowledge of (jñāna) and acquiescence (kṣanti) to the Path of seeing (darśanamārga) into sixteen stages.....	126
CAD.2.3.2. The four ways of putting the truth of the path into practice.....	127
CAD.2.4. The Path of cultivation (bhāvanāmārga)	129
CAD.2.4.1. Nine types of path of cultivation.....	129
CAD.2.4.1.a. The mundane path (laukikamārga).....	129
CAD.2.4.1.b. The supramundane path (lokottaramārga).....	133
CAD.2.4.1.c. the Weak path (mr̥dumārga).....	133
CAD.2.4.1.d. The medium path (madhyamārga)	134
CAD.2.4.1.e. The Strong path (adhimātramārga)	134
CAD.2.4.1.f. The path of application (prayogamārga)	134
CAD.2.4.1.g. The immediate path (ānantaryamārga)	134
CAD.2.4.1.h. The path of liberation (vimuktimārga).....	134
CAD.2.4.1.i. The special path (viśeṣamārga).....	134
CAD.2.4.2. The four ways of cultivation of the path.....	135
CAD.2.4.3. Four kinds of counteragents	136
CAD.2.4.4. Eleven types of path.....	136
CAD.2.4.5. 37 qualities contributing to awakening, etc	137
CAD.2.4.5.a. The 37 qualities contributing to awakening	138
CAD.2.4.5.aa. The four applications of mindfulness (smṛtyupasthāna)	138
CAD.2.4.5.ab. The four kinds of right exertion (samyakpradhāna)	141
CAD.2.4.5.ac. The four foundations of supernormal powers (rddhipāda)	142
CAD.2.4.5.ad. The five faculties (pañcendriya)	144
CAD.2.4.5.ae. The five powers (pañcabala)	145
CAD.2.4.5.af. The seven factors of awakening (sapta-bodhyaṅga)	145
CAD.2.4.5.ag. The eight factors of the Noble path (aṣṭa āryamārgāṅga).....	146
CAD.2.4.5.b. The four practices (pratipadah).....	147
CAD.2.4.5.c. The four stages of virtue (catvāri dharmapadāni).....	149
CAD.2.4.5.d. Tranquility and insight	149
CAD.2.4.5.e. The three faculties (trīṇīḍriyāṇi)	150
CAD.2.5. the Path of conclusion (niṣṭhāmārga).	151
CAD.3. The four general characteristics of the truth of the path.....	154

CAE. The 16 general characteristics of the four noble truths	155
CB. CHAPTER TWO ASCERTAINMENT OF THE DHARMA (Dharmaviniścaya)	156
CBA. The 12 members of the doctrine	156
CBB. The three canons and the two canons & the 12 members.....	158
CBC. The reasons why the Tathāgata established the three canons	159
CBD. The threefold canon and the field of the mind and mental activities	160
CBE. The fourfold classification of objects with respect to the Doctrine	160
CBF. The four reasons for examining things	162
CBG. The four investigations (paryeṣaṇā) of things.....	163
CBH. Four correct knowledges of things	164
CBI. The five stages of union (yogabhūmi).....	164
CBJ. How one becomes proficient.....	165
CBK. On the meaning of vaipulya	166
CBK.1. The 28 wrong views.....	167
CBK.2. The profound meaning of ‘all things lack self-nature’	169
CBK.3. The profound meaning of ‘All things are unborn, etc.’	170
CBK.4. Four intentions	170
CBK.5. Four profound meanings.....	170
CBK.6. Five Criteria for correctly understanding the bodhisattva	171
CBK.7. Five kinds of mental cultivation	171
CBK.8. The reason for venerating the doctrine of the vaipulya.....	172
CC. CHAPTER THREE ASCERTAINMENT OF ACQUISITIONS (Prāptiviniścaya).....	173
CCA. FIRST SECTION: Definition of Individuals (Pudgalavyavasthāna)	173
CCA.1. Sevenfold Classification of individuals	173
CCA.2. Three persons in relation to their character	176
CCA.3. three persons in relation to the vehicles.....	176
CCA.4. Three persons in relation to the acquisition of the accumulations	177
CCA.5. Persons in relation to qualities leading to penetration and to deliverance.....	178
CCA.6. The persons who follow faith and the doctrine	178
CCA.7. The 27 kinds of individuals classified according to their result	179
CCA.8. Three persons in the realm of sense pleasures	188
CCA.9. The Bodhisattva, individual Buddha and Tathāgata in the realm of sense pleasures	188
CCA.10. Five Bodhisattvas who practice their career.....	189
CCA.11. Two kinds of stream-enterer	190
CCB. SECOND SECTION: Definition of Clear Understanding (Abhisamayavyavasthāna).....	191
CCB.1. Ten kinds of clear understanding (abhisamaya).....	191

CCB.2. The eleven difference between the clear understanding of the the disciples and that of the bodhisattvas	193
CCB.3. The clear understandings and the special qualities.....	194
CCB.3.1. The 19 special qualities	195
CCB.4. The accomplishment of the 19 special qualities.....	203
CCB.5. Miscellaneous questions concerning the progress of a bodhisattva	205
CCB.6. Skill in meditation	207
CCB.7. How a bodhisattva develops his faculties.....	209
CD. CHAPTER FOUR ASCERTAINMENT OF DIALECTIC (Sāṃkathyaviniścaya)	210
CDA. The sevenfold ascertainment of dialectic	210
CDA.1. Ascertainment of meaning (arthaviniścaya).....	210
CDA.2. Ascertainment of explanation (vyākhyāviniścaya).....	212
CDA.3. Ascertainment of analytical proof (prabhidyasamdarśanaviniścaya).....	214
CDA.4. Ascertainment of questions (saṃpraśnaviniścaya).....	215
CDA.5. Ascertainment of grouping (saṃgrahaviniścaya).....	215
CDA.6. Ascertainment of discussion (controversy) (vādaviniścaya).....	216
CDA.6.1. Discussion (vāda)	216
CDA.6.2. Discssion meeting (vādādhikaraṇa).....	217
CDA.6.3. Sujbect of discussion (vādādhīṣṭhāna)	217
CDA.6.4. Ornament of discussion (vādālāñkāra).....	218
CDA.6.5. Defeat in the discussion (vādanigraha)	218
CDA.6.6. Exit from the discussion (vādaniḥsaraṇa)	219
CDA.6.7. The qualities that are very useful in debate (vāde bahukārā dharmāḥ).....	220
CDA.7. Ascertainment of the profound meaning (abhisamdhiviniścaya)	221
CDA.8. The reason for the name of the Compendium of the super-doctrine	223
D. ABREVIATIONS	224

A.

INTRODUCTION

AA.

ASAṄGA

Founder of the *Yogācāra* System (Vijñānavāda)

No ancient biography of Asaṅga exists.¹ All that we know about him comes mainly from the biography of his brother Vasubandhu, *The Life of Vasubandhu* by Paramārtha², which is the oldest and the best source.

According to this account, Asaṅga was born at Puruṣapura (Peshawar) in north-west India (now Pakistan). In this city there lived a court priest, a brahmin of the Kauśika clan, who had three sons. Although all three had received the same name, Vasubandhu, the eldest was known by the name Asaṅga, the youngest, Viriñcivatsa, while the middle son kept the name Vasubandhu.³ Viriñcivatsa became a bhikṣu in the Sarvāstivāda order and attained the state of arhat. Nothing more is known of him. Vasubandhu also became a monk in the same order. His training was vast, his knowledge very great, his intellectual genius brilliant and penetrating. His personal discipline was pure and high.⁴

The eldest, Asaṅga, was a man ‘endowed with the nature of a bodhisattva’. He also became a bhikṣu in the Sarvāstivāda order,⁵ practiced meditation and became free of desire. Although he had studied the teachings on emptiness (*śūnyatā*), he was unable to penetrate them deeply and attain realization. Disappointed and depressed, he was about to commit suicide when an arhat by the name of Piṇḍola from Pūrvavideha explained the teachings on emptiness according to the Hīnayāna to him. Although Asaṅga understood, he was not fully satisfied with the Hīnayāna explanation of *śūnyata*. Nevertheless, he did not want to abandon

¹ It appears that there was a Chinese biography around the end of the VIIth or the beginning of the VIIIth century C.E. Hui-Ying, a student of Fa-Tsang, cites, in his *Ta fang kuang fu hua yen ching kan ying chuan* (T 2074, p. 173b, 8 seq.), a biography of Asaṅga. See E. Frauwallner: *On the date of the Buddhist Master of the Law Vasubandhu*, p.47 (Rome, ISMEO, 1951).

² *The Life of Vasubandhu* by Paramārtha (499-569 C.E.), translated by J. Takakusu, T'oung-pao, 1904, or the re-edition of E. J. Brill, Leyden, 1904). Paramārtha, a scholarly Buddhist monk of Ujjain, sent by the Indian court at the request of the Chinese Emperor Wu-ti (502-549 C.E.), arrived in China in 546 C.E. and stayed there until his death, devoting himself to translating into Chinese the Sanskrit texts he had brought with him (about 240 palm-leaf manuscripts).

³ According to a Tibetan tradition, Asaṅga and Vasubandhu had the same mother, a woman of the Brahmin caste called Prasannaśīla (gsal ba'i tshul khrims). However, Asaṅga's father was a kṣatriya whereas Vasubandhu's father was a brahmin. See Alex Wayman: *Analysis of the Śravakabhūmi Manuscript*, p. 25 (Univ. Calif. Press, 1061)

⁴ Scholars are not in agreement on the question of whether it was this Vasubandhu or another belonging to a later period who was the author of the *Abhidharmaśāstra*.

⁵ According to Hiuan-tsang, Asaṅga first belonged to the Mahīśāsaka sect. The two sources should not be thought to be contradictory because the Mahīśāsaka was a branch of the Sarvāstivāda. See Bareau: *Les Sectes*, p. 24. But according to the *Mhv.*, Ch. V, 8, the Sarvāstivādins as well as the Dharmaguptikas were derived from the Mahīśāsaka:

Mahīśāsakabхikkhūhi, bhikkhū sabathivādino,

Dhammaduttiyabhikkhū ca, jātā khalu ime duve.

In any case, Mahīśāsaka and Sarvāstivāda are of the same lineage.

it; on the contrary, he decided to go further so as to understand the full meaning of this profound and subtle doctrine. He flew up to the Tuṣita heaven by virtue of the supernatural powers (*rddhi*) that he had attained by means of *dhyāna* meditation according to the Hīnayāna. There he met the bodhisattva Maitreya who taught him the doctrine of *śūnyāta* according to the Mahāyāna.

Returning to Jambudvipa (India), Asaṅga studied and examined the doctrine of emptiness according to the methods he had been taught by Maitreya and soon attained enlightenment. Later, he frequently went to Tuṣita heaven in order to learn from Maitreya the tenets of the *Mahāyānasūtra* which the Bodhisattva explained to him in detail. Asaṅga taught these teachings to those around him, but those who heard did not believe. He then prayed to the Bodhisattva Maitreya to come down to Jambudvipa to explain the Mahāyāna. Accordingly Maitreya, during the night, came down to Jambudvipa and began to recite the *Saptadaśabhūmi Sūtra*⁶ to an audience that had gathered in the great hall. The recitation of the seventeen sections (*bhūmi*, lit. ‘ground’, ‘stage’) of the Sūtra was accomplished during the course of four months, at night. During the night-time, the people assembled in the hall listened to the discourse of Maitreya and in the day-time, Asaṅga commented, for the benefit of others, on what the Bodhisattva had taught. It was thus that the people could hear and believe in the Mahāyāna doctrine.

Furthermore, the Bodhisattva Maitreya taught Asaṅga the practice of the samādhi of “The Light of the Sun” (*Suryaprabhasamādhi*). Having attained this samādhi, whatever Asaṅga had not understood up until then became completely clear to him. Later, Asaṅga composed many treatises and commentaries on several important sūtras demonstrating the doctrines of the Mahāyāna.⁷

The collaboration between Asaṅga and Maitreya told in this story cannot be considered a historical fact, although some learned scholars⁸ have tried to prove that this Maitreya, or Maitreyanātha, Asaṅga’s teacher, was an historical individual. In the ancient world there was a universal tendency of religious psychology to

⁶ The *Saptadaśabhūmi* are the seventeen volumes or sections of the *Yogacārabhūmi*, Asaṅga’s magnum opus. The seventeen bhūmis are: 1. *pañcavijñānakāyasamprayuktābhūmi*, 2. *manobhūmi*, 3. *savitarkā savicarā bhūmi*, 4. *avitarikā vicāramātrā bhūmi*, 5. *avitarikā avicārā bhūmi*, 6. *samahitā bhūmi*, 7. *asamahitā bhūmi*, 8. *sacittikā bhūmi*, 9. *acittā bhūmi*, 10. *śrutamayī bhūmi*, 11. *cintāmayī bhūmi*, 12. *bhāvanāmayī bhūmi*, 13. *śravakabhūmi*, 14. *pratyekabuddhabhūmi*, 15. *bodhisattvabhūmi*, 16. *sopadhikā bhūmi*, 17. *nirupadhidikā bhūmi*.

⁷ *Yogacārabhūmi*, *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, *Mahāyānasāṅgraha*, *Mahāyānasūtrālaṅkara*, *Madhyāntavibhāga* or *Madhyāntavibhaṅga*, *Prakaraṇāryāśāsanāśāstra* or *Āryāśāsanaprakaraṇāśāstra*, *Triṇśatikāḥ prajñāpāramitāyāḥ kārikāsaptaṭatiḥ* (a commentary on the *Prajñāpāramitā*). Also attributed to Asaṅga are: *Āryasandhinirmocanabhāṣya*, *Madhyāntanusāraśāstra*, *Pañcavimśatiprajñāpāramitopadeśa-Abhisamayālaṅkāraśāstra*, *Dharmadharmatāvibhaṅga*, *Tattvaviniścaya* (on *Abhisamayālaṅkara*), *Mahāyānottaratāntraśāstravyākhyā* and a commentary on the *Vajracchedikā*.

⁸ E.g., H. Ui: *Maitreya as a historical personage*, Lanman Studies, 1929, p. 101; G. Tucci: *On some Aspects of the Doctrines of Maitreya [nātha] and Asaṅga*, Calcutta, 1930, pp. 3, 9, 12; E. Frauwallner: *On the Buddhist Master of the Law Vasubandhu*, Série Orientale Roma III, ISMEO, Rome, 1951, pp. 22, 38. For a complementary bibliography on this question, see Lamotte: *Sandhi*, Preface, p. 25.

attribute a divine origin or inspiration to sacred texts⁹ (and even to some secular and literary works). In India, not only the Vedas but some secular sciences such as the Āyurveda (medicine) are thought to be of divine origin. The Buddhists themselves were affected by the religio-psychological tendency of that time. Whilst the Mahāyana attributes the Yogācara-Abhidharma to the Bodhisattva Maitreya who remains in Tuṣita, the Theravāda tradition claims that the Buddha preached the Abhidhamma not only to human beings on this earth but also to the gods in the Tāvatiṃsa heaven, he himself having stayed there for three months.¹⁰ It is possible that Asaṅga may have considered the Bodhisattva Maitreya to be his tutelary deity (*iṣṭadevatā*) and he may have believed or had the impression that he derived his inspiration from him.¹¹

Asaṅga's second brother, Vasubandhu, a man of great talent with outstanding spiritual attainments, was a Hīnayānist, critical of the Mahāyāna. Asaṅga feared that his younger brother, endowed as he was with penetrating intelligence, profound and extensive knowledge, and well-versed in esoteric and exoteric doctrines, would be able to compose a śāstra which could crush the Mahāyāna.

Vasubandhu was at that time living at Ayodhyā, honored and venerated by the king Bālāditya, whereas Asaṅga was living in his native country at Puruṣapura (Peshawar). The latter sent a message to his brother saying: "I am seriously ill now. Come quickly to take care of me." On arriving and seeing his brother, Vasubandhu asked about the cause of the sickness. Asaṅga replied: "I am suffering from a grave sickness of the heart which has occurred because of you." Vasubandhu said: "Why do you say it is because of me?" "You do not believe in the Mahāyāna," answered Asaṅga, "you are always attacking and discrediting it. Because of this evil activity, you are certain to fall into a miserable existence. I am so worried about you that I shall not live very long now."

On hearing this, Vasubandhu was alarmed and requested Asaṅga to explain the Mahāyāna to him. The essential principles having been made clear to him, Vasubandhu, with his clear intellect and profound vision, understood immediately the superiority of the Mahāyāna over the Hinayāna, continued his studies and research under his brother's direction and became equally thoroughly versed in the entire system. For

⁹ In his study entitled *The Yogacārābhūmi of Saṅgharakṣa* (BEFEO, XLIV, fasc. 2 (a954), p. 381, note 4) Paul Demiéville writes: "It is an amazing misunderstanding of the most elementary facts of religious psychology (and literature) as well as of the idea of historicity that wants to make of Maitreya a 'historical individual'. It is noteworthy that Christianity, Islam, Taoism, etc., have attributed their sacred scriptures to gods or angels and he says that the attempt to prove that Maitreya is an' historical individual is due to the historicist habit introduced from the West." Tucci also accepts his opinion and now says: "... The discussion whether Maitreyanātha was a historical personage or not... has been, to my mind, definitely settled by P. Demiéville in his recent study on the *Yogacārābhūmi de Sandhrakṣa* (Giusseppe Tucci: Minor Buddhist Tests, Part I, Série Orientale Roma, IX, (Rome, ISMEO, 1956), p. 14, n.1).

¹⁰ Jat, IV, p. 265; DhpA, III, pp. 216-218.

¹¹ Indeed, Sthiramati says that Maitreya was Asaṅga's tutelary deity [*iṣṭadevata*]. A number of other great teachers in India and China are also regarded as having had contact with and being inspired by Maitreya. For details, see Demiéville, op. cit., p 376 et seq., section : *Maitreya, l'inspirateur*. There are still people today who believe in these tutelary deities and their help and inspiration.

the first time Vasubandhu understood that the Mahāyāna possessed the true and most complete teachings. If there were no Mahāyāna, he thought, there would be no path (*mārga*) and no fruition (*phala*) of the *triyāna* (i.e. the *bodhisattvayāna*, *pratyekabuddhayāna* and *śrāvakayāna*). This is how Vasubandhu, the great dharma master, was converted to the Mahāyāna by his brother Asaṅga.

But now Vasubandhu was afraid of falling into a miserable existence due to having reviled the Mahāyāna. Full of remorse and repenting bitterly, he went to his brother and said: “I wish to make a confession. I don’t know how I could be pardoned for my past evil action. Since my tongue has done wrong by speaking against the Mahāyāna, I shall cut out my tongue to atone for my crime,” But Āsaṅga replied: “Even if you cut out your tongue a thousand times, you could not wipe out your wrongdoing. If you really want to wipe it out, you must find another method.” When Vasubandhu asked his brother to suggest another way, Asaṅga answered: “Your tongue was very skilful and efficacious in discrediting the Mahāyāna. If you want to efface the wrong you have done, you must explain the Mahāyāna with the same skill and efficacy.” It is possible that this is the reason why Vasubandhu, at his brother’s instigation, wrote many important works explaining the Mahāyāna doctrines.¹²

According to Tāranātha¹³, Asaṅga visited many regions of India to spread the Mahāyāna and founded about twenty-five monasteries.

Date: Based on proofs brought to light by competent scholars over the course of several decades, we may say with some certainty that Asaṅga lived in the IVth century C.E. in northwestern India.¹⁴

¹² Paramārtha says “....everyone studying the Mahāyāna and the Hīnayāna in India and the bordering countries uses Vasubandhu’s works as basic texts.” (*The Life*, p. 27)

¹³ Tāranātha, or Tārānātha, a Tibetan lama whose name was Kun-dga’ snying-po (Heart of Joy), was born in 1573 C.E. Later he went to Mongolia where he spent the rest of his life and where he founded many monasteries under the patronage of the Chinese emperor. His *History of Buddhism in India*, based on Indian and Tibetan sources, written in 1608 (translated from Tibetan into German by A. Schieffner, St. Petersburg, 1869, and retranslated from German into English in Ind. Hist. Qu., 3, 1927), contains a story of Asaṅga’s life more legendary than that of Paramārtha. But behind the incredible events narrated by Tāranātha, one can sense the patience, will and perseverance of Asaṅga in his search for knowledge. In Tāranātha’s story as well, Vasubandhu was the younger brother of Asaṅga and was converted by him to the Mahāyāna.

¹⁴ The time of Asaṅga is fixed according to that of his brother Vasubandhu. The question of whether the author of the *Abhidharmakośa* was the same individual as the brother of Asaṅga or whether there were two Vasubandhus belonging to two different times, does not concern us here. Be that as it may, all opinions agree that Vasubandhu, Asaṅga’s brother, lived in the IVth century C.E. We will therefore keep that date as that of the period of Asaṅga’s life. For further details, see: J. Takakusu, *A Study of Paramārtha’s Life of Vasubandhu and the Date of Vasubandhu*, JRAS, 1905, pp. 33-53; Sylvain Lévi, *Sūtrālamkāra*, translation, introd. pp. 1-7; Noël Péri, *A propos de la date de Vasubandhu*, BEFEO, XI (1911), pp. 339-390; H. Ui, *On the Author of Mahāyānasūtrālamkāra*, Zeitschrift für Indologie und Iranistik, VI (1928), pp. 215-225; J. Takakusu, *The Date of Vasubandhu the Great Buddhist Philosopher*, Indian Studies in honor of Charles Rockwell Lanman, Cambridge, Mass. (1929), pp. 79-88; T. Kimura, *The date of Vasubandhu seen from the Abhidharmakośa*, ibid. pp. 89-92; G. Ono, *The Date of Vasubandhu seen from the History of Buddhist Philosophy*, ibid., pp. 93-94; M. Winternitz, Hist. Ind. Lit., p.355, n. 6; E. Frauwallner, *On the*

Systematization of the Mahāyāna: The early Buddhist schools (also called the Hīnayāna) had already given a definite form to the concepts contained in the original sūtras by developing their Abhidharma texts. The Theravādins had their seven *Abhidhamma Pakaraṇa*¹⁵; the Sarvāstivādins had their *Jñānaprasthāna* together with its six *pādas*. The Mahāyānists developed and formulated their own Abhidharma as well. This work was achieved by two great masters who may be thought of as the founders of the two main Mahāyāna schools: Nāgārjuna (the second half of the IIInd century C.E.) established the Madhyamaka with his *Mūlamādhyamikakārikā*, and the voluminous commentary on the *Prajñāpāramitā*. Asaṅga established the Yogācāra(-Vijñānavāda) with his monumental *Yogācārabhūmiśāstra*. What the *Abhidhammapiṭaka* in Pāli is for the Theravādins, the *Jñānaprasthāna* for the Sarvāstivādins, the *Mahāprajñāpāramitāśāstra* for the Mādhyamikas, the *Yogācārabhūmiśāstra* is for the Yogācārins.

AB.

ABHIDHARMASAMUCCAYA

The *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, a most important text of the Mahāyāna Abhidharma containing almost all of the major Mahāyāna doctrines, may be thought of as the résumé of all the other works of Asaṅga. The treatment of subjects in this work is the same as the traditional treatment found in the Pāli Abhidhamma texts such as the *Dhammasaṅgani*, the *Vibhaṅga* and the *Dhātukathā* which preceded it by several centuries, namely, asking and answering a question. All the long explications appearing in this work, which are rare, serve as the answer to some question.

The *Abhidharmasamuccaya* is divided into two parts : I. *Lakṣaṇasamuccaya* (Compendium of Characteristics) and II. *Viniścayasamuccaya* (Compendium of Ascertainments). Each contains four chapters.

ABA.

FIRST PART

Chapter I is divided into two Sections¹⁶. In the first Section, entitled ‘Three Dharmas’, the five *skandhas* (aggregates), the eighteen *dhātus* (elements) and the twelve *āyatanas* (spheres) are treated in detail in respect to their enumerations, characteristics, definitions, etc. The second Section, entitled “Division of Aspects” (*Prakāraprabheda*)¹⁷, examines the same *skandhas*, *dhātus* and *āyatanas* from sixteen different points of view, such as substance and designation, conventional and ultimate, conditioned and unconditioned, mundane and supramundane, time and space, conditioned origination, etc., with the aim of showing that there is no self (*ātman*) in any sense among these categories.

Date of the Buddhist Master of the Law Vasubandhu, IsMEO, (Rome, 1951); Th. Stcherbatsky, Buddhist Logic, Vol 1, p. 31; Alex Wayman, *Analysis of the Śrāvakabhūmi Manuscript* (Univ. Calif. Press, 1961), p.19 seq.

¹⁵ *Dhammasaṅgani*, *Vibhaṅga*, *Puggalapaññatti*, *Dhātukathā*, *Paṭṭhāna*, *Yamaka*, *Paṭṭhāna*, *Kathāvatthu*.

¹⁶ In Pradhan’s edition, this chapter is divided into three sections according to the Chinese version. But as may be seen, the third section is actually the continuation of the second and there is no reason for such a division. In the original Sanskrit text published by Gokhale, this section continues from the second without any division.

¹⁷ The method of treatment and the subjects discussed in this Section are almost the same as those of the Pāli Abhidhamma *Dhātukathā*.

Chapter II, which is short and entitled ‘Includedness’ or ‘Grouping’ (*samgraha*) studies the *skandhas*, *dhātus* and *āyatanas* by classifying them into eleven groups according to: 1. characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*), 2. elements (*dhātu*), 3. species (*jāti*), 4. state (*avasthā*), 5. associations (*sahāya*), 6. space (*deśa*), 7. time (*kāla*), 8. partial group (*ekadeśa*), 9. complete group (*sakala*), 10. mutual group (*anyonya*) and 11. absolute group (*paramārtha*). The purpose is to give a synthetic view of things.

Chapter III, also short, is entitled ‘Connectedness’ (*samprayoga*) and examines physical and mental phenomena as combinations in different circumstances and conditions in the different realms. The purpose of this examination is to show that the conjunction and disjunction of such things as feelings (*vedanā*) are in the mind only (*cittamātra*) and that the notion that the self (*ātman*) feels, experiences, perceives, wills, remembers, is false.

Chapter IV, the shortest of the entire work, is entitled ‘Accompaniedness’ (*samanvāgama*). It studies beings with regard to their seeds (*bija*) in the three realms (*kāma*, *rūpa*, *ārūpya*), with regard to their skill (*vaśitā*) in the mundane and supramundane virtues and their good, bad or neutral practice (*saṃudācāra*). Those who understand this see the increase and decrease of *dharma*s and give up attachment and aversion (*anunayapratighaprahāna*).

ABB.

SECOND PART

Compendium of Ascertainments

Chapter I, dedicated to the four Noble Truths, is the longest and is divided into four Sections.

The first Section deals with the first Noble Truth, *duḥkhasatya*, the truth of suffering, which includes both animate and inanimate worlds. The animate world is made up of all beings, whether born into the hell realm, the animal realm, the ghost (*preta*) realm, the human realm, the god realm (*deva*) and the realm of Brahma. The inanimate world includes a limitless number of universe systems in the ten directions of space; these systems dissolve or remain dissolved, evolve and remain evolved, will dissolve or will evolve constantly without interruption.

Duḥkha, listed in its eight forms (birth, old age, sickness, death, etc.) is treated in three different aspects: *duḥkha* as ordinary suffering (*duḥkhaduḥkhatā*), as change (*viparināmaduḥkhatā*) and as conditioned existence (*saṃskāraduḥkhatā*). Furthermore, it is studied from the conventional (*saṃvṛti*) and absolute (*paramārtha*) points of view.

The four characteristics of *duḥkha*, *anitya* (impermanence), *duḥkha* (suffering), *śūnya* (empty) and *anātma* (non-self) are explained in detail. The momentariness of matter (*rūpasya kṣaṇikatā*) is treated here, the atom is defined as not having any physical body (*nihśarīra*) and is established mentally by ultimate analysis of matter. The purpose of this discussion is to penetrate into the non-reality of material substance.

At the end of this Section, *antarābhava* (intermediate existence) and *gandharva* are studied in the context of death.

The second Section deals with the second Noble Truth, *saṃudaya*, the origin of *duḥkha*. As the principal statement, *trṣṇā* (thirst, desire) is mentioned as the origin of suffering, but in the detailed study, the *kleśa*

‘defilements’ and the activities predominated by the defilements (*kleśādhipateyakarma*) are considered as *samudaya*. After listing the main kleśas (six or ten in number), the author explains their characteristics (*lakṣana*), their arising (*utthāna*), their objects (*ālambana*), their connectedness (*samprayoga*), their twenty-four synonyms (*paryāya*), their differences (*vipratipatti*), their realms (*dhātu*), their groups (*nikāya*) and their abandonment (*prahāṇa*).

Various categories of karma such as *kuśala* and *akuśala*, *sādhāraṇa* and *asādhāraṇa*, *balavat* and *durbala*, *puṇya*, *apuṇya* and *āniñjya*, *drṣṭadharma*, *upapadaya* and *aparaparyāya*, etc., are studied in detail under activities predominated by the defilements (*kleśādhipateyakarma*).

At the end of this section, the second Noble Truth is defined as the cause (*hetu*), origin (*samudaya*), source (*prabhava*) and condition (*pratyaya*) for rebirth and continuity.

The third Section explains *nirodha* (*nirvāṇa*) according to twelve points of view, such as characteristics (*lakṣana*), profundity (*gāmbhīrya*), conventional (*saṃvṛti*), absolute (*paramārtha*), etc. Next, thirty-four synonyms (*paryāya*) of *nirodha* are defined in turn to show why *nirodha* is designated by one term or another. At the end of the Section the four characteristics of the third Noble Truth are given, namely, cessation (*nirodha*), peace (*sānta*), excellence (*pranīta*) and liberation (final beatitude) (*nihsarana*).

The fourth Section deals with the fourth Noble Truth. According to the original Pāli texts, the fourth Noble Truth is always defined as the Eightfold Noble Path (*ariyo aṭṭhangiko maggo*). But Asaṅga treats the Path (*mārgasatya*) very differently, and the Eightfold Noble Path does not appear in its traditional place. According to Asaṅga, the Path (*mārga*) consists of five categories:

1. *Sambhāramārga* (Path of Preparation), which consists of moral practice (*śīla*), control of the senses (*indriyeṣu guptadvāra*), meditation (*śamathavipaśyanā*), etc., practiced by ordinary people (*prthagjana*).
2. *Prayogamārga* (Path of Application), which leads (with the aid of the preceding path) to the acquisition of favorable roots (*kuśalamūla*) resulting in penetration of the Truths (*nirvedabhāgīya*) to a certain point and to different degrees.
3. *Darśanamārga* (Path of Seeing) leads to profound seeing of the Truths. Some expressions found in the sūtras¹⁸, e.g., *virajam vītamalam dharmacakṣur udapādi* (Pāli: *virajam vītamalam dhammacakkhum udapādi*), *drṣṭadharma prāptadharma vidiṭadharma paryavagāḍhadharmā ...* (Pāli: *diṭṭhadhammo pattadhammo vidiṭadhammo pariyoṭṭhadhammo ...*) concern this Path.
4. *Bhāvanāmārga* (Path of cultivation or Mental Development), which consists, among others, of the thirty-seven *bodhipakṣadharmas* (the thirty-seven dharmas leading to enlightenment), which in turn are made up of four *smṛtyupasthanas* (Pāli, *satipaṭṭhāna*), four *samyakpradhānas*, four *rddipādas*, five *indriyas* (*śraddhā, vīrya*, etc.), five *balas* (*śraddhā, vīrya*, etc.), seven *bodhyāgas* (Pāli: *bojjhaṅga*) and the Eightfold Path. In the *Bhāvanāmārga* these dharmas are studied according to their different aspects and are designated by different names. Thus, the four *smṛtyupasthānas* are called the Path of Examining

¹⁸ E.g., S IV, 47; V, 423; A IV, 186, 210, etc.

Objects (*vastuparikṣamārga*), the four *samyakpradhānas* are called the Path of Vigorous Effort (*vyāvasāyikamārga*), the four *rddhipādas* are called the Path of Preparation for Concentration (*saṃdhiparikarmamārga*), the five *indriyas* are called the Path of Application for Perfect Realization (*abhisamayaprayogikamārga*), the five *balas* are called the Path of Adhering to Perfect Realization (*abhisamayaśliṣṭamārga*), the seven *bodhyangas* are called the Path of Perfect Realization (*abhisamayamārga*), and the Noble Eightfold Path is called the Path leading to Purity and Emancipation (*viśuddhinairyāṇikamārga*). Thus we can see that the Noble Eightfold Path is but one aspect of *mārgasatya*.

5. *Niṣṭhāmārga* (Path of Perfecting or Terminating) which consists of the *vajropamasamādhi* (diamond samādhi) attained by the one who has traveled the *bhāvanāmārga*.

Chapter II, entitled ‘Ascertainment of Dharmas’, deals with the Buddha’s teachings. First it is divided into twelve *aigas* (members), e.g. *sūtra* (discourse), *geya* (verse narrative), *vyākaraṇa* (prophecies), etc. These are then incorporated into the threefold canon (*tripiṭaka*), Sūtra, Vinaya and Abhidharma, which are again classified as *śravakapiṭaka* (canon of the disciples) and *bodhisattvapiṭaka* (canon of the bodhisattvas), followed by the reasons why the Buddha’s teachings are divided into the threefold canon. Next come the four *ālambanas* (objects) of the Dharma: *vyāpya* (pervasiveness), *caritaviśodhana* (purification of character), *kauśalya* (skillfulness) and *kleśaviśodhana* (purification of defilements). Then Asaṅga explains how whosoever so wishes should examine the Dharma according to four reasonings (*yukti*): 1. *sāpekṣā* (dependence), 2. *kāryakāraṇa* (cause and effect), 3. *sākṣātkriyāsādhana* (completion of becoming evident (?), leading to realization) and 4. *dharmatā* (essential nature). This is followed by four investigations (*paryeṣanā*) and four precise knowledges (*parijñāna*) of name (*nāma*), substance (*vastu*), designation of self-nature (*svabhāvaparijñapti*) and designation of particularities (*viśeṣaparijñapti*) in regards to Dharma.

Then the five levels of union (*yogabhūmi*) of the person engaged in concentration are explained. Also discussed is how one becomes competent in the Dharma, in its meaning (*artha*), in the literal sense (*vyañjana*), in its philosophical explanation (*nirukti*) and in the connection to past and future (*pūrvāntāparāntānusandhi*), and how one becomes a person dwelling in the Dharma (*dharma-vihārin*).

The last part of this chapter is devoted to praise of the *Vaipulya*, defined and explained as the canon of the bodhisattvas’ perfections (*bodhisattvapāramitāpiṭaka*). Why some are afraid of the *Vaipulyadharma* and why others, although attracted to it, are unable to attain liberation, is also examined. An interesting and informative list appears in this discussion of the twenty-eight wrong views (*asaddrṣṭi*) that could arise in the mind of the bodhisattva who examines the Dharma superficially according to the letter.

Next are explained the well-known words of the *Vaipulya*, i.e. *niḥsvabhāvāḥ sarvadharmāḥ*; the knowledge of the four *abhiprāya* (intentions) and the four *abhisandhi* (profound hidden meanings) is mentioned as necessary to understand the ideas expressed by the Tathāgata in the *Vaipulya*. Finally, the *Vaipulya* is praised as the doctrine that brings happiness and well-being to all.

Chapter III is entitled ‘Ascertainment of Attainments’ (*prāptiviniścaya*) and is divided into two Sections, the definition of individuals (*pudgalavyavasthāna*) and definition of realization (*abhisamayavyavasthāna*).

The first Section, entitled *Pudgalavyavasthāna*, deals with individuals from seven points of view: 1. character (*carita*), 2. emancipation (*niryāṇa*), 3. support (*ādhāra*), 4. application (*prayoga*), 5. result (*phala*), 6. realm (*dhātu*) and 7. career (*carya*).

As for character, there are seven types of individuals: those who are dominated by 1. lust (*rāgacarita*), 2. hatred (*dveśacarita*), 3. ignorance (*mohacarita*), 4. pride (*mānacarita*), or 5. distraction or discursiveness (*vitarkacarita*), whereas others are 6. normal or balanced (*samabhāgacarita*) and 7. only slightly passionate (*mandarajaskacarita*).

With respect to liberation (*niryāṇa*), there are three types of individuals: those belonging to the vehicle of the disciples (*śrāvakayāṇika*), those belonging to the vehicle of the pratyekabuddhas (*pratyekabuddhayāṇika*) and those belonging to the great vehicle (*mahāyāṇika*).

With regard to support (*ādhāra*), 1. there are those who have not yet acquired the ‘viaticum’¹⁹ (accumulations) (*asambhṛtasambhāra*), 2. those who have and have not acquired the ‘viaticum’ (*sambhṛtāsambhṛtasambhāra*) and finally those who have acquired the ‘viaticum’ (*sambhṛtasambhāra*).

From the point of view of application (*prayoga*), there are individuals who follow either confidence or faith (*śraddhānusārin*) or the doctrine (*dharmaṇusārin*).

In regard to results, there are twenty-seven individuals, such as those devoted to faith (*śraddhādhimukta*), those who have attained insight (*drṣṭiprāpta*), those who are stream-enterers (*srotaāpanna*), etc. Various categories of arhant are also mentioned in this context.

With regard to realms (*dhātu*), beings are classified as belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara*), the realm of form (*rūpāvacara*) or the formless realm (*ārūpāvacara*).

With regard to the practitioner (*carya*), five categories of bodhisattvas are mentioned, such as the bodhisattva whose conduct is directed by strong inclination (*adhimukticārin*) or by strong resolution (*adhyāśayacārin*), etc.

The second Section, *Abhisamayavyavasthāna*, discusses realization (*abhisamaya*) under ten headings: 1. realization of the doctrine (*dharmaṇabhisamaya*), 2. realization of the meaning (*arthābhisamaya*), 3. realization of the state of reality (*tattvābhisamaya*), 4. subsequent realization (*prṣṭābhisamaya*), 5. realization of the Jewels (*ratnābhisamaya*), 6. realization of the cessation of wandering in samsāra (*asamcārābhisamaya*), 7. perfect realization (*niṣṭhābhisamaya*), 8. realization of the disciples (*śrāvakābhisamaya*), 9. realization of the pratyekabuddhas (*pratyekabuddhābhisamaya*) and 10. realization of the bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvābhisamaya*).

Of these ten, the *bodhisattvābhisamaya* is studied in detail. In the discussion of the eleven differences between the realization of the disciples and that of the bodhisattvas, all the great spiritual and mystical qualities are described, such as the four immeasurables (*apramāṇa*), the eight liberations (*vimokṣa*), the

¹⁹ W. Rahula translates the Sanskrit thus. The meaning of *sambhṛtasambhāra* is ‘to collect all requisites, to prepare what is necessary’.

eight spheres of mastery (*abhibhvāyatana*), the ten spheres of totality (*krtsnāyatana*), the four kinds of discriminating awareness (*pratisamvid*), the six kinds of superior knowledge (*abhijñā*), the ten powers (*bala*), the four kinds of fearlessness (*vaiśāradya*), the three kinds of applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*), great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*), the eighteen qualities special to the Buddha (*āveṇikabuddhadharma*), the knowledge of all aspects (*sarvākārajñāna*), etc.

Then Asaṅga discusses why the bodhisattva does not become a *srotaāpanna*, etc. The bodhisattva has agreed to take on a limitless number of rebirths for the benefit of others, destroying only the obstacles to the knowable (*jñeyāvaraṇa*) but not the obstacles of the defilements (*kleśāvaraṇa*). Nevertheless, the bodhisattva remains pure like an arhat. He does not abandon the *kleśāvaraṇa* and the *jñeyāvaraṇa* until attaining *bodhi*, awakening, and becomes an arhat, a Tathāgata. The bodhisattva's skillful means (*upāyakauśalya*) for ripening beings (*sattvaparipāka*) and other special qualities are also described.

Chapter IV, entitled 'Ascertainment of Dialectic' (*sāṃkathyaviniścaya*), deals with: 1. methods of discussion of meaning (*arthaviniścaya*), 2. methods of explaining a sūtra (*vyākhyaviniścaya*), 3. methods of analytical demonstration (*prabidhyasandarśanaviniścaya*), 4. methods of treating questions (*sampraśnaviniścaya*), 5. methods of debate according to includedness (*samgrahaviniścaya*), 6. methods of discussion or controversy (*vādaviniścaya*) and 7. methods of discussing the profound and hidden meaning of certain passages in the sūtras (*abhisandhiviniścaya*).

This section on *vāda* (art of debate) may be thought of as a first attempt of Buddhist logic which Diṅnāga and Dharmakīrti later were systematically to develop and perfect. The subject is discussed under seven headings: 1. debate or discussion (*vāda*), 2. debate assembly (*vādādhikaraṇa*), 3. subject of discussion (*sādya*, things to be proven, *sādhana*, proof,) (*vādādhīṣṭhāna*), 4. ornaments of discussion (erudition, eloquence, etc.) (*vādālaṅkāra*), 5. defeat in a discussion (*vādanigraha*), 6. coming out of debate (*vādaniḥsarāṇa*) and 7. qualities useful in discussion (extensive knowledge, self-confidence, quickness of mind, etc.) (*vāde bahukārā dharmāḥ*). Finally, citing a passage from the *Mahāyanābhidharmasūtra* that says there are twelve reasons a bodhisattva should not argue with others, Asaṅga advises that one should engage in discussion only to acquire knowledge for one's own edification, and not to debate solely for the pleasure of debating.

AC.

THE TRANSLATION

In 1934, the Tripiṭakācārya Mahāpaṇḍita Rāhula Sāṃkṛtyāyana found, in the Tibetan monastery of Salu near Shigatse, about two-fifths of the original Sanskrit text of the *Abidharmasamuccaya*, long thought to have been lost. His photographs of these manuscript fragments were deposited in the library of the Bihar Research Society, Patna. These were edited and published by V. V. Gokhale in the Journal of the Bombay Branch, Royal Asiatic Society, N.S., vol. 23, 1947. In 1950, Pralhad Pradhan published another edition (Visvabharati, Santiniketan, 1950) of the same fragments with his own restoration of the missing parts (about three-fifths of the text) with the help of the Tibetan and Chinese versions.

The present translation [into French] is based on the Sanskrit editions just mentioned and on the Tibetan translation of the entire text (Bibliothèque nationale, Paris, Ms. tibétain 251, fol. 51 recto to 141 verso) and

on the Chinese translation of Hiuan-tsang (vol. 31, no. 1605, pp. 663a-694b of the Taisho edition of the Chinese Buddhist canon).

In translating the technical Sanskrit terms, I [Rahula Walpola] tried as much as possible to maintain uniformity in the French words, but evidently this was not always possible. The word *dharma*, for example, in some contexts means ‘doctrine’, but in others it means ‘virtue’, ‘nature’, ‘teaching’ or ‘truth’, etc.. *Chanda* as *rddhipāda* (as in the list *chanda*, *vīrya*, etc.) means ‘wanting’, but in the term *kāmachanda* it means ‘desire’ for sense pleasures. *Viṣaya* is ‘object’ in connection with *indriya* (faculty), but in the expression *paricchinnaviṣayālambana*, it means ‘sphere’, ‘object of the limited sphere’. *Dhātu* is ‘element’ in *cakṣurdhātu* (eye element), but it is ‘realm’ in *kāmadhātu* (realm of sense pleasures). *Rūpa* is ‘matter’ in *rūpaskandha* (aggregate of matter), but it is ‘visible form’ in the list *rūpa*, *śabda*, *gandha*, etc. To avoid confusion, I [Walpola] usually give the original Sanskrit in parentheses.

THE COMPENDIUM OF THE SUPER-DOCTRINE (PHILOSOPHY) (*ABHIDHARMASAMUCCAYA*)

[Part I:] In the **Compendium of Characteristics** (*lakṣaṇasamuccaya*):

- [Chapter I:] three dharmas (*tridharma*),
- [Chapter II:] includedness (*samgraha*),
- [Chapter III:] connectedness (*samprayoga*) and
- [Chapter IV:] accompaniedness (*samanvāgama*).

[Part II:] In the **Compendium of Ascertainties** (*viniścayasamuccaya*):

- [Chapter I:] truth (*satya*),
- [Chapter II:] doctrine (*dharma*),
- [Chapter III:] acquisition (*prāpti*) and
- [Chapter IV:] dialectic (*sāmkalya*).

B. BA. *THE COMPENDIUM OF CHARACTERISTICS (LAKṢAÑASAMUCCAYA)*

CHAPTER ONE: THREE DHARMAS (TRIDHARMA)

[First Section:]

1. How many (*kati*),
2. for what purpose (*kim upādāya*),
3. characteristics (*lakṣana*),
4. definition (*vyavasthāna*) [MW: condition, state, circumstances],
5. succession (*anukrama*),
6. meaning (*artha*),
7. example (*drṣṭhānta*),

[Second Section:]

8. classification (*prabedha*).

All of these constitute what is to be known in the Compendium.

BAA. BAA.1. *FIRST SECTION THREE DHARMAS (SKANDHA, DHĀTU, ĀYATANA)*

HOW MANY (KATI),

How many aggregates (*skandha*), elements (*dhātu*) and sense-spheres (*āyatana*) are there?

There are five aggregates:

1. matter (*rūpa*),
2. sensations (*vedanā*),
3. the perceptions (*saṃjñā*),
4. formations (*saṃskāra*) and
5. consciousness (*vijñāna*).

There are eighteen elements:

1. eye (*cakṣurdhātu*),
2. form (*rūpadhātu*)²⁰ and
3. visual consciousness (*cakṣurvijñānadhātu*);
4. ear (*śrotradhātu*),
5. sound (*śabdadhātu*) and
6. auditory consciousness (*śrotavijñānadhātu*);
7. nose (*ghrāṇadhātu*),
8. odor (*gandhadhātu*) and
9. olfactory consciousness (*ghrānavijñānadhātu*);
10. tongue (*jihvādhātu*),
11. taste (*rasadhātu*) and
12. gustatory consciousness (*jihvāvijñānadhātu*);
13. the body (*kāyadhātu*),
14. touch (*spraṣṭavyadhātu*) and
15. tactile consciousness (*kāyavijñānadhātu*);
16. mental organ (*manodhātu*),
17. mental object (*dharmadhātu*) and
18. mental consciousness (*manovijñānadhātu*).

There are twelve sense-spheres:

1. eye (*cakṣurāyatana*) and
2. form (*rūpāyatana*);
3. ear (*śrotrāyatana*) and
4. sound (*śabdāyatana*);
5. nose (*ghrāṇāyatana*) and
6. odor (*gandhāyatana*);
7. tongue (*jihvāyatana*) and
8. taste (*rasāyatana*);
9. body (*kāyāyatana*) and

²⁰ In the category *rūpa*, *śabda*, etc., *rūpa* means ‘visible form’ and not ‘matter’ as in the category of the five aggregates. In this context, to translate *rūpa* as ‘matter’ would be confusing because things like sound (*śabda*), smell (*gandha*), etc., are also made up of subtle matter.

-
10. touch (*spraṣṭavyāyatana*);
 11. mental organ (*manāyatana*) and
 12. mental objects (*dharmaṇyatana*).

BAA.2.

FOR WHAT PURPOSE (KIM UPĀDĀYA),

Why are there only five aggregates? Because of the five ways in which the concept of self (*ātman*) makes its appearance:

1. self as physical apprehension,
2. self as experience,
3. self as expression,
4. self as the doer of all good and all evil, and
5. self as the basis of all of that.

Why are there only eighteen elements? Because as a result of two things, body (*deha*)²¹ and apprehension (*parigraha*),²² there is support for the sixfold past and present experience (*atītvartamānaśadākāropabhogadhāraṇatā*).²³

Why are there only twelve sense-spheres? Because as a result of two things, body and apprehension, there is the doorway of access to the sixfold future experience (*anāgataśadākāropabhogāyadvāra*).

Why are the aggregates called ‘being grasped’ (appropriated) (*upādāna*)? The aggregates are called thus because they are associated with grasping.

What is grasping? Desire (*chanda*) and passion (*rāga*) for the aggregates.

Why are desire and passion called grasping? Desire and passion are thus called due to the continuity and non-abandonment of future and present aggregates and also due to desire for the future and attachment to the present.

Why are the elements and sense-spheres considered to be associated with grasping? The explanation for this is the same as in the case of the aggregates.

BAA.3.

CHARACTERISTICS (LAKṢANA),

What is the characteristic (*lakṣaṇa*) of form? Change is the characteristic of form. There are two types: (i) change through contact, and (ii) change through localization.

- (i) **What is change through contact?** It is the change caused through contact by the hand, the foot, a stone, a weapon, a stick, cold, heat, hunger, thirst, a mosquito, a horsefly, a snake, a scorpion, etc.

²¹ *Deha* signifies the six *indriyas* (faculties): eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mental organ.

²² *Parigraha* signifies the six *viṣayas* (objects): visible form, sound, smell, taste, touchable and mental objects.

²³ *Atītvartamānaśadākāropabhogadhāraṇatā* signifies the six *vijñānas* (consciousnesses): visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory, tactile and mental consciousness.

(ii) **What is change through localization?** It is imagining a form through a determinate or indeterminate mental idea as such and such a form or some other form.

What is the characteristic of sensation? Experience is the characteristic of sensation. There is experience when one feels the results of good or bad actions.

What is the characteristic of perception? Recognition is the characteristic of perception. The nature of perception is to know various things and to express the things that are seen, understood, conceived of and things which are remembered.²⁴

What is the characteristic of the formations? The characteristic of the formations is to construct. The nature of formation is to form and to construct; by means of it, the mind is directed towards favorable (*kuśala*), unfavorable (*akuśala*) and neutral (*avyākṛta*) activities.

What is the characteristic of consciousness? The characteristic of consciousness is to know. By means of consciousness one knows visible form, sound, smell, taste, tangible objects, mental objects and the various realms.

What is the characteristic of the eye-element? It is that by means of which one sees forms and that which is the base-consciousness, the accumulated seed (*bījam upacitam ālayavijñāna*). The characteristics of the ear-, nose-, tongue-, body- and mental-organ elements are similar to that of the eye-element.

What is the characteristic of the element of form? The element of form is that which becomes visible when it is seen by the eye, and on which the supremacy of the eye-element is exerted. The characteristics of the elements of sound, smell, taste, touchable and the mental object are also similar to that of the element of form.

What is the characteristic of the element of visual consciousness? It is a reaction towards a visible form that has the eye for its subject (basis) and the form for its object. Also, it is the base-consciousness of the results which is the accumulated seed (*bījam upacitam vipākālayavijñānam*). The characteristics of the elements of the auditory, olfactory, gustatory, tactile and mental consciousnesses are also similar to that of the visual consciousness.

What is the characteristic of the sense-spheres ? It should be understood in the same way as that of the elements.

²⁴ Cf. the Pāli expression *dīṭṭha-suta-muta-viññāta*. MA I, p. 37 says that the word *muta* indicates smell, taste and tangible things: *gandharasaphoṭṭhabbānam etam adhivacanam*.

BAA.4. **ARRANGEMENT/DEFINITION (VYAVASTHĀNA) [MW: CONDITION, STATE, CIRUMSTANCES]**

BAA.4.1. **ARRANGEMENT/DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATES**

BAA.4.1.1. **ARRANGEMENT/DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATE OF FORM**

What is the definition of the aggregate of form? Whatever it may be, all form is composed of the (i) four great elements and (ii) their derivatives.

(i) What are the four great elements? These are the elements earth, water, fire and air.

What is the earth element? It is solidity.

What is the water element? It is fluidity.

What is the fire element? It is heat.

What is the air element? It is movement.

(ii) What is derived matter? The faculties of the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, a certain part of form, sound, smell, taste, tangible and also the matter included in the sense-sphere of mental objects.²⁵

- **What is the eye faculty (*indriya*)?** It is a sensitive material derived from the four great elements that is the basis of visual consciousness.
- **What is the ear faculty?** It is a sensitive material derived from the four great elements that is the basis of auditory consciousness.
- **What is the nose faculty?** It is a sensitive material derived from the four great elements that is the basis of olfactory consciousness.
- **What is the tongue faculty?** It is a sensitive material derived from the four great elements that is the basis of the gustatory consciousness.
- **What is the body faculty?** It is a sensitive material derived from the four great elements that is the basis of the tactile consciousness.
- **What is form?** It is a phenomenon derived from the four great elements that is the object of the visual faculty, such as blue, yellow, red, white, long, short, square, circular, big, small, high, low, soft, rough, sun, shadow, light, darkness, cloud, smoke, dust and fog; the form of space, the form of a gesture (of expression), the form of the color of the sky. All of these are three-fold: pleasant, unpleasant or indifferent.
- **What is sound?** It is a phenomenon derived from the four great elements that is perceptible to the auditory faculty as pleasant, unpleasant or indifferent. Sound is produced by the four great

²⁵ Cf. Vam. p. 444.

elements, whether organic,²⁶ inorganic,²⁷ or both.²⁸ It is discerned in the world or made by individuals endowed with supernatural powers (*siddhas*), or imagined or pronounced by the saints (*ārya*) or by heretics.

- **What is smell?** It is a phenomenon derived from the four great elements that is perceptible to the olfactory faculty as a pleasant, unpleasant, neutral, natural, mixed or modified smell.
- **What is taste?** It is a phenomenon derived from the four great elements that is perceptible to the gustatory faculty, as bitter, acid, sweet, acrid, salty or astringent, pleasant, unpleasant, neutral, natural, mixed or modified.
- **What is touchable?** It is a phenomenon derived from the four great elements that is perceptible to the tactile faculty, as smoothness, roughness, lightness, heaviness, flexibility, slowness, speed, cold, heat, thirst, satisfaction, strength, weakness, swoon, itching, decaying, sickness, old age, death, tiredness, rest, energy.
- **What is matter included in the sense-sphere of mental objects?** It is of five kinds: 1. infinitely small,²⁹ 2. that which pertains to space.³⁰ 3. that which pertains to the discipline of commitment,³¹ 4. that which pertains to the imagination³² and 5. that which is produced by supernatural powers.³³

BAA.4.1.2.

DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATE OF SENSATION

What is the definition of the aggregate of sensation? The six groups of sensations: the sensation produced by eye contact, the sensations produced by contact of the ear, nose, tongue, body and mental organ; these six groups are pleasant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant. In the same way, there are physical sensations either pleasant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant; mental sensations either pleasant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant; carnal (sensual) sensations either pleasant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant; noncarnal (nonsensual) sensations either pleasant, unpleasant

²⁶ Such as the sound of words that are pronounced.

²⁷ For example the sound made by the trees agitated by the wind.

²⁸ For example the sound produced by a musical instrument.

²⁹ *ābhisaṅkṣepika*, “that which is very concentrated”, i.e. the atom. See below, p. [], the definition of the atom as having no physical body and which is perceived by the intellect. Therefore the atom, very concentrated material, is included in the sense-sphere of mental objects and not in the sense-spheres of visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory or tangible objects.

³⁰ *abhyavakāśika*, “that which pertains to space”. This is the very expanded *rūpa* (matter) which does not hinder. This too is perceived by the intellect and not by the physical faculties, eye, etc.

³¹ *sāmādānika*, “that which pertains to the discipline of commitment”. This is experience met with by practice. It is *avijñāptirūpa*.

³² *parikalpita*, “imagined”. This is *rūpa*, material (as appearance) produced by the imagination.

³³ *vaibutvika*, “that which is produced by supernatural powers”. These are the things produced by the *rddhibalas*, by the power of the *dhyānas*, *vimokṣa*, etc.

or neither pleasant nor unpleasant; similarly there are sensations either pleasant, unpleassant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant associated with greed (*gredha*); sensations either pleassant, unpleasant or neither pleasant nor unpleasant associated with renunciation (*naiṣkramya*).

- **What is physical sensation?** It is a sensation associated with the five kinds of consciousnesses corresponding to the five physical senses.
- **What is mental sensation?** It is a sensation associated with the mental consciousness.
- **What is carnal (sensual) sensation?** It is a sensation associated with lust for the self.
- **What is noncarnal (nonsensual) sensation?** It is a sensation free of this lust.
- **What is sensation associated with greed?** It is the sensation associated with greed for the five sense pleasures.
- **What is sensation associated with renunciation?** It is the sensation that is free from the above-mentioned lust.

BAA.4.1.3. **DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATE OF PERCEPTION**

What is the definition of the aggregate of perception? The six groups of perceptions: the perception produced by eye contact, the perceptions produced by contact with the ear, nose, tongue, body and mental organ, by means of which one perceives an object provided with marks (*sanimitta*), an object without marks (*nimitta*), a limited object (*parīta*), a vast object (*mahadgata*), an infinite object (*apramāna*), and also the sphere of nothingness where one thinks “There is nothing at all” (*nāsti kiñcid ityākiñcanyāyatana*).

- **What is perception provided with marks?** All perceptions except for those of a person skilled in the inexpressible (*avyavahārakuśala*), of the person who has attained the signless state (*animittadhātusamāpanna*) and of the person who is at the peak of existence (*bhavāgrasamāpanna*).
- **What is perception without marks?** They are the perceptions excluded above.
- **What is limited perception?** It is that by which one perceives the world of desire (*kāmadhātu*).
- **What is vast perception?** It is that by which one perceives the world of form (*rūpadhātu*).
- **What is infinite perception?** It is that by which one perceives the sphere of limitless space (*ākāśantyāyatana*) and the sphere of limitless consciousness (*vijñānantyāyatana*).
- **What is perception of nothingness?** It is that by which one perceives the sphere of nothingness (*ākiñcanyāyatana*).

BAA.4.1.4. **DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATE OF FORMATIONS**

What is the definition of the aggregate of formation? The six groups of volition (intention) (*cetanā*): the volition produced by eye-contact, the volitions produced by contact with the ear, nose, tongue, body and

mind organ, by means of which one is led towards a good state, towards impurity and towards discrimination of states.

Thus, except for sensation and perception,

- (A) volition or intention, together with the other mental phenomena (*caitasika dharma*) as well as
- (B) the formations not associated with mind (*cittaprayukta samskāra*), is called the aggregate of formation.

BAA.4.1.4.a. **(A) VOLITION/INTENTION, TOGETHER WITH THE OTHER MENTAL PHENOMENA (CAITASIKA DHARMA)**

What are these formations?

1. Attention (*manaskāra*), [mental egagement].³⁴
2. contact (*sparśa*) [contact],
3. wish (*chanda*) [aspiration],
4. determination (*adhimokṣa*) [belief],
5. memory (*smṛti*) [recollection],
6. concentration (*samādhi*) [meditative stabilization],
7. wisdom (*prajñā*) [superior knowledge],
8. faith (*śraddhā*) [faith].
9. self-respect (*hri*) [shame],
10. human respect, decorum (*apatrāpya*) [embarrassment],
11. absence of lust (*alobha*) [non-attachment],
12. absence of hatred (*adveṣa*) [non-hatred],
13. absence of delusion (*amoha*) [non-ignorance],
14. energy (*vīrya*) [joyous effort],
15. relaxation, pliancy (*praśrabdhi*) [suppleness],
16. diligence (*apramāda*) [conscientiousness or heedfulness],
17. equanimity (*upekṣa*) [equanimity],
18. non-violence (*avihimsā*) [non-harmfulness],
19. lust, attachment (*rāga*) [desire],

³⁴ Definitions in square brackets are from Khenpo Tsultrim Gyamtso Rinpoche, Lorig

20. aversion (*pratigha*) [anger],
21. pride (*māna*) [pride],
22. ignorance (*avidyā*) [ignorance],
23. scepticism (*vicikitsā*) [doubt].
24. the view of the transitory collections (*satkāyadr̥ṣṭi*) [belief in a self],
25. the concept of holding extreme views (*antagrāhadr̥ṣṭi*) [belief in the extremes],
26. attachment to beliefs (*dṛṣṭiparāmarśa*) [esteeming of views],
27. attachment to observances and rituals (*śīlavrataparāmarśa*) [esteeming of morality and ascetic practices],
28. wrong views (*mithyādr̥ṣṭi*) [false views],
29. anger (*krodha*) [wrath],
30. grudge (*upanāha*) [resentment],
31. hypocrisy (*mrakṣa*) [concealment],
32. malice (*pradāśa*) [spite],
33. jealousy (*īrṣyā*) [envy].
34. avarice (*mātsarya*) [avarice],
35. deception (*māyā*) [hypocrisy],
36. deceit (*śāṭhya*) [deceit],
37. self-conceit (*mada*) [self-satisfaction]],
38. violence (*vihimsā*) [harmfulness],
39. lack of self-respect (*āhrīkya*) [non-shame],
40. lack of human respect (*anapatrāpya*) [non-embarrassment],
41. apathy (*styāna*) [lethargy],
42. excitement (*auddhatya*) [agitation],
43. lack of faith (*āśradhyā*) [non-faith],
44. laziness (*kausīdya*) [laziness],
45. indolence (*pramāda*) [non-conscientiousness],
46. confused memory (*muṣitasmr̥titā*) [forgetfulness],
47. inattentiveness (*asamprajanya*) [non-introspection],

48. distraction (*vikṣepa*) [distraction],
49. sluggishness, drowsiness (*middha*),
50. remorse (*kaukrtya*) [contrition or remorse],
51. investigation (*vitarka*),
52. reflection (*vicāra*) [analysis].

What is volition (*cetana*) [intention]? It is construction by the mind (*chittābhisaṃskāra*), mental activity (*manaskarma*). Its **function** is to direct the mind in the domain of wholesome (*kuśala*), unwholesome (*akuśala*) or neutral (*avyākṛta*) actions.

1. What is attention (*manaskāra*)? It is persistence of mind (*cetasa ābhogah*). Its **function** is keep the mind (*cittadhāraṇa*) on the object (*ālambana*).

2. What is contact (*sparśa*)? It is that which is analogous to the transformation of a faculty³⁵ when the three-fold union³⁶ takes place. Its **function** is to provide a basis for sensation (*vedanā*).

3. What is will (*chanda*)? It is the wanting-to-do (*kartṛkāmatā*) that is connected closely with the desired object. Its **function** is to provide a basis for exertion.

4. What is belief (*adhimokṣa*)? It is the fact of remaining fixed on the object selected by choice. Its **function** is not to re-examine [one's decision].

5. What is memory (*smṛti*)? It is not forgetting the thought (*cetas*) concerning the object experienced³⁷. Its **function** is non-distraction.

6. What is concentration (*samādhi*)? It is the one-pointedness of the mind (*cittasyaikāgratā*) on the object to be examined. Its **function** is to provide a basis for knowledge (*jñāna*).

7. What is superior knowledge (*prajñā*)? It is the investigation of the qualities (*dharma*) of the object to be examined. Its **function** is the exclusion of doubt (*saṃśaya*).

8. What is faith (*śraddhā*)? It is complete and firm conviction (*abhisampratyaya*) with respect to what exists (*astitva*), serene joy (*prasāda*) relative to good qualities (*guṇavatna*) and the aspiration (*abhilāṣa*) for capability (*sākyatva*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for will.

³⁵ *indriyavikārapariccheda*. “This meaning of pariccheda is not known in our glossaries.” La Vallée Poussin, Siddhi, p.144.

³⁶ *trikasannipāta*, “three-fold union” is the coming together of a sense-faculty, an object and the consciousness. *indriya-viśaya-vijñānani trīnyeva trikam*. Trimśika, p. 20. Cf. *chakkuñ ca paṭicca rūpe ca uppajjati cakkhuviññāṇam, tinnam saṅgatiphasso* (M III, p.281).

³⁷ *saṃstutavastu*, “the object experienced”. Trimśikā, p. 26, explains *saṃstutavastu* as *pūrvānubhūtam* “experienced at some other time”.

9. What is self-respect (*hrī*)? It is personally being ashamed of doing harm. Its **function** is to provide a basis for abstaining from bad behavior (*duścarita*).

10. What is embarrassment, human respect, decorum (*apatrāpya*)? It is being ashamed of doing harm in consideration of others. Its **function** is the same as above.

11. What is absence of lust (*alobha*)? It is being unattached to existence (*bhava*) or to the tools of existence (*bhavopakarana*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for stopping bad conduct.

12. What is absence of hatred (*adveṣa*)? It is absence of ill-will (*anāghāta*) with regard to living beings (*sattva*), to suffering (*duhkha*) and to the conditions for suffering (*duhhasthāniya dharma*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for stopping bad conduct.

13. What is absence of delusion (*amoha*)? It is knowledge (*jñāna*) or discernment (*pratisamkhyā*) concerning the results of actions (*vipāka*), concerning the teachings (*āgama*) or penetration (*adhigama*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for stopping bad conduct.

14. What is exertion, diligence (*vīrya*)? It is a resolute mental effort (*cetaso ‘bhyutsāhaḥ*) directed towards wholesome things (*kuśala*) whether as preparation (*sannāha*), or as application (*prayoga*), or as absence of weakness (*alīnatva*), or as irreversibility (*avyāvr̥tti*), or as non-satisfaction (*asantuṣṭi*). Its **function** is to realize fulfilment and accomplishment in a favorable direction.

15. What is relaxation, pliancy (*praśrabdi*)? It is the flexibility (*karmaṇyatā*) of body and mind attained by relaxing the rigidity (*dauṣṭhulya*)³⁸ of body and mind. Its **function** is to eliminate any obstruction.

16. What is diligence (*apramāda*)? It is the development of wholesome conditions by means of non-greed, non-hatred and non-delusion accompanied by exertion, and thus it is the protection of the mind against impure conditions (*sāsrava dharma*). Its **function** is to realize the fulfilment of and accomplishment of mundane (*laukika*) and supramundane (*lokottara*) happiness.

17. What is equanimity (*upekṣā*)? It is evenness of mind (*cittasamatā*), the passiveness of the mind (*cittapraṣaṭhatā*),³⁹ the disinterested and stable state of mind (*citasyānābhogāvasthitatā*) that counteracts impure states (*saṃkliṣṭavihara*). It is based on the absence of lust, hatred and delusion, accompanied by exertion. Its **function** is not to present any opportunity for the defilements (*saṃklesa*).

18. What is non-violence? (*avihimsā*)? It is compassion (*karuṇā*) which belongs to absence of hatred. Its **function** is not to torment.

³⁸ *dauṣṭhulya*. Trimśika, p. 27, explains the word as *kāyacittayorakarmaṇyatā saṃkleśikadharmaḥjanī cha* ‘the rigidity of body and mind and the seeds of the defilements’. In Pāli the word usually means ‘bad, unseemly, shameless, wicked’.

³⁹ *cittapraṣaṭhatā*. Trimśika, p. 28, explains the word thus: *anabhisamśkārenāprayatnena samāhitachetaso yathābhīyogaṁ samasyaiva yā pravṛttih sācittapraṣaṭhatā*. ‘Passiveness of the mind (*cittapraṣaṭhatā*) is the continuity of the state of the stable and even mind already realized, without construction and effortlessly.’ *praśata* is derived from the root *śāṭ* ‘to be lazy’.

19. What is lust, attachment (*rāga*)? It is attachment to the three realms of existence. Its **function** is to cause suffering.

20. What is aversion (*pratigha*)? It is ill-will (*āgāta*) towards living beings, suffering and the conditions of suffering. Its **function** is to provide a basis for unhappy states⁴⁰ and bad conduct.

21. What is pride (*māna*)? It is an inflated mind (*cittasyonnatih*) supported by the idea of self. Its **function** is to provide a basis for the appearance of disrespect (*agaurava*) and suffering.

22. What is ignorance (*avidyā*)? It is the absence of knowledge (*ajñāna*) in regard to the three realms of existence (*traidhātu*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for the appearance of the defilements, erroneous decisions and doubts concerning the teachings (*dharma*).

23. What is doubt (*vicikitsā*)? It is doubt or uncertainty or scepticism (*vimati*) with regard to the Truths (*satya*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for not becoming involved with the wholesome (*kuśalapakṣa*).

24. What is the view of the transitory collections, the concept of self (*satkāyadṛṣṭi*)? It is the assumption, the bias, the concept, the viewpoint, the opinion of the person who considers the five aggregates of attachment as a ‘self’ or belonging to a ‘self’. Its **function** is to provide a basis for all kinds of beliefs.⁴¹

25. What is the view of holding extremes (*antagrāhadṛṣṭi*)? It is the assumption, the bias, the concept, the viewpoint, the opinion of the person who considers the five aggregates of attachment as eternal (*śāśvata*) or as being annihilated by death (*uccheda*). Its **function** is to prevent liberation by the Middle Way.

26. What is attachment to opinions (*drṣṭiparāmarśa*)? It is the assumption, the bias, the concept, the viewpoint, the opinion of the person who considers an opinion or the five aggregates of attachment forming the basis of these opinions as being the best, the highest, the most eminent and ultimate. Its **function** is to furnish a basis for holding false ideas.⁴²

⁴⁰ *asparśavihāra*, equivalent to the Pāli *aphāsuvihāra* which means ‘unhappy state’, ‘disagreeable life or existence’. There is no question about the meaning of the word *asparśavihara* because the Trimśikā, p. 28, clearly explains: ‘sparśa sukham, tena sahitō vihārah sparśavihārah, nsparśavihāro’sparśavihārah, duḥkhasahita ityarthah’. ‘Sparśa’ means happiness, an existence provided with this happiness is *sparśavihāra*, (that which is not) *asparśavihāra* means ‘provided with suffering’. Thus *asparśavihāra* means ‘an unhappy or sad state, a disagreeable existence’. *Sparśa* usually means ‘contact’. In a larger sense, it can mean ‘association’, ‘harmony’, and thus the idea of *sukha* ‘happiness’, as it is given in the Trimśikā, may be introduced in a labored way. But in Sanskrit Buddhist texts, *sparśavihāra* and *asparśavihāra* are used as technical terms, probably after the Pāli words *phāsuvihāra* and *aphāsuvihāra*.

⁴¹ *sarvadṛṣṭigata*, ‘all kinds of opinions’. Here *gata* does not mean ‘gone’, but rather ‘group’, ‘multitude’. Cf. the Pāli expression *diṭṭigatam diṭṭigahanam*. Cf. also the Tibetan translation of *sarvadṛṣṭigat* as *lta ba thams cad*, ‘all opinions’.

⁴² *Drṣṭiparāmarśa* is clinging to philosophical and metaphysical opinions. *Śīlaparāmarśa* is clinging to observances and outer rituals.

27. What is attachment to observances and rituals (*śīlavrataparāmarśa*)? It is the assumption, the bias, the concept, the viewpoint, the opinion of the person who considers observances and rituals or the five aggregates of attachment forming the basis, as being pure, true (or bringing liberation)⁴³ and leading to emancipation. Its **function** is to furnish a basis for fruitless efforts.

28. What is wrong view (*mithyādrṣṭi*)? It is the assumption, the bias, the concept, the viewpoint, the opinion of the person who denies cause (*hetu*) and effect (*phala*), or action (*kriyā*), or who rejects the reality of what is (*sat vastu*), or who imagines falsely. Its **function** is to completely uproot wholesome roots (*kuśalamūla*), to provide a basis for strengthening unwholesome roots (*akuśalamūla*), to persevere in unwholesomeness and not to persevere in wholesomeness.⁴⁴

Amongst these five concepts, how many are affirmative (*samāropadṛṣṭi*) and how many are negative (*apavādadṛṣṭi*)? Four are affirmative because of the fact that they attribute a particular nature (*svabhāvavišeṣa*) to the knowable (*jñeya*) and also because they attribute the highest purity (*agraśuddhi*) to that opinion.⁴⁵ One is negative.

As for views relative both at the beginning (*pūrvānta*) and at the end (*aparānta*), by how many of the preceding views may these be known? By two or by all. As for views relative to indeterminate subjects (*avyākṛta-vastu*), by how many may they be known? By two or by all.

What are the errors on seeing which the Blessed One was led for five reasons to deny the presence of a self (*ātman*) in the aggregates, the elements and the spheres? By seeing five errors (*doṣa*) contained in the concept of self (*satkāyadrṣṭi*), viz., the error of differing characteristics (*vilakṣaṇatā*), the error of impermanence (*anityatā*), the error of dependency (*asvātantrya*),⁴⁶ the error of absence of body (*nirdehatā*) and the error of effortless liberation (*ayatnato mokṣa*).

As for the twenty types of erroneous views concerning the self with regard to the five aggregates, viz., one considers form (*rūpa*) as the self (*ātma*), the self as having a nature of form (*rūpavantam ātmānam*), form as belonging to the self (*ātmīyam rūpam*), or the self belonging to form (*rūpe ātmānam*); and one considers feeling, perception, formation and consciousness as self, or the self as having consciousness, consciousness as belonging to the self, and the self as belonging to

⁴³ Gokhale reads *yuktito* as ‘as true’. Pradhan reads *muktito* as ‘as liberation’. The Chinese and Tibetan versions confirm Pradhan’s reading.

⁴⁴ Cf. Kośa, ch. IV, 170 seq.

⁴⁵ According to Buddhasimha’s commentary, the four words *svabhāva*, *višeṣa*, *agra* and *śuddhi* correspond to the four views *satkāyadrṣṭi*, *antagrāhadṛṣṭi*, *drṣṭiparāmarśa* and *śīlavrataparāmarśa*. If this explanation were to be accepted, the translation would be: ‘Four are affirmative ideas because of the fact that they attribute a nature (*svabhāva*) and a distinctive characteristic (*višeṣa*) to the knowable (*jñeya*), and also because they attribute excellence (*agra*) and purity (*śuddhi*) to the views.’

⁴⁶ Gokhale reads *asvātantrya* as ‘non-independency’ According to Pradhan, *asvāsthya* also means ‘non-independency’ (*a+sva+sthā* ‘not to depend on oneself’). The Chinese and Tibetan versions confirm the meaning ‘non-independency’.

consciousness⁴⁷ -- among these, how many are views concerning the self and how many are views concerning things belonging to the self? Five are views concerning the self and fifteen are views concerning things belonging to the self. Because of the connection with the self (*sambandhātmīyatā*), because of the dependency of the self (*vaśavartanātmīyatā*) and because of the inseparability of the self (*avinirbhāgavṛttyātmīyatā*).

Should one say that the view of self is based on an established reality (*nirūpitavastuka*) or that it is not based on an established reality (*anirūpitavastuka*)? One should say that it is not based on an established reality, but that it is similar to the belief that the rope is a snake.

29. What is anger (*krodha*)? It is the ill-will of mind that belongs to the loathing caused by an actual harm. Its **function** is to provide a basis for violence, for the use of weapons, sticks, etc.

30. What is grudge (*upanāha*)? It is then not to give up the intention of revenge. It also belongs to loathing. Its **function** is to provide a basis for impatience.

31. What is hypocrisy (*mrakṣa*)? It is the hiding of one's own faults when one is rightly accused. It belongs to delusion (*moha*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for remorse and a feeling of ill-being.

32. What is malice (*pradāśa*)? It is the ill-will of mind that belongs to loathing, preceded by anger (*krodha*) and by grudge (*upanāha*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for violent, harsh, insulting speech and a basis for accumulation of evil (*apuṇya*) and for a state of ill-being.

33. What is jealousy (*īrṣyā*)? It is the angry thought of the person who wants profit and honor. It belongs to the hatred produced by intolerance (*amarṣakṛta*) to the well-being of others. Its **function** is to produce affliction and a state of ill-being.

34. What is greed (*mātsarya*)? It is the strong mental attachment (*chetasa āgraha*) of the person who wants profit and honor. It belongs to desire (*rāga*) for the necessities (*pariṣkāra*, the material things necessary for living). Its **function** is to provide a basis opposite to the opposite of the simple life (*asamlekhā*).⁴⁸

35. What is deception (*māyā*)? It is the show of false virtues by the person who aims for profit and honor. It belongs to greed and delusion. Its **function** is to provide a basis for a false way of living.

36. What is deceit (*śāthyā*)? It is the tendency to hide real faults by the person who aims for profit and honor. It belongs to greed and delusion. It opposes acceptance of good advice (*samyag avavāda*).

37. What is self-conceit (*mada*)? It is the happy complacency arising from good health, from youth, from a sign of long life or from any other intoxicating benefit (*sāsrava sampatti*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for all the major and minor defilements (*sarvakleśopakleśa*).

⁴⁷ Cf. Cūlavedalla-sutta, M. I, p.300: *rūpaṁ attato samanupassati, rūpavantaṁ vā attānam, attani vā rūpaṁ, rupasmim vā attānam*. The same in regard to *vedanā, saññā, saṃkhāra* and *viññāṇa*. Therefore there are twenty-three kinds of *sakkāyadiṭṭhi*.

⁴⁸ In Pāli *sallekha* means ‘simplicity, austerity’, not possessing many things, Cf. *sallekhavutti*, Vam. p.65.

38. What is violence (*vihimsā*)? It is cruelty, lack of compassion and love. It belongs to hatred (*pratigha*). Its **function** is to do evil.

39. What is lack of self-respect (*āhrīkya*)? It is the fact of being shameless of doing harm on the part of oneself. It belongs to greed, hatred and delusion. Its **function** consists of bringing on all the major and minor defilements.

40. What is lack of respect for people, non-embarrassment (*anapatrāpya*)? It is the fact of being shameless of doing harm because of others. It belongs to greed, hatred and delusion. Its **function** is to induce all the major and minor defilements.

41. What is apathy (*styāna*)? It is the absence of flexibility of mind (*cittākarmanyatā*) and it belongs to delusion. Its **function** is to induce all the major and minor defilements.

42. What is excitement (*auddhatya*)? It is the mental restlessness of the person who is pursuing something pleasant (*śubhanimitta*). It belongs to greed. Its **function** is to oppose calmness (*śamatha*).

43. What is lack of faith (*āśraddhya*)? It is the absence of strong complete conviction; it is the lack of serenity and aspiration for the good. It belongs to delusion. Its **function** is to provide a basis for laziness.

44. What is laziness (*kausīdya*)? It is the lack of effort on the part of the mind caused by the pleasures of sleep and rest. It belongs to delusion. Its **function** is to counteract any practices having the good as their purpose.

45. What is indolence (*pramāda*)? It is the failure to develop the good due to desire, hatred and delusion. It is associated with laziness, and it is also the failure to protect the mind against impure things (*sāsravebhyāś ca dharmebyah*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for the increase of evil and the decrease of good.

46. What is confused memory, forgetfulness (*muśitasmrītī*)? It is a memory full of defilements. Its **function** is to provide a basis for distraction (*vikṣepa*).

47. What is inattentiveness (*asamprajanya*)? It is an intellect (*prajñā*)⁴⁹ full of defilements by means of which unintentional (*asamvidita*) activities of body, speech and mind are produced. Its **function** is to provide a basis for transgressions of the moral rules (*āpatti*).

48. What is distraction (*vikṣepa*)? It is the scattering (*visāra*) of the mind and it belongs to desire, hatred and delusion. It is divided into natural distraction (*svabhāva-vikṣepa*), outer distraction (*bahirdhā-vikṣepa*), inner distraction (*adhyātma-vikṣepa*), distraction concerning the goal (*nimitta-vikṣepa*), distraction of excitement (*dauṣṭhulya-vikṣepa*) and distraction originating from intense attention (*manasikāra-vikṣepa*).

(i) **What is natural distraction?** It is the five consciousnesses.⁵⁰

⁴⁹ *Prajñā* here is translated as ‘intellect’ to distinguish it from wisdom.

⁵⁰ The consciousness associated with each of the five physical senses, eye, ear, nose, tongue and body.

- (ii) **What is outer distraction?** It is mental scattering (*cetaso visārah*) in the five sense pleasures of the person who is pursuing good.
- (iii) **What is inner distraction?** It is the torpor (*laya*), excitement (*auddhatya*) and enjoyment (*āsvāda*) of the person who is pursuing good.
- (iv) **What is distraction concerning the goal?** It is the pursuit of the good with the view of obtaining the praise of others.
- (v) **What is the distraction of unruliness⁵¹?** It is the grasping (*udgraha*), scattering (*vyavakiranā*), objectifying (*nimittikāra*) in regard to some feeling which appears as ‘I’ (*aham*), ‘mine’ (*mama*), or ‘I am’ (*asmī*) because of the unruliness coming from egoism (*ahamkāra*), from self love (*mamakāra*) and from the pride of ‘I am’ (*asmimāna*) on the part of the person who is pursuing good.
- (vi) **What is the distraction of reflection?** It is the scattering coming from doubt in a person who is entering into other [i.e., lower] states of absorption (*samāpatti*) or into other [i.e., lower] vehicles (*yāna*). Its **function** is to counteract detachment (*vairāgya*).

49. What is sluggishness or drowsiness (*middha*)? It is the narrowing of the mind (*cetaso 'bhisaṃksepaḥ*) belonging to delusion, as a result of some cause for sluggishness (*middhanimitta*), wholesome (*kuśala*), unwholesome (*akuśala*) or neutral (*avyākrta*), timely (*kāle*) or untimely (*akāle*), appropriate (*yukta*) or inappropriate (*ayukta*). Its **function** is to provide a basis for neglecting what should be done (*krtyātipatti*).

50. What is remorse (*kaukṛtya*)? It is regret or repentance of the mind (*cetaso vīpratisāraḥ*) as a result of various intentional or non-intentional, wholesome, unwholesome or neutral, timely or untimely, appropriate or inappropriate reasons. It belongs to delusion (*mohāṃśika*). Its **function** is to counteract the stability of the mind (*cittasthiti*).

51. What is investigation, examination (*vitarka*)? It is the mental discussion (*manojalpa*) that examines, dependent on intention (*cetanā*) and intellect (*prajñā*); it is coarseness of the mind (*cittasyaudārikatā*).

52. What is analysis (*vicāra*)? It is the mental discussion that reflects (*pratyavekṣaka*), dependent on intention (*cetanā*) and intellect (*prajñā*); it is subtlety of the mind (*cittasya sūkṣmatā*). The **function** of both 51 and 52 is to provide a basis for states of ease or unease (*sparsāsparśavihāra*).

Furthermore, the function of wholesome things (*kuśala dharma*) consists of eliminating that which is opposed (*vipakṣa*) to them, and the function of the major and minor defilements (*kleśopakleśa*) consists of obstructing their opposites (*pratipakṣa*).

⁵¹ Schmithausen: *Dauṣthulya* [badness]: a concept which, in this context [i.e., Yogācāra] denotes evil or wickedness as well as unwieldiness, stiffness or lack of controllability, and uneasiness or unsafeness, sometimes sensible but more often more or less subliminal, and continuously permeating the whole basis-of-existence [of ordinary persons], so that it constitutes, especially in view of the latter nuance, viz., subliminal uneasiness, a kind of intrinsic unsatisfactoriness or ‘suffering’. AV 66.

BAA.4.1.4.b.

(B) FORMATIONS NOT ASSOCIATED WITH MIND (CITTAVIPRAYUKTA SAMSKĀRA)

What are the formations not associated with mind⁵² (*cittaviprayukta sam-skāra*)?

These are:

1. acquisition (*prāpti*),
2. absorption without perception [or without discrimination] (*asamjñi-samāpatti*),
3. absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*),
4. the state of non-perception (*āsamjñika*),
5. the life faculty (*jīvitendriya*),
6. similarity of type [similar class] (*nikāyasabhāga*),
7. birth (*jāti*),
8. ageing (*jarā*),
9. duration (*sthiti*),
10. impermanence (*anityatā*),
11. groups of names (*nāmakāya*),
12. groups of words (*padakāya*),
13. groups of letters (*vyañjanakāya*).⁵³
14. the ordinary person's state (*prthagjanatva*),
15. continuity (*pravṛtti*),
16. distinction (*pratiniyama*),
17. relatedness (*yoga*),
18. speed (*java*),
19. sequence (*anukrama*),
20. time (*kāla*),
21. location (*deśa*),
22. number (*samkhyā*),
23. assemblage (*sāmagri*).

⁵² [Migme] : Nonconcurrent formations

⁵³ [Migme] : Abhidharmakośa, transl. by Pruden, gives ‘vowels and consonants’, ‘phonemes’ for *vyañjana*.

1. **What is acquisition (*prāpti*)?** Obtaining, acquisition (*pratilambha*), possession (*samanvāgama*). It is a designation (*prajñāpti*) indicating increase (*ācaya*) and decrease (*apacaya*) of wholesome (*kuśala*) and unwholesome (*akuśala*) things.
2. **What is absorption without perception (*asamjñisamāpatti*)?** It is a designation indicating the cessation (*nirodha*) of mind and unstable mental activities (*asthāvarāṇām cittacaitasikānām*) by means of mental engagement (*manasikāra*); preceded by perception of liberation (*niḥsaraṇasamjñā*) in a person who is free of desire (*vitarāga*) in the ‘completely pure’ realm (*subhakṛtsna*) but who is not yet freed from desire of the realms above that state.
3. **What is the absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*)?** It is a designation indicating the cessation of mind and unstable mental activities by means of mental engagement preceded by perception of a state of peace (*śāntavihāra*) in a person who is freed from desire in the ‘sphere of nothingness’ (*ākiñcanyāyatāna*) and who has just come out of the ‘peak of existence’ (*bhavāgra*).
4. **What is the state of non-perception (*āsamjñika*)?** It is a designation indicating the cessation of mind and unstable mental activities in a person born among the gods (*deva*) in the realm of beings without perception (*asamjñisattva*).
5. **What is the life faculty (*jīvitendriya*)?** The duration of life (*āyu*)⁵⁴ indicates a period of determined length of time (*sthitikālaniyama*) allocated by previous actions (*pūrvakarmāviddha*) for a similar class of sentient beings (*nikāyasabhāga*).⁵⁵
6. **What is similarity of type [or similar class] (*nikāyasabhāga*)?** It is a designation indicating the resemblance of the peculiar nature (*ātmabhāvasadrśatā*) of different individuals amongst the various types of beings.
7. **What is birth (*jāti*)?** It is a designation indicating the appearing into existence of formations after their disappearance (*samskarāṇām abhūtvā bhāve*) for a similar class of sentient beings (*nikāyasabhāge*).
8. **What is ageing (*jarā*)?** It is a designation indicating the change that takes place in the continuity (*prabandhānyathātva*) of formations similar in type.⁵⁶
9. **What is duration [or subsistence] (*sthiti*)?** It is a designation indicating the non-breaking of the continuity (*prabandhāvipraṇāśa*) of formations for a similar class of sentient beings.
10. **What is impermanence (*anityatā*)?** It is a designation indicating the rupture of the continuity (*prabandhaviṇābhāva*) of formations for a similar class of sentient beings.⁵⁷

⁵⁴ *Jīvitendriya* and *āyu* are used here synonymously.

⁵⁵ Cf. Dhs p. 143, verse 635: *Katamaṇ tam rūpaṇ jīvitindriyam? Yo tesaṇ rūpinam dhammānam āyu thiti yapanā yāpanā trīyanā vattanā pālanā jīvitam jīvitindriyam, idam tam jīvitindriyam.*

⁵⁶ Cf. ibid., p. 144, verse 644: *Katamaṇ tam rūpam rūpassa jaratā? Yā rūpassa jarā jīraṇatā khaṇḍiccam pāliccam valittacatā āyuno saṃhāni indriyānam paripāko, idam tam rūpam rūpasso jaratā.*

- 11. What is groups of names (*nāmakāya*)?** It is a designation indicating the identity of things (*dharmaṇām svabhāvādhivacana*).
- 12. What is groups of words (*padakāya*)?** It is a designation indicating the particularity of things (*dharmaṇām viśeṣādhivacana*).
- 13. What is groups of letters (*vyañjanakāya*)?** It is a designation indicating the syllables (*akṣara*) that constitute the basis of the two preceding classes because it makes them known (*abhivyāñjana*). The letter (*varṇa*) is just that because it describes the meaning (*arthasamvarṇana*). It is also a designation for the syllable (*akṣara*) because of the indestructibility of their synonymity (*paryākṣaraṇatā*).
- 14. What is the state of an ordinary person (*prthagjanatva*)?** It is a designation indicating the absence (*aparatilābha*) of noble qualities (*aryādhama*).
- 15. What is continuity (*pravṛtti*)?** It is a designation indicating the non-interruption (*anupaccheda*) of the continuity of causes and effects (*hetuphalaprabandha*).
- 16. What is distinction (*pratiniyama*)?** It is a designation indicating the difference (*nānatva*) of causes and effects.
- 17. What is relatedness (*yoga*)?** It is a designation indicating the correspondence (*anurūpya*) of causes and effects.
- 18. What is speed (*java*)?** It is a designation indicating the rapid succession (*āśupravṛtti*) of causes and effects.
- 19. What is sequence? (*anukrama*)?** It is a designation indicating the orderly succession (*ekatvapravṛtti*) of causes and effects.
- 20. What is time (*kāla*)?** It is a designation indicating the continuous succession of causes and effects (*hetuphalaprabandhapravṛtti*).
- 21. What is location (*deśa*)?** It is a designation indicating causes and effects in the east alone, in the south alone, in the west alone, in the north alone, below, above or everywhere in the ten directions.
- 22. What is number (*samkhyā*)?** It is a designation indicating distinctively the division (*bheda*) of the formations (*samskāra*).
- 23. What is assemblage (*sāmagrī*)?** It is a designation indicating the combination of causes, effects and conditions (*hetuphalapratyayayasamavadhāna*).

BAA.4.1.5.

DEFINITION OF THE AGGREGATE OF CONSCIOUSNESS

What is the definition of the aggregate of consciousness (*vijñāna skandhavyavasthāna*)?

It is

⁵⁷ Cf. ibid., p. 144, verse 645: *Katamāṇ tam rūpam rūpassa aniccatā?* Yo rūpassa khayo vayo bhedo (paribedho) aniccatā anataradhānam, idam tam rūpam rūpassa aniccatā.

- (1) mind (*citta*),
 - (2) the mental organ (*manas*) and also
 - (3) consciousness (*vijñāna*).
- (1) **What is mind (*citta*)?** It is the base-consciousness of all the seeds (*sarvabījakam ālayavijñānam*) impregnated by the traces (*vāsanāparibhāvita*) of the aggregates (*skandha*), of the elements (*dhātu*) and the sense-spheres (*āyatana*). The maturation-consciousness (*vipākavijñāna*) and the appropriating-consciousness (*ādānavijñāna*) are also the same thing as a result of accumulation of these traces (*tad vāsanācitātā*).
- (2) **What is the mental organ (*manas*)?** It is the object of the base-consciousness (*ālayavijñānālambana*) which always partakes of the nature of the self-conceit associated with the four defilements, viz. the belief in a ‘self’ (*ātmadrṣṭi*), attachment to a ‘self’ (*ātmasneha*), pride of ‘I am’ (*asmimāna*) and ignorance (*avidyā*). It is present everywhere (*sarvatraga*), in wholesome (*kuśala*), unwholesome (*akuśala*) or neutral (*avyākṛta*) states, except in the case where one faces the Path (*mārgasammukhībhāva*), the absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*), the level of the sages (*aśaikṣabhūmi*)⁵⁸. It is also the consciousness that ceases just prior to the six consciousnesses.
- (2) **What is the mentation/mental sense-faculty (*manas*)?** The *ālayavijñāna*, as object (*ālayavijñānālambana*), always accompanies that which is of the nature of conceiving (*manyānātmaka*) which is associated with the four defilements, viz. the view of a ‘self’ (*ātmadrṣṭi*), self-love (*ātmasneha*), the conceit ‘I am’/feeling of identity (*asmimāna*) and ignorance (*avidyā*). [That which is of the nature of conceiving, i.e., the *manas*,] is present everywhere (*sarvatraga*), in wholesome (*kuśala*), unwholesome (*akuśala*) or neutral (*avyākṛta*) states, except in the case of facing the the Path (*mārgasammukhībhāva*), the absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*), the stage of those beyond training (*aśaikṣabhūmi*)⁵⁹ and also the consciousness that has just this instant ceased among the six kinds of consciousness.
- (3) **What is consciousness (*vijñāna*)?** It includes the six groups of consciousness: the visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory, tactile and mental consciousnesses.
- **What is the visual consciousness?** It is an announcement (*prativijñapti*)⁶⁰ having the eye as its base and visible form as its object.

⁵⁸ *Aśaikṣa*, lit., “he who has no further need of training”.

⁵⁹ *Aśaikṣa*, lit., “he who has no further need of training”.

⁶⁰ *Prativijñapti* means ‘information or indication of a thing’. When the eye comes in contact with a visible form, the consciousness that there is some object in front of the eye appears. This consciousness is only a kind of reaction, a kind of response or arousal and it does not perceive what the object is; it is the *saṃjñāskandha* that perceives. For example, when the eye comes in contact with a color, the visual consciousness (*cakṣurvijñāna*) that arises is only an arousal, response or reaction announcing the presence of some color, but it neither perceives nor recognizes what the color is. It is perception (*saṃjñā*) that recognizes it as red, blue, etc.

- **What is auditory consciousness?** It is a reaction having the ear as base and sound as object.
- **What is olfactory consciousness?** It is a reaction having the nose as base and odor as object.
- **What is gustatory consciousness?** It is a reaction having the tongue as base and taste as object.
- **What is tactile consciousness?** It is a reaction having the body as object and the touchable as object.
- **What is mental consciousness?** It is a reaction having the mental organ (*manas*) as base and mental objects (*dharma*) as object.

BAA.4.2.

DEFINITION OF THE ELEMENTS

What is the definition of the elements (*dhātu*)?

The aggregate of form itself contains ten elements: the eye element and the element of form, the ear element and the element of sound, the nose element and the element of odor, the tongue element and the element of taste, the body element and the tangible element, and a part of the element of mental objects. – The aggregates of sensation, perception and formation constitute a part of the element of mental objects (*dharma-dhātu*). – The aggregate of consciousness itself contains seven elements of consciousness, viz., the six elements of consciousness beginning with the eye plus the element of the mental organ (*mānas*).

Which are the elements of mental objects (*dharma-dhātu*) that are not included in the aggregates?

These are the unconditioned (*asamskrta*), which are eight in number:

- (1) the ‘suchness’ [essential nature] of wholesome things (*kuśala-dharma-tathatā*),
- (2) the ‘suchness’ of unwholesome things (*akuśala-dharma-tathatā*),
- (3) the ‘suchness’ of neutral things (*avyākṛta-dharma-tathatā*),
- (4) space (*ākāśa*),
- (5) cessation not due to discrimination⁶¹ [cessation not due to the wisdom-knowledges] (*apratisamkhyānirodha*),
- (6) cessation due to discrimination⁶² [cessation due to the wisdom-knowledges] (*pratisamkhyānirodha*),
- (7) the immovable, serenity⁶³ (*āniñjya*),
- (8) cessation of perception and feeling (*saṃjñāvedayita-nirodha*).

⁶¹ Mipham Rinpoche, Gateway to Knowledge, vol. 1

⁶² Mipham Rinpoche, ibid.

⁶³ Mipham Rinpoche, ibid.

1. What is the suchness of wholesome things (*kuśaladharma-tathātā*)? It is the fact that there is no ‘self’ (*nairātmyam*); it is known as empty (*śūnya*), signless (*animitta*), the peak of existence, supreme reality (*bhūtakoṭī*), ultimate reality (*paramārtha*) and the Dharma element (*dharma-dhātu*).

Why is suchness (*tathatā*) called thus? Because of the unchangeability of its nature (*ananyathābhāvata*).

Why is suchness called selfless (*nairātmya*)? Because it does not have the two kinds of ‘self’.⁶⁴

Why is suchness called empty (*śūnya*)? Because it is devoid of all the impurities.

Why is suchness called signless (*animitta*)? Because all signs have been obliterated.

Why is suchness called the peak of existence (*bhūtakoṭī*)? Because it is not an object of transformation.

Why is suchness called ultimate reality (*paramārtha*)? Because it is the object of ultimate superior knowledge.

Why is suchness called the Dharma element (*dharma-dhātu*)? Because it is the fundamental mark of the Buddha’s teaching for all the disciples and pratyekabuddhas.

2. The suchness of unwholesome things and 3. the suchness of neutral things should be understood in the same way as the suchness of wholesome things.

4. What is space (*ākāśa*)? It is the absence of matter (*rūpa*) because it allows the manifestation of all activities.

5. What is cessation not due to the wisdom-knowledges (*apratisaṃkhyānirodha*)? It is cessation that is not disjunction, [not blocked]⁶⁵ (*na visamyo-ga*).

6. What is cessation due to the wisdom-knowledges (*pratisaṃkhyānirodha*)? It is cessation that is disjunction, [blocked] (*visamyo-ga*).

7. What is the immoveable (*āniñjya*)? It is the cessation of pleasure and pain in the individual who is free of attachment in the ‘completely-pure’ realm (*śubhakṛtsna*) but who is not free of attachment of the realms above.

8. What is cessation of perception and sensation (*saṃjñāvedayitanirodha*)? It is the cessation of mind and unstable mental activities and also of certain mental activities that are stable as a result of attention [absorption] (*manasikāra*) preceded by a peaceful state (*śāntavihāra*) in an individual who is free of attachment (*vītarāga*) in the ‘sphere of nothingness’ (*ākiñcanyāyatana*) and who has come out of the ‘peak of existence’ (*bhavāgra*).

⁶⁴ *pudgalanairātmya* and *dharmanairātmya*.

⁶⁵ M.R.

In this way, these sixteen things, viz., (1-5) five kinds of matter,⁶⁶ (6-8) the aggregates of sensation, perception and formation, and (9-16) the eight unconditioned things (*asaṃskṛta dharma*), are called the element of mental objects (*dharmadhātu*).

BAA.4.3.

DEFINITION OF THE SPHERE

What is the definition of the sphere (*āyatana*)?

The ten elements of matter themselves constitute the ten spheres of matter. – The seven elements of consciousness themselves constitute the sphere of the mental organ (*mana āyatana*). – The element of mental objects (*dharmadhātu*) is the sphere of mental objects (*dharmaśayatana*).

In this way, the aggregates (*skandha*), the elements (*dhātu*) and the spheres (*āyatana*) are made up of three things: the aggregate of form (*rūpaskandha*), the element of mental objects (*dharmadhātu*) and the sphere of the mental organ (*mana āyatana*).

BAA.5.

EXAMPLE (DRŚTĀNTA)

It has been mentioned that there is the eye (*caksu*) and the eye-element (*cakṣurdhātu*). Is there the eye when there is the eye-element or is it that there is the eye-element when there is the eye?

There may be the case where there is the eye but not the eye-element, such as the final eye of an arhant. There may be the case where there is the eye-element but not the eye, such as in an egg or in an embryo (*kalala*) or *arbuda* or *peśi*, or such as an eye not yet obtained, or an eye obtained and lost in the mother's womb. Also there is the case of the visual potentiality of an ordinary person (*prthagjana*) born in the formless realm (*ārūpya*).

In the other cases, there can be both, the eye and the eye-element.

There can be the case where there is neither the eye nor the eye-element, such as in the case of those who have attained nirvāṇa without residue (*nirupadhiśeṣanirvāṇa*), or in the case of an *ārya* born in the formless realm (*ārūpya*).

One should understand the ear, nose, tongue, body and their elements in the same way as the eye and the eye-element.

Is there the mental organ (*manas*) when there is the element of the mental organ (*manodhātu*), or is there the element of the mental organ when there is the mental organ?

There may be the case where there is the mental organ but not the element of the mental organ, such as in the case of an arhant's last moment of thought.

There may be the case where there is the element of the mental organ but not the mental organ itself, such as the mental organ of those who have attained cessation (*nirodha samāpanna*).

⁶⁶ (1) The atom, (2) that which belongs to space, (3) that which belongs to the discipline, (4) that which belongs to the imagination, (5) that which is produced by supernatural powers.

There are the cases where both the mental organ and the element of the mental organ are found at the same time, such as in the remaining cases.

There may be the case where there is neither mental organ nor the element of mental organ, such as in the case of those who have attained nirvāṇa without residue (*nirupadhiśeṣanirvāṇa*).

Does a person born in a particular realm see, with the eye of that realm, the forms of only that particular realm?

With the eye of that particular realm he sees the forms of that same realm and also the forms of other realms. A person born in the realm of sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*) sees, with the eye of this realm, the forms of the realm of sense pleasures. But with the eye of the realm of form (*rūpadhātu*), which is higher, one sees also the forms belonging to the lower realms. In the same way that one sees the forms with one's eye, one hears the sounds with one's ear. Just as a person born in the realm of sense pleasures smells the odors, tastes the tastes, feels the contacts belonging to that realm, with the nose, tongue, and body of that particular realm, in the same way a person born in the realm of form feels the contacts with the body of that realm. In the realm of form there is, of course, neither smell nor taste because there is no desire for natural food.⁶⁷ Thus in this realm there is no olfactory or gustatory consciousness. A person born in the realm of the sense pleasures can know equally, with the mental organ of this realm, pure things (*anāsravadharma*) as well as those belonging to each of the three realms (*traidhātuka*).

Just as it is for a person born in the realm of the sense pleasures, so it is for a person born in the realm of form. A person born in the formless realm (*ārūpya*), with the mental organ of this realm, knows pure things (*anāsravadharma*) as well as those of their own formless realm. With a pure (*anāsrava*) mental organ one is able to know pure things (*anāsravadharma*) as well as those of each of the three realms (*traidhātuka*).

BAA.6.

SUCCESSION/GRADATION (ANUKRAMA)

Why are the aggregates arranged in this order?

- Firstly, according to the locus of consciousness. There are four loci of consciousness and four forms of consciousness.
- Secondly, according to the relationship that exists between them: in relation to form, there is sensation; when one has sensation, one perceives; when one perceives, one thinks (constructs mentally); when one thinks (constructs mentally), consciousness is present in all these states.
- Thirdly, according to the defilement and the purification (*samkleśayadāna*): wherever there is defilement, there is purification. Consciousness becomes defiled or purified by sensation, by grasping of an object, by mental construction.

The order in which the aggregates are arranged is thus explained in this way.

Why are the elements arranged in this order?

⁶⁷ Tibetan: khams kyi zas kyi ‘dod chags dan bral ba.

- They are arranged thus according to some particular worldly activities.⁶⁸ In this world, first one sees; having seen, one speaks; after which, one bathes, one puts on perfumes and garlands, then one partakes of various kinds of delicious food, then one uses various couches and seats, servers and servants.
- Moreover, in the different situations, there is imaginative thought by the mental organ. In this way, the order of the outer elements is to be understood in relation to the order of the inner elements. Likewise, the order of the element of consciousness should be understood in this way.

Just as it is with the order of arrangement of the elements, so it is for the order of arrangement of the spheres (*āyatana*).

BAA.7.

MEANING (ARTHA)

What is the meaning of aggregate (*skandha*)?

- Whatever form there is, past, future or present, inner or outer, coarse or subtle, inferior or superior, far or near, if one puts all of this together, this is what is called the aggregate of form⁶⁹ in the sense of a ‘heap’ like a collection or heap of riches (*vittarāsi*).⁷⁰ It is the same for the other aggregates up to the aggregate of consciousness.
- *Skandha* is also called ‘trunk’ on account of the immensity of suffering, as, for example, the great trunk of a tree (*mahāvṛkṣaskandha*). It is said in the sūtra: the appearance of the great mass of suffering.⁷¹
- *Skandha* is also called ‘shoulder’ on account of carrying the burden (*bhāravahanatā*) of defilements,⁷² as one carries a burden on one’s shoulder (*skandhena bhāram udvahati*).

What is the meaning of element (*dhātu*)?

It signifies

- the seed of everything (*sarva-dharma-bīja*),
- the possessor of its own nature,⁷³

⁶⁸ Tibetan: ‘jig rten gyi tha snyad dan mthun pa’i phyir ro.

⁶⁹ Cf. Vbh p.1, *yam kiñci rūpaṁ atītānāgatapaccuppannam aijhattikam vā bahiddhā vā olarikam vā sukhumanam vā hīnaṁ vā paññataṁ vā yaṁ dūre santike vā, tad-ekajjhāṁ abhisamyūhitvā abhisamkhipitvā: ayam vuccati rūpakkhandho.*

⁷⁰ Cf. *rāsatṭhena khandatṭho*. Vsm. p. 478.

Upādānakkhandha: Upādānassa paccayabhūtā dhammapuñjā dhammarāsayoti attho. Ma I, p. 286.

⁷¹ Cf. *kevalassa dukkhakkhandhassa samudayo hoti* in the *Paticcasamuppāda*, e.g. S II, p. 74.

⁷² Cf. *Bhārā have pañcakkhandhā*. S III, p. 25.

⁷³ Cf. *Attano sabhāvam dhārentīti dhātuyo*. Vsm. p. 485.

- the possessor of the relation of cause and effect, and
- possessor of all the forms of things (*sarvaprakāra dharma*).

What is the meaning of sense-sphere (*āyatana*)?

It signifies the gate of entry from which consciousness appears (*vijñānāyatadvāra*).

As the Buddha said:

Form is like a ball of foam, sensation is like a bubble, perception is like a mirage, formations are like a banana tree and consciousness is like an illusion.⁷⁴

What is the meaning of the words from ‘form is like a ball of foam’ up to ‘consciousness is like an illusion’? They signify the absence of a self, impurity, lack of satisfaction, absence of solidity and absence of substantiality.

⁷⁴ Cf. *Pheṇapiṇḍūpamārūpaṇī, vedanā bubbuṇḍūpamā, marīcikūpamā saññā, saṃkārā kadalūpamā, māyūpamā ca viññāṇam, dīḍitādiccabandunā*. S III, p. 142.

BAB.

SECOND SECTION DIVISION/CLASSIFICATION OF ASPECTS (PRAKĀRAPRABHEDA)

What are the divisions of aspects (*prakāraprabheda*)⁷⁵ of the aggregates, the elements and the spheres? Here is a list of the 29 classes (*uddāna*):

1. Substance (*dravya*), [etc.,] 5. knowables (*jñeya*), 6. form (*rūpa*), [etc.,] 9. outflow (impurity, *āsrava*), [etc.,] 15. arising (*utpanna*), etc., 19. passing away (*atīta*), etc., 25. conditions (*pratyaya*), [etc., 29. inferior/superior],

- i. what (how, *katham*),
- ii. how many (*kati*) and
- iii. for what purpose or why (*kim artham*).⁷⁶

1.a. Among the aggregates (*skandha*), elements (*dhātu*) and spheres (*āyatana*), which exist substantially (*dravyasat*)? How many exist substantially? For what purpose do we examine those that exist substantially?

That which exists substantially is a sense object that exists but not merely nominally and without reference to other things.

All aggregates, elements, spheres exist substantially.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a ‘self that would be substance’ (*ātmadravya*).

1.b. Among the aggregates, elements and spheres, which are those that exist as designation (*prajñaptisat*)? How many [of them] exist as designation? For what purpose are those that exist as designation examined?

That which exists as designation is a sense object that exists nominally and in reference to other things.

All aggregates, elements, spheres exist as designation.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is a designation.

2.a. Among the aggregates, elements, spheres, which exist conventionally (*saṃvṛtisat*)? How many exist conventionally? For what purpose are those that exist conventionally examined?

The object of defilement is that which exists conventionally.

All aggregates, elements, spheres exist conventionally.

⁷⁵ Pradhan restores the word *vikalpa*. But the original word would seem to be *prakāraprabheda*. See Gokhale, p. 29, line 7, and Pradhan, p. 31, line 14.

⁷⁶ This is the translation of an *Uddāna*. The *Uddāna* is a type of verse indicating the table of contents of a chapter and they are often found at the end of the chapters in the Pāli texts.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is the object of defilement (*saṃkleśananimittātman*).

2.b. Among the aggregates, elements, spheres, which exist in the ultimate sense (*paramārthasat*)? How many exist in the ultimate sense? For what purpose are those that exist in the ultimate sense examined?

The object of purification is that which exists in the ultimate sense.

All aggregates, etc., exist in the ultimate sense.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is the object of purification (*vyavadānanimitta*).

3.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are the knowables (*jñeya*)? How many are knowables? For what purpose are the knowables examined?

There are five knowables: 1. form (*rūpa*), 2. mind (*citta*), 3. mental activities (*caitasika*), 4. formations not associated with mind (*cittaviprayukta saṃskāra*), 5. the unconditioned (*asamśkrta*). Wherever there is defilement or purification, that which is defiled or is purified, that which defiles or purifies, no matter what the occasion or what the purification may be, everything in that relationship is knowable.

1. Here form (*rūpa*) means the aggregate of form (*rūpaskandha*), the ten elements of form (*daśarūpadhātu*), the ten spheres of form (*daśarūpāyatana*) and also form included in the element and the sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatana saṃgrhīta rūpa*).
2. Mind (*citta*) means the aggregate of consciousness (*vijñānaskandha*), the seven elements of consciousness (*sapta vijñānadhdhātu*) and the sphere of mind (*mana āyatana*).
3. Mental activities (*caitasika*) means the aggregate of sensation (*vedanāskandha*), the aggregate of perception (*saṃjñāskandha*), the aggregate of formations associated with mind (*citta samprayukta saṃskāraskandha*) and part of the element and the sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatana*).
4. Formations not associated with mind (*cittaviprayukta saṃskāra*) means the aggregate of formations unassociated with mind (*cittaviprayukta saṃskāraskandha*) and also part of the element and sphere of mental objects.
5. The unconditioned (*asamśkrta*) means part of the element and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).

Furthermore, knowable things (*jñeyadharma*) should be understood as:

1. the object of knowledge (cognition) of confidence (*adhimuktijñānagocara*),
2. the object of knowledge (cognition) of reasoning (*yuktijñānagocara*),

3. the object of non-dispersed⁷⁷ knowledge (*avisañcārajñānagocara*),
4. the object of knowledge belonging to oneself (*pratyātmajñānagocara*),
5. the object of knowledge belonging to another (*parātmajñānagocara*),
6. the object of inferior knowledge (*avarā-* or *adhabra-jñānagocara*),
7. the object of superior knowledge (*ūrdhvajñānagocara*),
8. the object of the knowledge of remorse over having done evil (*vidūṣanajñānagocara*),
9. the object of knowledge of non-appearance of evil (*asamutthānajñānagocara*),
10. the object of knowledge of non-production of evil (*anutpādajñānagocara*),
11. the object of knowledge of knowledge (*jñānajñānagocara*),
12. the object of ultimate knowledge (*niṣṭhājñānagocara*),
13. the object of knowledge of the great meaning (*mahārthajñānagocara*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that knows and sees.

3.b. What are the special knowables (*vijñeya*)? How many special knowables are there? For what purpose are the special knowables examined?

The special knowables should be understood as: 1. the absence of false discrimination (*avikalpana*), 2. false discrimination (*vikalpana*), 3. cause (*hetu*), 4. function (*pravṛtti*), 5. marks (*nimitta*), 6. things relating to marks (*nāmittika*), 7. opposites and countermeasures (antidotes and remedial measures) (*vipakṣa-pratipakṣa*), 8. the subtle divisions (*sūkṣmaprabedha*).

All are special knowables.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that sees, etc.

3.c. Among the aggregates, etc., which are the superior knowables (*abhiññeya*)? How many are superior knowables? For what purpose are the superior knowables examined?

The superior knowables should be understood as: 1. miraculous transformation (*saṃkrānti*), 2. the capacity to hear sounds near and far (clairaudience) (*anuśrava*), 3. penetration (knowledge of the natures of others) of others' minds (*caritapraveśa*), 4. the ability to see births previous to the present one (*āgati*), 5. the ability to see future births (*gati*), 6. liberation (*niḥsaraṇa*).⁷⁸

⁷⁷ Monier-Williams gives for *avisañcāra* 'experienced, skilled in, learned, wise, clear or serene mind'.

⁷⁸ These six higher knowables obviously correspond to the six well-known

abhiññas of the Pāli texts:

saṃkrānti = *iddhividha* (*rddhividha*)

anuśrava = *dibbasota* (*divyāśrota*)

All of them are superior knowables.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a majestic self [provided with miraculous powers] (*sānubhāvātman*).

4.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which ones are material (*rūpin*)?⁷⁹ How many are material? For what purpose are the material ones examined?

The material should be understood: 1. in its own self-nature (*tadātma*), 2. as the basis of the elements (*bhūtāśraya*), 3. the source of desire (*nandīsamudaya*), 4. space (*pradeśa*), 5. expansion in space (*deśavyāpti*), 6. space and the divisions of space (*deśopadeśa*), 7. the extent of space (*deśagocara*), 8. the range common to space and the division of space (*dvayasamagocara*), 9. connectedness (*sambandha*), 10. sequence (*anubandha*), 11. manifestation (*prarūpana*), 12. harm (*vyābādhana*), 13. waiting or causing to wait (?)⁸⁰ (*samprāpana*), 14. accumulative determination (?) (*sañcayavyavasthāna*), 15. turned outward (*bahirmukha*), 16. turned inward (*antarmukha*), 17. extended (*āyata*), 18. limited (*paricchhinna*), 19. temporary (*tatkāla*), 20. appearance (*nidarśana*).

All are material or in the appropriate order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a material self (*rūpyātman*).

4.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are non-material (*arūpin*)? For what purpose are the non-material ones examined?

The non-material should be understood as the opposite of material.

All are non-material or in the appropriate order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a non-material self (*arūpyātman*).

5.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are visible (*sanidarśana*)? How many are visible? For what purpose are the visible ones examined?

caritapravesa = *paracittāñāna* (*paracittajñāna*)

āgati = *pubbenivāsānussati* (*purvenivāsānusmṛti*)

gati = *dibbacakkhu* (*divyacakṣu*)

niḥsaraṇa = *āsavakkhaya* (*asravakṣaya*).

Thus *samkrānti* here does not mean ‘transmigration’ as it usually does, but rather the various miraculous processes described in the suttas, such as walking through walls and mountains as if through the air, walking on water as if on the ground, entering and coming out of the earth as if it were water, flying through the air, etc. D. no. 34, M. no. 3, 6, 77, etc.

⁷⁹ Cf. *Katame dhammā rūpino?* *Cattāro ca mahābhūtācatunnañ ca mahābhūtānam upādāya rūpam. Ime dhammārūpino.* Dhs. 1091, 1444 (sections).

⁸⁰ Monier Williams gives ‘rise, appearance, attainment, acquisition’ for *samprāpti*.

The object of the eye is visible.⁸¹ The classification is the same as that of the material.

All are visible or in the appropriate order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is provided with vision (*cakṣusātman*).

5.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are invisible (*anidarśana*)? How many are invisible? For what purpose are the invisible ones examined?

The invisible ones should be understood as being the opposite to the visible ones.

All are invisible or in the appropriate order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is deprived of vision (*acakṣusātman*).

6.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are susceptible of being repulsed (active-reactive)⁸² (*sapratiṣṭha*)? How many are susceptible of being repulsed? For what purpose are the ones that are susceptible of being repulsed examined?

Everything that is visible is also susceptible of being repulsed.⁸³

Furthermore, those that are susceptible of being repulsed should be understood according to three reasons:

1) type (*jāti*), 2) accumulation (*upacaya*), 3) unprepared (?) (*aparikarmakṛta*).

Here,

- 1) type means those that hinder one another and that are hindered by one another.
- 2) Accumulation means those that are greater than the atoms (lit., above the *paramāṇorūrdhvam* atom).
- 3) Non-prepared (?) means that which does not have the nature of being under the control of concentration (*na samādhi-vaśavartirūpam*).

Again, it is called ‘susceptible of being repulsed’ because it is the immediate cause of anger (*prakopapadasthāna*).

All are susceptible of being repulsed or in the suitable order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is not present in everything (*asarvagatātman*).

⁸¹ Cf. *Katame dhammā sanidassanā?* *Rūpāyatanaṃ*. Dhs. p 193, section 1087. Also *Kośakārikā*, I, 29, *sanidarśanam eko 'tra rūpam*.

⁸² This is Guenther's translation, *Philosophy and Psychology in the Abhidharma*. p.153.

⁸³ Cf. *Katame dhammā sappaṭīghā?* *Cakkhāyatanaṃ -pe- phoṭhabbayāyatanaṃ*, Dhs, p. 193 (section 1089).

6.b. Which among the aggregates, etc., are not susceptible of being repulsed (*apratigha*)? How many are not susceptible of being repulsed? For what purpose are those not susceptible of being repulsed examined?

That which is not susceptible of being repulsed should be understood as being the opposite of that which is susceptible of being repulsed. All are not susceptible to being repulsed or in the suitable order.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is present in everything (*sarvagatātman*).

7.a. Which among the aggregates, etc., are those that are associated with outflow (impurity, *sāsrava*)?⁸⁴ How many are associated with outflow? For what purpose are those that are associated with outflow examined?

The associates of outflow should be understood: 1. in their self-nature (*tadātma*), 2. in their connectedness (*sambandha*), 3. in their relation (*bandha*), 4. in their consequences (*anubandha*), 5. in their conformity (*anukūlya*), 6. in their succession (*anvaya*).

Five aggregates of attachment (*upādānakandha*) associated with outflow, fifteen elements and ten spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self provided with outflow (*asravayuktātman*).

7.b. Which among the aggregates, etc., are disassociated from outflow? How many are disassociated from outflow? For what purpose are those that are disassociated from outflow examined?

Those that are disassociated from outflow should be understood in the sense opposite to those associated with outflow.

Five aggregates without attachment (*anupādānakandha*), part of three elements and two spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self deprived of outflow (*āsravaviyuktyātman*).

8.a. Which among the aggregates, etc., are those that cause battle (*saraṇa*)? How many of them cause battle? For what purpose are those that cause battle examined?

If, because of lust, hatred or ignorance, battles arise involving weapons and clubs, quarrels, fights, disputes and contentions⁸⁵, everything that causes battle should be understood in its self-nature (*tadātma*), in its

⁸⁴ Āsrava ‘outflow’ is a figurative synonym for *kleśa* ‘defilement’. There are three āsravas: *kāmāsrava*, *bhavāsrava*, *avidyāsrava*. See M. I, p. 55, Sammādiṭṭhi-sutta (no. 9); D. no. 33, Samgītisutta.

Sometimes *drṣṭi* is also added, bringing the number to four. See Vam. p. 683.

Sāsrava is also a synonym for *laukika*, and *anāsrava* of *lokottara*. Cf. Vam. , p. 438, āsavānam ārammaṇabhūtā sāsavā, tesam anārammaṇā anāsavā. Atthato pan' esā lokiyatokuttarā'va hoti [paññā].

⁸⁵ Cf. *daṇḍādāna-satthādāna-kalaha-viggaha-vivāda-tuvantuvapesuñña-musāvāda*. M. I, pp. 110, 113, 410.

connection (*tatsambandha*), in its relation (*tadbandha*), in its consequences (*tadanubandha*), in its conformity (*tadanukūlya*) and in its succession (*tadanvaya*).

Those that cause battle (*sarana*) are as many as those associated with outflow (*sāsrava*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self provided with the mind of battle (*raṇayuktatman*).

8.b. Which are those that do not cause battle (*araṇa*)? How many do not cause battle? For what reason are those that do not cause battle examined?

Those that do not cause battle should be understood in the opposite sense to those that cause battle.

Those that do not cause battle (*araṇa*) are as many as those that are disassociated from outflow (*anāsrava*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self deprived of the mind of battle (*raṇaviprayuktatman*).

9.a Which among the aggregates, etc. are of flesh and blood (*sāmiṣa*)? How many are of flesh and blood? For what purpose are those that are of flesh and blood examined?

If, because of lust, hatred or ignorance, one becomes attached to an individuality in another existence (*paunarbhavikamātmaṁ bhāvam adhyavasyati*) – all that which is of flesh and blood should be understood in its nature, in its connection, in its relation, in its consequences, in its conformity and in its succession.

Those that are of flesh and blood (*sāmiṣa*) are as many as those that cause battle (*sarana*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self provided with carnal desire (*āmiṣayuktatman*).

9.b. Which among the aggregates, etc. are not of flesh and blood (*nirāmiṣa*)? How many are not of flesh and blood? For what purpose are those that are not of flesh and blood examined?

Those that are not of flesh and blood (*nirāmiṣa*) should be understood in the sense opposite to those that are of flesh and blood.

Those that are not of flesh and blood (*nirāmiṣa*) are as many as those that do not cause battle (*araṇa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self deprived of carnal desire (*āmiṣavyuktatman*).

10.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are associated with greed (*gredhāśrita*)? How many are associated with greed? For what purpose are those associated with greed examined?

If, because of lust, hatred or ignorance, one becomes attached to the pleasures of the five senses (*pañchakāmaguṇān adhyavasyati*) – all that which is associated with should be understood in its nature, in its connection, in its relation, in its consequences, in its conformity and in its succession.

Those that are associated with greed (*gredhāśrita*) are as many as those that are of flesh and blood (*sāmiṣa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self provided with greed (*gredayuktātman*).

10.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are associated with renunciation (*naiṣkramyāśrita*)? How many are associated with renunciation? For what purpose are those associated with renunciation examined?

Those that are associated with renunciation (*naiṣkramyāśrita*) should be understood in the opposite sense to those associated with greed (*gredhāśrita*).

Those that are associated with renunciation are as many as those that are not of flesh and blood.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self deprived of greed (*gredhaviprayuktātman*).

11.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are conditioned (*samśkṛta*)? How many are conditioned? For what purpose are those that are conditioned examined?

All that are subject to appearance (birth, *utpāda*), to disappearance (*vyaya*) and, as well, to change in duration (*sthityanyathātva*) – all of these should be understood as conditioned.⁸⁶

All are conditioned with the exception of part of the element and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).⁸⁷

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to an impermanent self (*anityātman*).

11.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are unconditioned (*asamśkṛta*)? How many are unconditioned? For what purpose are those that are unconditioned examined?

That which is unconditioned should be understood in the opposite sense to that which is conditioned.

The unconditioned is part of the element and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a permanent self (*nityātman*).

Should the aggregates without attachment (*anupādānaskandha*) be called conditioned or unconditioned? They should be called neither conditioned nor unconditioned. **Why?** They are not conditioned because they are not made up of actions and defilements (*karmaklesānabhisamśkṛta*). They are not unconditioned because they both are and are not as you like (*kāmakārasammukhī-vimukhībhāva*). Thus the Blessed One has said: ‘There are two types of things, conditioned and unconditioned. **Why?** If they are conditioned in a particular sense, they are not unconditioned in that sense. If they are unconditioned in a particular sense, they are not conditioned in that sense. The method should be understood thus in this case.

⁸⁶ Cf. *Tiṇī'māni bhikkhave saṃkhatassa saṃkhatalakkhaṇāni. Katamāni tiṇī?* *Uppāda paññāyati, vayo paññāyati, thitassa aññathattam paññāyati.* A. I, p. 152.

⁸⁷ Cf. *Katame dhammā samkhatā?* *Catusu bhummīsu kusalam akusalam, catusu bhummīsu vipāko, tīsu bhummīsu kiryāvāyākatam, sabbañ ca rūpañ, ime dhammā saṃkhatā.* Dhs. p. 244, sec. 1483.

Katame dhammā samkhatā? *Ye'va te dhammā sappaccayā, te'va te dhammā saṃkhatā.* Ibid., p. 193, sec. 1085.

12.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are mundane (*laukika*)? How many are mundane? For what purpose are those that are mundane examined?

Everything belonging to the three realms of existence (*traidhātukaparyāpanna*), and as well, that which, resembling them, remains subsequent to supramundane wisdom (*lokottarapṛṣṭhalabdhām cātpratibhāsam*), is mundane.

Part of the aggregates, fifteen elements, ten spheres and also part of three elements and two spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to the world in the self (*ātmani lokābhiniveśa*).

12.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are supramundane (*lokottara*)? How many are supramundane? For what purpose are those that are supramundane examined?

That which is opposite to the three worlds of existence is supramundane, and also the state of nondiscrimination (*nirvikalpa*) is supramundane because it is free of illusion (*aviprayāsa*)⁸⁸, free of elaborations (*nisprapañca*) and free of discrimination (*nirvikalpa*). Moreover, that which remains subsequent to supramundane wisdom (*lokottarapṛṣṭhalabdhā*) is also in a sense (*paryāyena*) supramundane as a result of its association with the non-mundane state (beyond the world)⁸⁹.

Part of the aggregates, three elements and two spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to an absolute self (*kevalātman*).

13.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are born (*utpanna*)? How many are born? For what purpose are those that are born examined?

The past (*atiṭa*) and the present (*pratyutpanna*) are born.

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is not eternal (*aśāśvatātman*).

Furthermore, there are twenty-four kinds of ‘born’:

1. first-born (*ādyutpanna*),
2. born in series (*prabandhotpanna*),
3. born by accumulation (*upachayotpanna*),
4. born by association (*āśrayotpanna*),
5. born by modification (*vikārotpanna*),

⁸⁸ Both Gokhale and Pradhan read *viparyāsa*. However, the Chinese edition shows *aviparāsa*, which fits in here.

⁸⁹ Here the text is doubtful. Gokhale reads *laukikāśritatām upādāya*. Pradhan adds the negative *a* in parenthesis to the word *laukika*. But according to the Chinese and Tibetan versions, it is, without any doubt, *alaukikāśritatām upādāya*, which is the meaning that fits here.

6. born by maturation (*paripākotpanna*),
7. born by decrease (*hānyutpanna*),
8. born in special conditions (*viśeṣotpanna*),
9. born in the radiant sphere (*prabhāsvarotpanna*),
10. born in the non-radiant sphere (*aprabhāsvarotpanna*),
11. born by miraculous transformation (*samkrāntyotpanna*),⁹⁰,
12. born with seeds (*sabījotpanna*),
13. born without seeds (*abījotpanna*),
14. born from reflections as in a mirror and by miraculous powers (*pratibimbavibhutvani-darśanotpanna*),
15. born in succession (*paramparotpanna*),
16. born from momentary change (*kṣaṇabhaṅgotpanna*),
17. born from union and separation (*saṃyoga-viyogotpanna*),
18. born in different stages (*avasthāntarotpanna*),
19. born by birth after death (*chyutopapādotpanna*),
20. born by dissolution and evolution (*saṃvartavivartotpanna*),
21. born in an ancient period (*pūrvakālotpanna*),
22. born at the moment of death (*maraṇakālotpanna*),
23. born in the intermediate period (*antarotpanna*),
24. born at the moment of conception (*pratisandhikālotpanna*).

13.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are unborn (*anutpanna*)? How many are unborn? For what purpose are those that are unborn examined?

The future (*anāgata*) and the unconditioned (*asaṃskṛta*) are the unborn.

Part of everything is unborn.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to an eternal self (*śāśvatātman*).

Moreover, the unborn should be understood in the opposite sense to the born.

14.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are grasping (*grāhaka*)? How many are grasping? For what purpose is grasping examined?

⁹⁰ See p. [], n. [].

The material faculty (*rūpīndriya*), mind (*citta*) and the mental activities (*chaitasika*) should be understood as grasping.

Three aggregates, part of the aggregates of form and formations, twelve elements, six spheres and part of the element and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self which experiences (*bhoktātman*).

Furthermore, non-attained grasping (? , *aprāptagrahāka*), attained grasping (? , *prāptagrāhaka*), grasping separated from its own present characteristics (*svalakṣaṇavartamānapratyekagrāhaka*) and grasping endowed with its own characteristics and with characteristics common to all times and all places (*svasāmānyalakṣaṇasarvakālasarvavिषयagrāhaka*) should be understood as graspings because of the appearance of consciousness in the union (*sāmagrīvijñānasamutpatti*); the designation (*prajñaptika*) should also be understood as the theory of grasping (*grāhakavāda*).

14.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are graspable (*grāhya*)? How many are graspable? For what purpose are those that are graspable examined?

All that is grasped is graspable. But there may be some graspables that are not grasped. The meaning only is the scope of the grasped (*grāhakagochara*).

All are graspable.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self of objects (*viśayātman*).

15.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are turned outwards (*bahirmukha*)? How many are turned outwards? For what purpose are those that are turned outwards examined?

All that are associated with the world of sense pleasures (*kāmapratisamṛyukta*) are turned outwards, with the exception of the mind (*citta*) and mental activities (*chaitasika*) associated with hearing (*śrutamaya*) and contemplating (*chintāmaya*) and other such activities (*tadanudharma*) in the Buddha's teaching (*buddhaśāsane*).

Four elements, two spheres and part of the rest.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is not free of strong lust (sexual desire) (*avītarāgātman*).

15.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are turned inwards (*antarmukha*)? How many of them are turned inwards? For what purpose are those that are turned inwards examined?

The inward-turned should be understood in the opposite sense to the outward-turned. With the exception of the four elements and two spheres, part of the rest.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self free of strong lust (*vītarāgātman*).

16.a. Among the aggregates, etc., which are defiled (*kliṣṭa*)? How many of the aggregates, etc. are defiled? For what purpose are those that are defiled examined?

The unwholesome (*akuśala*) and the concealed morally-undefined (*nivṛtāvyākṛta*) are defiled. Again, the concealed morally-undefined is divided into the omnipresent mental organ (*sarvatragamanas*), the associates of passions (*samprayukta*) and the defilements associated with the realm of form and the formless realm (*rūpārūpya*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self endowed with defilements (*kleśyuktātman*).

16.b. Among the aggregates, etc., which are undefined (*akliṣṭa*)? How many are undefined? For what purpose are those that are undefined examined?

The wholesome (*kuśala*) and the unconcealed morally-undefined (*anivṛtāvyākṛta*) are undefined.

Eight elements, eight spheres, part of the aggregates and part of the elements and remaining spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self without defilements (*kleśaviyuktātman*).

17.a. What is the past (*atīta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are past? Why is the past examined?

The past should be understood: 1. as having the nature of that which has appeared and disappeared (*utpanna-niruddha-lakṣaṇa*), 2. as the relation of cause and effect (*hetuphalopayoga*), 3. as the passing of the action of defiling or purification (*samkleśa-vyavadāna-kāritra-samatikrānti*), 4. as the destruction of the influence of the cause (*hetuparigrahavināśa*), 5. as the existence and nonexistence of the self-nature of the effect (*phalasvalakṣaṇabhāvabhāva*), 6. as an object for thoughts in connection with memory (*smara-saṃkalpa-nimitta*), 7. as an object of defilement because of desire (*apekṣā-samkleśa-nimitta*), 8. as an object of purification because of equanimity (*upekṣā-vyavadāna-nimitta*).

Part of all the aggregates, elements and spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that continues.

17.b. What is the future (*anāgata*)? How many of the aggregates, etc. are future? For what purpose is the future examined?

The future should be understood: 1. as the unborn when the cause is present (*hetausatyanutpanna*), 2. as not yet having obtained self-nature (*alabdhā-svalakṣaṇa*), 3. as not yet containing the relation of cause and effect (*hetuphalānupayoga*), 4. as the fact that the state of defilement or purification is not yet present (*saṃkleśa-vyavadānabhāvāpratyupasthāna*), 5. as the existence and nonexistence of the self-nature of the cause (*hetusvalakṣaṇabhāvabhāva*), 6. as an object of defilement because of hope for something pleasant (*abhinandanāsaṃkleśanimitta*), 7. as an object of purification because of hope for something pleasant (*abhinandanā-vyavadāna-nimitta*).

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that continues.

17.c. What is the present (*pratyutpanna*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are present? For what purpose is the present examined?

The present should be understood: 1. as having the nature of that which has appeared but has not yet disappeared (*utpannāniruddha-lakṣaṇa*), 2. as having, and at the same time not having, the relation of cause and effect (*hetuphalopayogānupayoga*), 3. as the presence of defilement or purification (*samklesā-vyavadāna-pratyupasthāna*), 4. as the sign of the past and of the future (*atītānāgatabhāvanimitta*), 5. as the presence of activity (*kāritra-pratyupasthāna*).

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that continues.

Moreover, past, present and future are the basis for speech. It is not nirvāṇa, for it must be experienced in itself (*pratyātmavedanīya*) and is inexpressible (*anabhilāpya*), and also because past, present and future are the bases of custom.

18.a. What is wholesome (*kuśala*)? How many of the aggregates etc., are wholesome? For what purpose is the wholesome examined?

The wholesome should be understood: 1. by its nature (*svabhāva*), 2. by its relationships (*sambandhana*), 3. by its consequences (*anubandha*), 4. as sudden arising (*utthāna*), 5. as ultimate reality (*paramārtha*), 6. by the attainment of birth (*upapattilābha*), 7. by application (*prayoga*), 8. by veneration (*puruskāra*), 9. by conferring benefits (*anugraha*), 10. as receiving (*parigraha*), 11. as counteragent (antidote) (*pratipakṣa*), 12. as tranquility (*upaśama*), 13. as natural result (*nisyanda*).

Part of the aggregates, ten elements and four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self having quality (*dharma*).

1. **What is wholesome by nature?** The eleven mental qualities beginning with faith (*śraddhā*)⁹¹.
2. **What is wholesome by its relationships?** The mental qualities associated with them.
3. **What is wholesome by its consequences?** Its own traces (*vāsanā*).
4. **What is wholesome by its sudden arising?** The physical and verbal actions produced by them, i.e., the eleven qualities.
5. **What is wholesome as ultimate reality?** It is suchness (*tathatā*).
6. **What is wholesome by the attainment of birth?** It is the production of suitable (*tadrūpa*) results (*vipākābhinivṛtti*) by continuation of the earlier habitual practice (*pūrvābhyaśam āgama*) of the same wholesome qualities, in such a way that the tendency (*ruchi*) towards them remains naturally (*prakṛtyā*) and unconsciously (*apratisamkhyāya*).

⁹¹ See p. 7, no. 8 to 18 in the list of formations (*saṃskāra*): 1. *śraddhā*, 2. *hrī*, 3. *apatrāpya*, 4. *alobha*, 5. *adveṣa*, 6. *amoha*, 7. *vīrya*, 8. *praśrabdhi*, 9. *apramāda*, 10. *upekṣā*, 11. *avihimsā*.

7. **What is wholesome by application?** It is the cultivation of the wholesome (*kuśalasya bhāvanā*) thanks to association with good people (*satpuruṣasamsevā*), hearing the holy Dharma (*saddharmaśravaṇa*), profound attentiveness (*yoniśo manasikāra*) and practice of the major and minor precepts (*dhammānudharma-pratipatti*).⁹²
 8. **What is wholesome by veneration?** It is an act of veneration (*pūjākarma*) with respect to a monument (*chaitya*), to a statue (*pustagata*) or to a painting (*chitragata*) having the mind of the Tathāgata as its object, or to a book (*pustaka*) that is the depository of the Dharma (*dharmadhīṣṭhāna*) having the mind of the Dharma as its object.
 9. **What is wholesome by conferring benefits?** It is the help brought to beings by means of the four types of assistance (*chaturbhīḥ samgrahavastubhīḥ*).⁹³
 10. **What is wholesome in receiving?** It is the attainment of a birth in heaven (*svargopattiparigraha*) or in a prosperous family of high caste (*ādhyachchakulotpatti-parigraha*), or obtaining a state favorable to purification (*vyavadānānukūlyā-parigraha*), by means of the good actions of generosity and morality (*dānamayena puṇyakriyāvastunā vā śilamayena vā*).
 11. **What is wholesome as counteragent?** It is the antidote (*pratipakṣa*) consisting of repentance (*vidūṣanā*), of abandoning (*prahāṇa*), of helping (*ādhāra*), of averting (*dūribhāva*), of suppressing (*viśkambhaṇa*), of dissociating (*visamyoga*), of blocking the defilements (*kleśāvaraṇa*) and blocking the knowables (*jñeyāvaraṇa*).
 12. **What is wholesome as tranquility?** It is the complete abandonment (*paryādāya prahāṇa*) of lust (*rāga*), of hatred (*dveṣa*), of ignorance (*moha*), of all the defilements (*sarvakleṣa*), the cessation of perception and sensation (*saṃjñāvedayitanirodha*), the element of nirvāṇa (*nirvāṇadhātu*) with residue (*sopadhiṣeṣa*) and without residue (*nirupadhiṣeṣa*) and the non-established nirvāṇa (*apratīṣṭhanirvāṇa*).
 13. **What is wholesome as natural result?** These are the special qualities (*vaiśeṣika guṇa*) such as mundane and supramundane (*laukikalokottara*) common and uncommon (*sādhāraṇāsādhāraṇa*) superior knowledge (*abhijñā*) in a person who has attained tranquility (*upaśamaprāpta*) by this mastery (*tadadhīpatya*).
- 18.b. What is unwholesome (*akuśala*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are unwholesome? For what purpose is the unwholesome examined?**

The unwholesome should be understood: 1. by its nature (*svabhāva*), 2. by its relationships (*sambandha*), 3. by its consequences (*anubandha*), 4. as sudden arising (*utthāna*), 5. as ultimate reality (*paramārtha*), 6. by the attainment of birth (*upapattilābha*), 7. by application (*prayoga*), 8. by veneration (*puraskāra*), 9. as

⁹² Cf. A (Colombo 1929), p. 344, *sappurisasaṁsevo*, *saddammasavānaṁ*, *yoniso manasikāro*, *dhammānudhammapatiṣṭipatti*, as the four things favorable to the development of wisdom.

⁹³ The four kinds of service: *dāna* (alms), *peyyavajja* (kind speech), *atthacariyā* (altruistic service), *saṁnāttatā* (equanimity).

wickedness (*upaghāta*), 10. as receiving (*parigraha*), 11. as opposing (*vipakṣa*), 12. as obstruction (*paripantha*).

Part of the aggregates, ten elements and four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self provided with bad qualities (*adharmayuktatman*).

1. **What is unwholesome by nature?** With the exception of the defilements associated with the mental organ (*manah samprayukta*) in the realm of form and the formless realm (*rūpārūpyavachara*), the other major and minor defilements (*kleśopakleśa*) that cause evil conduct (*duścharitasamuttāpaka*).
2. **What is unwholesome by its relationships?** The qualities (*dharma*) associated with the same major and minor defilements.
3. **What is unwholesome by its consequences?** Its own traces (*vāsanā*).
4. **What is unwholesome as sudden arising?** The physical and verbal actions that produce these, i.e., the defilements.
5. **What is unwholesome as ultimate reality?** The whole continuity of existence (*samsāra*).
6. **What is unwholesome by the attainment of birth?** Habituation to the unwholesome (*akuśalābhyaśa*) and the corresponding result (*tadrūpo vipakah*) produced and as a consequence of which there remains a tendency only for the unwholesome.
7. **What is unwholesome by application (*prayoga*)?** The evil conduct (*duścharita*) pursued in body, speech and mind as a result of association with evil persons (*asatpuruṣasamsevā*), of listening to evil teachings (*asaddharmaśravāṇa*) and of superficial attentiveness (*ayoniśo manaskāra*).
8. **What is unwholesome by veneration?** The fact of building a monument (*chaitya*) by seeking the support of certain deities (*anyatamānyatamāṇ devakāya-sanniśrayam*) with the idea of doing harm to living beings (*hiṁsāpūrvaka*) or with perverse notions (*kudṛṣṭipūrvaka*), by carrying out actions of veneration or offerings (*pūjakarma*) while many beings are given over to demeritorious actions (*apunya*).
9. **What is unwholesome as wickedness?** The fact of behaving badly (*mithyāprati-padyate*) towards beings by body, speech or mind.
10. **What is unwholesome as receiving?** The fact that, having had bad behavior in body, speech or mind, an individual experiences unpleasant results, projecting (*ākṣepaka*) or completing (*paripūraka*), in a bad or good rebirth (*durgatau vā sugatau vā*).
11. **What is unwholesome as opposing?** The things that are opposite to the counteragents (*pratipakṣavipakṣa*).
12. **What is unwholesome as obstruction?** The things that harm the wholesome (*kuśalāntarāyika*).

18.c. What is neutral (*avyākṛta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are neutral? For what purpose is the neutral examined?

The neutral should be understood: 1. by its nature (*svabhāva*), 2. by its relationships (*sambandhana*), 3. by its consequences (*anubandha*), 4. as sudden arising (*utthāna*), 5. as ultimate reality (*paramārtha*), 6. by attainment of birth (*upapattilābha*), 7. by application (*prayoga*), 8. by veneration (*puruskāra*), 9. by conferring benefit (*anugraha*), 10. as enjoyment (*upabhoga*), 11. as receiving (*parograha*), 12. as counteragent (*pratipakṣa*), 13. as tranquility (*upaśama*), 14. as natural result (*niṣyanda*).

Eight elements, eight spheres and a part of the aggregates, elements and spheres that remain.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self free of good and evil (*dharma-dharma-viyuktatman*).

1. **What is neutral by nature?** Eight elements and eight material spheres (*aṣṭau rūpiṇi dhātṛvāyatanaḥ*), the mental and vital faculties (*manojīvitendriya*) along with that which is associated with them (*sasamprayoga*), similarity of type (*nikāyasabhāga*), groups of names (*nāmakāya*), groups of words (*padakāya*) and groups of letters (*vyañjanakāya*).
2. **What is neutral by its relationships?** The mind and mental activities (*cittachaitasika dharma*) associated with the same groups of names, groups of words and groups of letters in the person whose mind is neither bad nor pure. (*aduṣṭāprasannacittasya*).
3. **What is neutral by its consequences?** The traces of expression of the groups of names, words and letters (*teṣām evābhilāpavāsanā*).
4. **What is neutral as sudden arising?** The physical and verbal actions produced by the mind and mental activities associated with those.
5. **What is neutral as ultimate reality?** Space (*ākāśa*) and cessation not due to discrimination (*apratisamkyānirodha*).
6. **What is neutral by attainment of birth?** The result of the unwholesome (*akuśala*) and the wholesome (*kuśala*) associated with the impurities (*kuśalasāsrava*).
7. **What is neutral by application?** The postures and occupational activities of those whose minds are neither defiled nor wholesome (*akliṣṭakuśalachetas*).
8. **What is neutral by veneration?** The fact of building a monument (*chaitya*) by seeking the support of certain deities without perverse notions (*kudṛṣṭi*) without doing harm to living beings, by making offerings (*pūjākarma*) and while many beings acquire neither merit nor demerit (*puṇya apuṇya*).
9. **What is neutral by conferring benefits?** The fact of giving generosity to one's servants, to one's employees, to one's workers, to one's children and to one's wife while having a mind neither evil nor pure (*aduṣṭāprasannacitta*).

10. **What is neutral as enjoyment?** The fact of enjoying one's good fortune without reflecting and without having an impure mind (*apratisamkyā-kliṣṭacitta*).
11. **What is neutral as receiving?** The fact that a person, by constant practice of a craft or an art, will obtain in the future (*ātmabhāva*) a life suitable to this practice and thus will easily and quickly attain perfection in this occupation.
12. **What is neutral as counteragent (antidote)?** The fact of taking medicines without reflecting.
13. **What is neutral as tranquility?** The defilements of the realm of form and the formless realm (*rūpārūpyāvacharāḥ kleśāḥ*), because they are hidden in concentration (*śamathopagūdha*).
14. **What is neutral as natural result?** That which is born with a mind magically created (*nirmāṇacittasahajam*).

Moreover, the wholesome, the unwholesome and the neutral should be understood as miraculous manifestations (*nidarśana*). **Why?** Because the Buddha and the bodhisattvas, having attained supreme perfection (*paramapārami*), manifest for the good of beings even though there is no reality for them in that.

19.a. What is associated with desire (*kāmapratisamyukta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are associated with desire? For what purpose are those associated with desire examined?

The wholesome, the unwholesome and the neutral endowed with impurities (*sāsravakuśalākuśalāvyākṛta*) in a person who is not free from lust (*avītarāga*) should be understood as being associated with desire.

Four elements, two spheres and part of the aggregates, part of the other elements and spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is not free from desire (*kāmavītarāgātman*).

19.b. What is associated with form (*rūpapratisamyukta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are associated with form? For what purpose is that which is associated with form examined?

The wholesome and the neutral in a person free from the desire of the realm of desire (*kāmavītarāga*) but who is not yet free from the desire of the realm of form (*rūpāvītarāga*) should be understood as associated with form.

Except for four elements, two spheres, part of the other aggregates, elements and spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self free from the desire of the realm of desire (*kāmavītarāgātman*).

19.c. What is that which is associated with the formless realm (*ārūpyapratisamyukta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are associated with the formless? For what purpose is that which is associated with the formless examined?

The wholesome, the unwholesome and the neutral in a person free from the desire of the form realm but not yet free from the desire of the formless realm should be understood as associated with the formless.

Part of four aggregates, three elements and two spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that is free from the desire of the form realm (*rūpavītarāgātman*).

Moreover, detachment (*vairāgya*) should be understood as:

1. partial detachment (*ekadeśavairāgya*),
2. complete detachment (*sakalavairāgya*),
3. detachment by penetration (*prativedhavairāgya*),
4. detachment by exhaustion (*upaghātavairāgya*),
5. detachment by complete destruction (*samudghātavairāgya*).

Furthermore, there are ten kinds of detachment:

1. natural detachment (*prakṛtvairāgya*),
2. detachment by exhaustion (*upaghātavairāgya*),
3. detachment by satiation (*upastambhavairāgya*),
4. detachment by superiority (*samutkarṣavairāgya*),
5. detachment by complete ignorance (*sammohavairāgya*),
6. detachment by the effect of antidotes (*pratipakṣavairāgya*),
7. detachment by complete knowledge (*parijñāvairāgya*),
8. detachment by abandonment (*prahāṇavairāgya*),
9. inferior detachment (*sottaravairāgya*),
10. superior detachment (*niruttaravairāgya*).

1. **What is natural detachment?** It is aversion (*pratikūlatā*) for an unhappy feeling and for the conditions that cause suffering.
2. **What is detachment by exhaustion?** It is the aversion felt by a person who had been engaged in sexual relations when the exhaustion of sexual ardor is reached.
3. **What is detachment by satiation?** It is the aversion for delicious foods in a person who has eaten enough.
4. **What is detachment by superiority?** It is the aversion for an inferior position felt by a person who has attained a superior position.
5. **What is detachment by complete ignorance?** It is the aversion for nirvāṇa felt by the ignorant.

6. **What is detachment by the effect of antidotes?** It is the abandonment of the defilements (*kleśaprahāṇa*) by the mundane or supramundane paths (*laukikena vā lokottareṇa vā mārgenā*).
7. **What is detachment by complete knowledge?** It is the aversion for the three realms of existence (*traidhātuka*) in a person who has arrived at the Path of Seeing (*pratilabdhadarśanamārgasya*).
8. **What is detachment by abandonment?** It is the aversion experienced by a person who abandons the defilements at each stage (*bhūmau bhūmau*).
9. **What is inferior detachment?** It is the detachment of the worldly (*laukikānām*), of the disciples and of the [pratyekabuddhas] individual buddhas (*śrāvaka-pratyekabuddhānām*).
10. **What is superior detachment?** It is the detachment of the buddhas and bodhisattvas as a result of their vow for the welfare and happiness of all beings.

20.a. What is training (discipline, *śaikṣa*)? How many aggregates, etc., are training? For what purpose is training examined?

Training should be understood as that which is wholesome (*kuśala*) in a person who is engaged in the search for liberation (*mokṣa*).

Part of the aggregates, of the ten elements and of four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self engaged in the search for liberation (*moksapravayuktātman*).

20.b. What is going beyond training (*aśaikṣa*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., go beyond training? For what purpose is going beyond training examined?

Going beyond training should be understood as that which is wholesome in a person who has reached the limit of training.

Part of the aggregates, of the ten elements and four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a liberated self (*muktātman*).

20.c. What is neither training nor going beyond training (*naivaśaikṣanāśaikṣa*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are neither training nor going beyond training? For what purpose is what is neither training nor going beyond training examined?

That which is neither training nor going beyond training should be understood as that which is wholesome (*kuśala*), that which is unwholesome (*akuśala*) and that which is neutral (*avyākṛta*) in an ordinary person (*prthagjana*), that which is neutral-impure (*kliṣṭavyākṛta*) in a person engaged in training and that which is neutral in a person who has gone beyond training (discipline), and also the unconditioned (*asamaskṛta*).

Eight elements, eight spheres and part of the remaining aggregates, elements and spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to an unliberated self (*amuktātman*).

21.a. What should be abandoned by means of insight (*darśana*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., should be abandoned by means of insight? For what purpose is that which is to be abandoned by insight examined?

That which should be abandoned by means of insight should be understood as impure imaginary wrong view (*parikalpitā kliṣṭā drṣṭih*), doubt (*vichikitsā*), the basis of wrong view (*drṣṭisthāna*), regardless of which of the major or minor defilements, perverted in regard to wrong views (*drṣṭau vipratipannāḥ kleśopakleśāḥ*), regardless of which of the physical or verbal actions caused by wrong view, and all the aggregates, elements and spheres leading to bad rebirths (*āpāyika*)⁹⁴.

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self endowed with insight (*darśanasampannātman*).

21.b. What should be abandoned by meditation (*bhāvanā*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., should be abandoned by meditation? For what purpose is that which should be abandoned by meditation examined?

These are, contrary to those which should be abandoned by insight, the things associated with impurity (*sāsrava dharma*) that are above the Path of Seeing, in a person who has attained the latter, i.e., the Path of Seeing (*labhadarśanamārga*)⁹⁵.

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self endowed with meditation (*bhāvanāsampannātman*).

21.c. What should not be abandoned (*aparahātavya*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., should not be abandoned? For what purpose is that which should not be abandoned examined?

That which is not impure (*anāsrava*) should not be abandoned, with the exception of that which is connected with penetration (*nirvedhabhāgīya*).

Part of the aggregates, ten elements and four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a perfect self (*siddhātman*).

22. What is produced conditionally (*pratītyasamutpanna*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are produced conditionally? For what purpose is that which is produced conditionally examined?

That which is produced conditionally should be understood:

1. by its characteristics (*laksana*),
2. by analysis of its factors (*aṅgavibhāga*),

⁹⁴ Cf. M. I, p. 7: *āsavā dassanā pahātabbā* in the Sabbāsava sutta.

⁹⁵ Ibid, p. 11: *āsavā bhāvanā pahābbā* in the Sabbāsava sutta.

3. by grouping its factors (*angasamāsa*),
4. by the definition of the conditionality of its factors (*āṅgapratyayatvavyavasthāna*),
5. by the definition of the functions of its factors (*āṅgakarmavyavasthāna*),
6. by grouping its factors according to their impurity (*āṅgasamkleśasaṅgraha*),
7. according to its real meaning (*artha*),
8. in its depth (*gāmbhīrya*),
9. in its classifications (*prabheda*),
10. according to regular and inverse order (*anulomapratiloma*).

All are produced conditionally, with the exception of part of the element of the mental object and the sphere of the mental object (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to an uncaused self or a self having irregular causes (*ahetuviśamaheṭukātman*).

- 1. How should what is produced conditionally be understood by its characteristics?** It should be understood as arising by the effect of indifferent conditions (*nirūhapratyayotpatti*), by the effect of impermanent conditions (*anityapratyayotpatti*) and by the effect of efficacious conditions (*samarthapratyayotpatti*).
- 2. How should it be understood by the analysis of its factors?** There are twelve factors. Conditioned production consists of twelve factors: (1) ignorance (*avidyā*), (2) formations (*saṃskāra*), (3) consciousness (*vijñāna*), (4) name and form (*nāmarūpa*), (5) the six spheres (*śadāyatana*), (6) contact (*sparśa*), (7) sensation (*vedanā*), (8) thirst (desire, *trṣṇā*), (9) grasping (*upādāna*), (10) becoming (*bhava*), (11) birth (*jāti*), (12) old age and death (*jarāmarana*).
- 3. How should it be understood by the grouping of its factors?** There are projecting factors (*ākṣepakāṅga*), projected factors (*ākṣiptāṅga*), producer factors (*abhinirvartakāṅga*) and produced factors (*abhinirvṛttāṅga*).
 - **Which are the projecting factors?** Ignorance, the formations and consciousness.
 - **Which are the projected factors?** Name and form, the six spheres, contact and sensation.
 - **Which are the producer factors?** Thirst, grasping and becoming.
 - **Which are the produced factors?** Birth and old age and death.
- 4. How should it be understood by the definition of the conditionality of its factors?** It should be understood by means of the traces (*vāsanā*), the force that persists (*āvedha*), attentiveness (*manasikāra*), and coexistence (*sahabhāva*), and those in the proper order (*yathāyogam*).

5. **How should it be understood by definition of the functions of its factors? What is the function of ignorance?** It deludes beings in regard to existence (*bhava*) and is also the condition for the formations.
 - **What is the function of the formations?** They allocate (*vibhajanti*) beings to the realms of existence (*gatiṣu*) and are also the condition for the traces of consciousness (*vijñānavāsanā*).
 - **What is the function of consciousness?** It supports the connectedness of the actions (*karmabandham cha dhārayati*) of beings, and it is also the condition for name and form.
 - **What is the function of name and form?** It compels beings to take on a self (*ātmabhāva*), and it is also the condition for the six spheres.
 - **What is the function of the six spheres?** They compel beings to take on the fullness of a self (*ātmabhāvaparipūrim*), and they are also the condition for contact.
 - **What is the function of contact?** It leads beings to the sense pleasures (*viśayopabhoga*), and it is also the condition for sensation.
 - **What is the function of sensation?** It leads beings to the experience of birth (*janmopabhaga*), and it is also the condition for thirst.
 - **What is the function of thirst?** It draws beings towards birth (*janma*), and it is also the condition for grasping.
 - **What is the function of grasping?** It compels the consciousness of beings to become associated with grasping (*sopādāna*) in order to take birth again (*punarbhavādāna*), and it also is the condition for becoming.
 - **What is the function of becoming?** It directs beings towards a new existence (*punarbhava*), and it is also the condition for birth.
 - **What is the function of birth?** It produces beings in the proper order of name and form, six spheres, contact and sensation, and it is also the condition for old age and death.
 - **What is the function of old age and death?** It wears out beings continually by the decline of age (*vayah parināma*) and life (*jīvitaparināma*).
6. **How should it be understood by grouping its factors according to their impurity?** Ignorance, thirst and grasping: this is the group of simple impurity (*saṃkleśasaṅgraha*). Formations, consciousness and becoming: this is the group of impurity of actions (*karmasaṃkleśasaṅgraha*). The rest make up the group of impurity of birth (*janmasaṃkleśasaṅgraha*).
7. **How should it be understood according to its real meaning (*artha*)?** The real meaning of conditioned production is the fact that there is no creator (*nihkartṛkārtha*), the fact of causality (*sahetukārtha*), the fact that there is no being (*nihsatvārtha*), the fact of dependency [relativity] (*paratantrārtha*), the fact that there is no directing mover (*nirīhakārtha*), the fact of impermanence (*anityārtha*), the fact that everything is momentary (*kṣanikārtha*), the fact that

there is an uninterrupted continuity of causes and effects (*hetuphalaprabandhānu-pacchedārtha*), the fact that there is a correspondence between cause and effect (*anurūpahetuphalārtha*), the fact of the variety of causes and effects (*vichitrahetuphalārtha*) and the fact of the regularity of causes and effects (*pratiniyatahetuphalārtha*).

8. **How should it be understood in its depth?** By its depth one should understand the depth of its causality (*hetugāmbhīrya*), of its characteristics (*lakṣaṇagāmbhīrya*), of its appearance (*utpattigāmbhīrya*), of its duration (*sthiti*gāmbhīrya) and of its functioning (*vṛttigāmbhīrya*).

Furthermore, conditioned production is momentary (*kṣaṇika*), but there is duration (*sthiti*) in it as well; conditioned production consists of indifferernt (unchanging) conditions (*nirīhakapratyaya*), but these conditions are also efficacious (capable of action) (*samarthapratyaya*); conditioned production does not accept being (*nihsatva*), but it may also be understood by means of being (*satvataścopalabhyate*); conditioned production does not accept a creator (*niṣkartṛka*), but there is non-interruption between actions and their results (*karmaphalāvipranaśa*). It does not arise from itself (*na svalaḥ*), or from something else (*na parataḥ*), or from both (*na dvābhām*); it is not produced either from its own activity (*svayam kāra*) or from the activity of something else (*parakāra*), or without cause (*ahetu*). That is why it is profound.

9. **How is it to be understood in its divisions?** It should be understood according to the divisions of arising of consciousness (*vijñānotpatti*), death and birth (*chyutypapatti*), arising of external seeds (*bāhyaśasyotpatti*), dissolution and evolution (*samvartavivarta*), support by nutriment (*āhāropastambha*), distinction between good and bad destinies of existence (*iṣṭāniṣṭagatativibhāga*), purity (*viśuddhi*) and supreme powers (*prabhāva*).

10. How should it be understood according to regular and inverse order (*anulomapratiloma*)?

The explanation (*nirdeśa*) of the regular and inverse order of conditioned production should be understood according to the regular and inverse order of defilement (*saṃkleśa*) and purification (*vyavadāna*).

23. **What is a condition (*pratyaya*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are conditions? For what purpose are conditions examined?**

A condition should be understood according to

- [a] its cause (*hetu*),
- [b] its immediate relation (*samanantara*),
- [c] its object (*ālamabana*), and
- [d] its predominance (*adhipati*).

All are conditions.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to things (*dharma*) that constitute the causes for the notion of self (*ātmahetuka-dharmābhiniveśa*).

[a] What is the causal condition (*hetupratyaya*)⁹⁶?

It is the base-consciousness (*ālayavijñāna*) and the traces of the wholesome (*kuśalavāsanā*). The causal condition should also be understood according to:

1. self nature (*svabhāva*),
 2. divisions (*prabheda*),
 3. association (*sahāya*),
 4. shared effect (*sampratipatti*),
 5. growth (*puṣṭi*),
 6. obstruction (*paripantha*),
 7. capacity of grasping (*parigraha*).
1. **What is its self nature**⁹⁷? It is the reason (*kāraṇa*), since it is the self nature of the cause (*hetusvabhāva*).
 2. **What are its divisions?** They are the divisions of reason. In brief, there are twenty kinds of reasons:
 - (1) The reason of arising (*utpattikāraṇa*), such as the consciousness⁹⁸ in accord (*sāmagrī*) with consciousness.
 - (2) The reason of duration (*sthiti*), such as nourishment for beings born and those seeking birth (*bhūtānām satvānām sambhavaiṣīṇāñ cha*)⁹⁹.
 - (3) The reason of support (*dhṛti*), such as the earth for beings.
 - (4) The reason of manifestation (*prakāśa*), such as a lamp for visible forms.
 - (5) The reason of transformation (*vikāra*), such as fire for wood.
 - (6) The reason of separation (*viyoga*), such as a sickle (weapon) for something to be cut.

⁹⁶ *Hetupratyaya* may also be translated as “root condition” according to an explanation found in the *Visuddhimagga* of the Pali term *hetupaccaya*:*mūlam hetūti vuccati, tam idha adhippetam* (p. 532).

⁹⁷ Lit. “how according to its own nature?”

⁹⁸ Pradhan reads *caksuh sāmagrī vijñansya* as ‘the eye in accord with consciousness’. Gokhale reads *vijñānam sāmgṛī vijñānasya* ‘consciousness in accord with consciousness’, which agrees with the Tibetan and Chinese versions.

⁹⁹ Cf. *bhūtā vā sambhavesī vā sabbe sattā*, Metta-sutta, Sn., p. 26. Commentary: *bhūtāti jātā abhinibbattā, ye ‘bhūtāeva na puna bhavissanti’ ti samkham gacchanti, tesam khīnasavānam etam adhivacanam. Sambhavam esantīti sambhavesi. Appahīnahavasamyojanattāāyatim pi sambhavaī esantānam sekhaputhujjanānam etam adhivacanam...* (Paramajo, pp. 246-7).

- (7) The reason of transmutation (*parināti*), such as a professional skill, etc., for things like gold, etc.
- (8) The reason of belief (*sampratyaya*), such as smoke for fire.
- (9) The reason of conviction (*sampratyāyana*), such as proposition, cause and example (*pratijñāhetudṛṣṭānta*) for a conclusion (*sādhyā*).
- (10) The reason of conduct (*samprāpana*), such as the path (*mārga*) towards nirvāṇa.
- (11) The reason of linguistic usage (*vyavahāra*), such as name (*nāma*), idea (*samjñā*) and opinion (*dṛṣṭi*).
- (12) The reason of expectation (*apekshā*), i.e., a desire (*arthitva*) arises for something as a result of something else, such as a desire for food because of hunger.
- (13) The reason of projection (*ākṣepakārana*) which is a distant condition (*vidūrah pratyaya*), such as ignorance (*avidyā*) for old age and death (*jarāmarañā*).
- (14) The producing reason (*abhinirvṛttikārana*) which is an immediate reason, such as ignorance for the formations (*saṃskāra*).
- (15) The ‘accompanying’ reason (*parigraha*) which is an additional reason, such as a field, water, fertilizer, etc., to make the crops grow.
- (16) The producing reason (*āvāhaka*) which is a condition of suitable manner (*anukūla*), such as good service rendered to the king for his satisfaction.
- (17) The reason of diverse regularity (*pratiniyama*) which is a variety of conditions, such as the five conditions of birth for the five destinies of birth (*pañchānām gatīnām*).
- (18) The co-operative reason (*sahakāri kārana*) which is a combination of conditions, such as an undistorted faculty (*indriyam aparibhinnam*), a manifested object (*viṣaya ābhāsagataḥ*), and the attention that results (*tajjaś cha manaskārah*) are the conditions for consciousness (*vijñāna*)¹⁰⁰.
- (19) The adverse reason (*virdhikārana*), which is danger, such as lightning for crops.
- (20) The non-adverse reason (*avirodhi*) which is not a danger, such as the absence of such danger.

- 3. What is association (*sahāya*)?** It is the things (*dharma*) that arise by co-existence (*sahabhāva*) and not by some fault (*vaikalya*), such as the elements (*bhūta*) and what is derived from the elements (*bhautika*).

¹⁰⁰ Cf. *Ajjhattikañ ca cakkhum aparibhinnam hoti, bāhirā ca rūpā āpātham āgacchanti, tajjo ca samannāhāro hoti, evam tajjassa viññāṇabhbāgassa pātubhāvo hoti*. M. I, p. 190.

4. **What is shared effect (*sampratipatti*)?** It is those things (*dharma*) that affect the object by co-existence (*sahabhāva*) and not by some fault (*vaikalya*), such as mind (*citta*) and mental activities (*chaitasika*).
5. **What is growth (*puṣṭi*)?** It is, in the future, the continual further increase of the wholesome, unwholesome or neutral activities accomplished in the past.
6. **What is obstruction (*paripantha*)?** It is the consolidation of the growth of a certain series by a certain development of defilements such that one is kept distant from the series leading to nirvāṇa.
7. **What is grasping (*parigraha*)?** This is the unwholesome (*akuśala*) and wholesome defilements (*kuśalasāsrava*) that grasp the notion of individuality (*ātmabhāva*).

[b] **What is the immediate (*samanantara*)?** The immediate condition should be understood as the constant immediate (*nairantaryasamanantara*) and as that which gives rise immediately to associated or non-associated mind and mental activities (*sabhgavisabhāgacittacaitta*).

[c] **What is the object (*ālambana*)?** The object condition should be understood as:

1. the limited sphere object (*paricchinnaviśayālambana*),
2. the unlimited sphere object (*aparicchinnaviśayālambana*),
3. the unvaried sphere object (*achitṛīkāraviśayālambana*),
4. the varied sphere object (*sachitṛīkāraviśayālambana*),
5. the object of the existent-things sphere (*savastukaviśayālambana*),
6. the object of the nonexistent-things sphere (*avastukaviśayālambana*),
7. the real object (*vastvālambana*),
8. the imaginary object (*parikalpālambana*),
9. the erroneous object (*viparyastālambana*),
10. the non-erroneous object (*aviparyastālambana*),
11. the resistant object (*savyāghātālambana*),
12. the non-resistant object (*avyāghātālambana*).

[d] **What is predominance (*adhipati*)?** The predominant condition should be understood as:

1. predominance in means of support (*pratiṣṭhādhipati*),
2. predominance of penetration (*āvedhādhipati*),
3. predominance by co-existence (*sahabhāvādhipati*),
4. predominance of sphere (*viśayādhipati*),

5. predominance of productivity (*prasavādhipati*),
6. predominance of place (*sthānādhipati*),
7. predominance of the experience of the results of actions (*phalabhogādhipati*),
8. predominance of mundane purity (*laukikaviśuddhyadhipati*),
9. predominance of supramundane purity (*lokottaraviśuddhyadhipati*).

24.a and 24.b.. What is associated and what is analogous to the associated (*sabhāgatasabhāga*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are associated and analogous to the associated? For what purpose are association and the analogue of association studied?

Association and the analogue of association should be understood as that which appears from a connection (*prabandha*, lit. continuity) of objects (*viṣaya*) and faculties (*indriya*) not separate from consciousness (*vijñānaviḥarita*) and resembling it (*tatsāsdrśya*), and as that which appears from the connection of the resemblance itself (*svasāsdrśyaprabandha*) separate from consciousness (*vijñānaviḥarita*).

Part of the aggregate of matter, five elements and five material spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self associated with or dissociated from consciousness (*vijñānayuktāyuktātman*).

24.c. What is appropriated (*upātta*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are appropriated? For what purpose is the appropriated examined?

The appropriated should be understood as matter that is the basis giving rise to sensations (*vedanotpatyāśraya*).

Part of the aggregate of form, five material elements, five material spheres, and also part of the other four aggregates.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self dominated by the body (*dehavaśavartyātman*).

25. What is a faculty (*indriya*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are faculties? For what purpose are the faculties examined?

Faculty should be understood as: 1. dominating in the grasping of an object (*viṣayagrahanādhipati*), 2. dominating in the continuity of family (*kulaprabandhādhipati*), 3. dominating in the state of similarity of types (*nikāyasabhāgatasthānādhipati*), 4. dominating in the experiencing of the results of good or bad actions (*śubāśubhakarmaphalopabhogādhipati*), 5. dominating in worldly detachment (*laukikavairāgyādhipati*), 6. dominating in supramundane detachment (*lokottaravairāgyādhipati*)¹⁰¹.

¹⁰¹ There are twenty-two *indriyas* (faculties). They are divided into six categories as follows:

I. *Viṣayagrahanādhipati*: Faculties dominating in grasping an object

1) *cakṣurindriya* (eye faculty)

The aggregate of sensation, the aggregate of consciousness, part of the aggregates of form and formations, twelve elements, six spheres and part of the elements and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatana*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a dominant self (*ātmādhipati*).

26.a. What is suffering as suffering (*duḥkhaduḥkhatā*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are suffering as suffering? For what purpose is suffering as suffering examined?

- 2) *śrotendriya* (ear faculty)
- 3) *ghrāṇendriya* (nose faculty)
- 4) *jihvendriya* (tongue faculty)
5. *kāyandriya* (body faculty)
- 6) *mana-indriya* (mental organ faculty)

II. *Kulaprabandhādipati*: Faculties dominating in the continuity of family

- 7) *strīndriya* (feminine faculty)
- 8) *puruṣendriya* (masculine faculty)

III. *Nikāyasabhāgasthānādhipati* : Faculty dominating in the state of similarity of types

- 9) *jīvitendriya* (vital faculty)

IV. *Śubhāśubhakarmaphalopabhogaḍādhipati*: Faculties dominating in the experiences of the results of good and bad actions

- 10) *sukhendriya* (faculty of experiencing ease, happiness)
- 11) *duḥkendriya* (faculty of experiencing suffering)
- 12) *saumanasyendriya* (faculty of experiencing pleasure)
- 13) *daurmanasyendriya* (faculty of experiencing displeasure)
- 14) *upekṣendriya* (faculty of experiencing equanimity)

V. *Laukikavairāgyādhipati*: Faculties dominating in worldly detachment

- 15) *śraddhendriya* (faculty of experiencing faith)
- 16) *vīryendriya* (faculty of energy)
- 17) *smṛtiṇḍriya* (faculty of attention)
- 18) *saṃādhīṇḍriya* (faculty of concentration)
- 19) *prajñendriya* (faculty of wisdom)

VI. *Lokottaravairāgyādhipati*: Faculties dominating in su[‘a-worldly detachment

- 20) *anājñātamājñāsyāmīndriya* (faculty of the wish: “I will know that which is not yet known”)
- 21) *ājñendriya* (faculty of supra-mundane knowledge the state of arhat)
- 22) *ājñātāvīṇḍriya* (faculty of the consciousness or conviction: ‘I have known’).

Suffering as suffering should be understood as: 1. the self-characteristic of the sensation of suffering (*duḥkhavedanāsvalakṣaṇa*), 2. the self-characteristic of the things belonging to the sensation of suffering (*duḥkhavedanīyadharmaśvalakṣaṇa*).

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a suffering self (*duḥkhitātman*).

26.b. What is suffering due to change (*vipariṇāmaduḥkhatā*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are suffering due to change? For what purpose is suffering due to change examined?

Suffering due to change should be understood as:⁷⁵ 1. the self-characteristic of the change of a pleasant feeling (*sukhavedanāvipariṇatisvalakṣaṇa*), 2. the self-characteristic of the change of things belonging to a pleasant feeling (*sukhavedanīyadharmavipariṇatisvalakṣaṇa*), 3. the change of the mind of desire for this pleasant feeling (*tatra chānunayacittavipariṇati*).

Part of all the aggregates, etc.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a happy self (*sukhitātman*).

26.c. What is suffering as conditioned state (*saṃskāraduḥkhatā*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are suffering as conditioned state? For what purpose is suffering as conditioned state examined?

Suffering as conditioned state should be understood as: 1. having the self-nature belonging to neither pleasant nor unpleasant sensations (*aduḥkhāsukha-vedanāsvalakṣaṇa*), 2. having the self-nature of things belonging to sensations which are neither pleasant nor unpleasant (*aduḥkhāsukhavedanīyadharmaśvalakṣaṇa*), 3. as the grasping of these two disturbances (*tadubhaya-dauṣṭhulyaparigraha*), 4. as the non-liberation of these two (*dvayāvinirmokṣa*) and as the fact of being followed by impermanence (*anityānubandha*) and not being safe (*ayogakṣema*).

All, with the exception of part of the aggregates, of three elements and of two spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self neither happy nor unhappy (*aduḥkāsukhātman*).

27. What is endowed with results (*savipāka*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are endowed with results? For what purpose are those that are endowed with results examined?

The unwholesome (*akuśala*) and the defiled wholesome (*kuśala-sāsrava*) should be understood as being endowed with results.

Part of the aggregates, of ten elements and four spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that establishes and collects together the aggregates (*skandhopanikṣepaka-pratisandhyāyakātman*).

Furthermore, the result (*vipāka*) should be understood as the base-consciousness (*ālayavijñāna*) endowed with mutual relationships (*sasamprayoga*). The rest arise from results.

28. What is nutriment (*āhāra*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are nutriment? For what purpose is nutriment examined?

Nutriment should be understood as: 1. changing because of change (*parinatatito* ‘*pi pariṇāmikah*), 2. belonging to sense objects because of the relationship to the objects (*viṣayato* ‘*pi vaiṣayikah*), 3. belonging to intention because of the relationship to the intention (*āśayato* ‘*pyāśaikah*), 4. grasping because of the relationship with grasping (*upādānato* ‘*pyupādānikah*).

Part of three aggregates, ten elements and five spheres.

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self that subsists on nutriment (*āhārasthitikātman*).

Furthermore, nutriment should be understood as: 1. belonging to the duration on an impure base (*aśuddhāśrayasthitika*), 2. belonging to the duration on a pure and impure base (*śuddhāśuddhāśrayasthitika*), 3. belonging to the duration on a pure base (*śuddhāśrayasthitika*), 4. manifesting the duration (*sthitisamdarśanika*).

29.a. What is inferior (*sottara*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are inferior? For what purpose is the inferior examined?

The inferior should be understood as the conditioned (*saṃskṛta*) and part of the unconditioned (*asaṃskṛtaikadeśa*).

All except for part of the element and sphere of mental objects (*dharmadhātvāyatanaikadeśa*).

They are examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self composed of inferior substance (*ātmadravyahīna*).

29.b. What is superior (*anuttara*)? How many of the aggregates, etc., are superior? For what purpose is the superior examined?

The superior should be understood as part of the unconditioned (*asaṃskṛta*).

Part of the element and sphere of mental objects.

It is examined for the purpose of abandoning attachment to a self composed of the supreme substance (*ātmadravyāgra*).

Thus, in this way the method of division is limitless.

BAB.1.

SUMMARY STATEMENT ON THE VARIOUS METHODS OF CLASSIFYING THE AGGREGATES, ELEMENTS AND SPHERES

Furthermore, in brief, the **division** (*prabedha*) of the aggregates, elements and spheres is threefold:

1. division according to imaginary characteristics (*parikalpitalakṣaṇa*),

2. division according to analytical characteristics (*vikalpitalakṣaṇa*),
3. division according to characteristics of the essential nature (*dharmaṭālakṣaṇa*).
1. **What is division according to imaginary characteristics?** It is the fact of imagining a self (I, *ātman*), a being (*sattva*), a soul (*jīva*), a creature (*jantu*), a person (*poṣa*), an individual (*pudgala*), a human being (*manuja*) or a man (*mānava*) in the aggregates, elements and spheres.
2. **What is division according to analytical characteristics?** These are the aggregates, elements and spheres themselves.
3. **What is division according to the characteristics of the essential nature?** This is the non-existence (*abhāva*) of a self in these same aggregates, elements and spheres. It is the non-existence of a being, soul, creature, person, individual, human being, or man. It is the fact that there is a non-self (*nairātmyāstītī*).

Furthermore, the **division is fourfold**:

1. division according to characteristics (*lakṣaṇaprabedha*),
2. division according to methods/aspects (*prakāraprabedha*),
3. division according to bases (*āśrayaprabedha*),
4. division according to series (*santatiprabedha*).
1. **What is division according to characteristics?** It is division according to the characteristics belonging to each of the aggregates, elements and spheres.
2. **What is division according to methods/aspects?** It is division of the same aggregates, elements and spheres according to whether they exist as substance (*dravyasat*), as designation (*prajñaptisat*), as convention (*saṃvṛtisat*), in the absolute sense (*paramārthaśat*), as having form (*rūpin*), as not having form (*arūpin*), as visible (*sanidarśana*), as invisible (*anidarśana*), etc., as demonstrated above.
3. **What is division according to base?** There are as many aggregates, elements and spheres as there are bases of beings (*sattvāśraya*).
4. **What is division according to series?** This is the momentary continuity of the aggregates, elements and spheres at each moment (*pratikṣaṇam*).

What is understood (*parijānāti*) by the person who is well-versed (*kuśala*) in division according to characteristics? He understands the false attachment to a self (*ātmābhiniveśa*).

What is understood by the person who which is well-versed in methods? He understands the notion of grouping (*piṇḍasaṃjñā*).

What is understood by the person who is well-versed in division according to base? He understands the false notion of being subjected to the results of an action that one has not done and the false notion of losing the results of an action that one has done (*akṛtābhyaṅgamakṛtaviprañśasamjñā*).

What is understood by the person who is well-versed in division according to series? He understands the false notion of stability (*sthirasamjñā*).

Furthermore, there is a **sixfold division** of the same aggregates, elements and spheres:

1. division according to turning outward (*bahirmukha*),
 2. division according to turning inward (*antarmukha*),
 3. division according to long duration (*āyatatakāla*),
 4. division according to limited duration (*paricchinnakāla*),
 5. division according to that moment (*tatkāla*),
 6. division according to manifestation (*saṃdarśana*).
1. **What is division according to turning outward?** For the most part, this is the division of the realm of desire (*kāmāvachara*).
 2. **What is division according to turning inward?** These are all the stages of absorption (*saṃādhibhūmi*).
 3. **What is division according to long duration?** This is what concerns ordinary people (*prthagjana*).
 4. **What is division according to limited duration?** This is what concerns disciples in the course of training (*śaikṣa*) and also what concerns arhats except for their aggregates, elements and spheres in the last moment (*charamakṣana*).
 5. **What is division according to that moment?** These are the aggregates, elements and spheres of the arhats' last moment.
 6. **What is division according to manifestation?** These are the aggregates, elements and spheres manifested by the buddhas and bodhisattvas, the great beings who have attained the highest perfection (*pāramiprāpta*).

CHAPTER II GROUPING (SAMGRAHA)

What is grouping (*samgraha*)?

Grouping should be understood in eleven ways:

1. grouping according to characteristics,
2. grouping according to elements,
3. grouping according to species,
4. grouping according to states,
5. grouping according to associations,
6. grouping according to space,
7. grouping according to time,
8. partial grouping,
9. complete grouping,
10. mutual grouping,
11. absolute grouping.

1. What is grouping according to characteristics? It is each group of aggregates, elements and spheres according to their own characteristics separately.

2. What is grouping according to elements? It is each group of elements according to the base-consciousness that is the seed of the aggregates, elements and spheres.

3. What is grouping according to species? It is each group of aggregates, elements and spheres as it is even though they have different characteristics.

4. What is grouping according to states? It is each group of aggregates, elements and spheres in a pleasant situation according to their own characteristics; also in an unpleasant situation or a situation that is neither pleasant nor unpleasant, according to their states.

5. What is grouping according to associations? The aggregate of form is grouped with the other aggregates as a result of their mutual association. Similarly for the other aggregates, elements and spheres.

6. What is grouping according to space (*desa*)? It is the grouping of aggregates, elements and spheres associated with the east according to their own characteristics. It should be understood in the same way with regard to the aggregates, elements and spheres in the other directions.

7. What is grouping according to time (*kāla*)? It is the grouping of aggregates, elements and spheres in the past according to their own characteristics. It should be understood in the same way with regard to the aggregates, elements and spheres in the future and in the present.

8. What is partial grouping? Of all the things included in the aggregates, elements and spheres, only one certain group should be understood as a partial grouping.

9. What is complete grouping? Everything included in the aggregates, elements and spheres taken as a whole should be understood as complete grouping.

10. What is mutual grouping?

- **How many elements and spheres are included in the aggregate of form?** Part of the ten elements and ten spheres.
- **How many elements and spheres are included in the aggregate of feeling?** Part of the elements and spheres. Similarly for the aggregates of perception and formation.
- **How many elements and spheres are included in the aggregate of consciousness?** Seven elements and one sphere.
- **How many aggregates and spheres are included in the element of the eye?** Part of the aggregate of form and one sphere. As it is for the element of the eye, so it is for the elements of the ear, nose, tongue, body, form, sound, smell, taste and tangible.
- **How many aggregates and spheres are included in the element of the mental organ?** One aggregate and one sphere.
- **How many aggregates and spheres are included in the element of mental objects?** Three aggregates, part of the aggregate of form and one sphere.
- **How many aggregates and spheres are included in the element of visual consciousness?** Part of the aggregate of consciousness and of the mental sphere. As it is for the visual consciousness, so it is for the auditory, olfactory, gustatory and tactile consciousnesses.
- **How many aggregates and elements are included in the sphere of the eye?** Part of the aggregate of form and one element. As it is for the sphere of the eye, so it is for the spheres of the ear, nose, tongue, body, form, sound, smell, taste and tangible.
- **How many aggregates and elements are included in the mental sphere?** One aggregate and seven elements.
- **How many aggregates and elements are included in the sphere of mental objects?** Three aggregates and part of one aggregate and one element¹⁰².

In the same way, such categories as existents, substance, designation, conventional meaning, ultimate meaning, knowables, knowables by special knowing, knowables by higher knowing, material, immaterial, visible, invisible, etc., which were previously explained, should be understood according to the mutual grouping of aggregates, elements and spheres.

¹⁰² Here Pradhan's restoration seems faulty. Cf. the Tibetan version: chos kyi skye mcad phuṇ po du daṇ/ khams du dag gis bsdus she na/ phuṇ po gsum daṇ/ gcig gi phyogs gcig daṇ/ khams gcig gis bsdus so//

11. What is absolute grouping? It is the grouping of aggregates, elements and spheres according to suchness (*tathatā*).¹⁰³

What benefit does the person who is well-versed in grouping obtain? He obtains the synthetic view of objects. The development of wholesome roots is in accord with the synthetic view of the mind regarding objects.

¹⁰³ Here there is probably a printing error in Pradhan's restoration. Cf Tibetan: don dam pa bsdus pa gañ དོན ཀྔ དམ པ བ୍ସ དୁସ ཕ ཁ ଗାନ୍ ପୋ ଦାନ୍ କହମ୍ ଦାନ୍ ଶ୍କ୍ୟେ ମଚ୍ଛେ ରନ୍ମାସ କ୍ୟି ଦେ ବ୍ଜିନ୍ ନିଦ ଦୂ//

CHAPTER III: CONNECTEDNESS (SAMPRAYOGA)

What is connectedness (*samprayoga*)?

In brief, connectedness is sixfold:

1. Non-separated connectedness (*avinirbhāga-samprayoga*),
2. mixed connectedness (*miśribhāva-samprayoga*),
3. collective connectedness (*samavadhāna-samprayoga*),
4. simultaneous connectedness (*sahabhāva-samprayoga*),
5. connectedness of activity (*krtyānuṣṭhāna-samprayoga*) and
6. coexistent connectedness (*sampratipatti-samprayoga*).

1. What is unseparated connectedness? It is the nonseparation of molecules (*rūpāṇśika*, particles of matter) from the atoms (*paramāṇu*) of which they are composed, in all of space (*diśa*).

2. What is mixed connectedness? It is the mixture, one with the other, of molecules that are greater than the atoms, in all of space.

3. What is collective connectedness? It is the agglomeration of the series of matter accumulated in space.

4. What is simultaneous connectedness? It is the simultaneous continuity, the appearance, the duration and the simultaneous cessation of the aggregates, elements and spheres in a body.

5. What is the connectedness of activity? It is the connections of actions, one with the other, like the co-operation of two monks in the activities of each.

6. What is coexistent connectedness? It is the existence of mind and mental activites together upon the same object. This co-existent connectedness has several aspects, for example, connection by unrelated nature and not by self-nature, the connection of non-opposites and not of opposites, the connection of things of the same time and not of different times, the connection of realms of similar elements and not of dissimilar elements.

- **Universal connectedness (*sarvatraga-samprayoga*)** is the association together, in the same thought, of sensation (*vedanā*), perception (*saṃjñā*), volition (*cetanā*), contact (*sparśa*), attention (*manaskāra*) and consciousness (*vijñāna*).⁶²
- Again, **impure universal connectedness (*kliṣṭa-sarvatraga-samprayoga*)** is the association in the mental organ (*manas*) of four defilements.⁶³

⁶² These are present in every single thought, hence the designation ‘universal association’. Cf. *sabbacittasādhārana* in the Pali Abhidhamma: *phasso vedanā saññā cetanā ekaggatā jīvindriyam manasikāro ceti sattime cetasikā sabbacittasādhārana nāma*. Abhisanga, ed. Devamitta (Colombo, 1929, p. 6).

⁶³ These are the concept of self (*ātmadrsti*), love of self (*ātmasneha*), pride of ‘I am’ (*asmimāna*) and ignorance (*avidyā*).

- **Occasional connectedness (*kādāchitka samprayoga*)** is that of wholesome (*kuśala*) things, such as faith (*śraddhā*) and major and minor defilements such as desire (*rāga*), in the mind.
- **Situational connectedness (*āvasthika samprayoga*)** is that of things linked to a pleasant sensation (*sukhavedanā*); the same for an unpleasant sensation or a sensation that is neither pleasant nor unpleasant.
- **Uninterrupted connectedness (*avicchhinna samprayoga*)** occurs in a situation where the mind is active (*sacittakāyām avasthāyām*).
- **Interrupted connectedness (*vicchinna samprayoga*)** occurs in a person who has entered into the absorption where the mind is inactive (*acittakasamāpatty-anaritasya*).
- **Outwardly-turned connectedness (*bahirmukha samprayoga*)**, in most cases, is that of the mind and mental activities associated with the sense pleasures (*kāma-pratisaṃyukta*).
- **Inwardly-turned connectedness (*antaramukha samprayoga*)**, in most cases, is that of the mind and mental activities associated with the domains of tranquility (meditative stabilization) (*saṃāhitabhūmika*).
- **Habitual connectedness (*ucita samprayoga*)** is that of the mind and mental activities of ordinary people (*pārthagjanika*) and also of some disciples in the course of training (*śaikṣa*) or who have completed their training (*aśaikṣa*).
- **Nonhabitual connectedness (*anucita samprayoga*)** is that of the supramundane mind and mental activities (*lokottara cittachaitasika*) and also of those obtained subsequently to supramundane wisdom (*lokottaraprṣṭhalabdhā*) immediately after the first moment.

What benefit does the person well-versed in the method of connectedness obtain? He knows the connection and disconnection in mind only (*cittamātre*) of things that defile (*saṃkleśika*) and that purify (*vyavadānika*), such as sensations (*vedanā*), and knowing that, he abandons attachment to the concept that the self (*ātman*) experiences (*vedayate*), perceives (*saṃjānati*), wills (*cetayate*), remembers (*smarati*), becomes defiled (*saṃkleśyate*) and becomes purified (*vyavadāyate*). He penetrates the concept of non-self (*nairātmyam avatarati*).

CHAPTER IV: ACCOMPANIMENT (SAMANVĀGAMA)

What is accompaniment (*samanvāgama*)?

Its characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*) are similar to the preceding, i.e., *samprayoga*, connection.

The classification of accompaniment is threefold:

1. accompaniment by seeds (*bījasamanvāgama*),
2. accompaniment by mastery (*vaśitāsamanvāgama*) and
3. accompaniment by practice (*samudācārasamanvāgama*).

1. What is accompaniment by seeds? He who is born into the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*) is accompanied (*samanvāgata*) by the accompaniment of seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the sense pleasures (*kāmapratisamyuktaih kleśopakleśaiḥ*) and of the seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the form realm and the formless realm (*rūpārūpyapratisamyuktais cha kleśopakleśaiḥ*), as well as the wholesome things that bring about rebirth (*upapattilābhikaiś cha kuśalaiḥ*).

He who is born into the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) may be considered as being accompanied and also not accompanied by the accompaniment of seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures, but he is accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the form realm and the formless realm, as well as the wholesome things that bring about rebirth.¹⁰⁴

He who is born into the formless realm may be considered as being accompanied and also not accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures and the form realm, but he is accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of the major and minor defilements belonging to the formless realm, as well as by the wholesome things that bring about rebirth.

As for the person having the antidotes belonging to the three realms (*traidhātukapratipakṣalābhī*), if the antidote is produced counter to a certain defilement, he is not accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of this kind of defilement. If the antidote is not produced counter to a certain defilement, he is accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of this kind of defilement.

2. What is accompaniment by mastery? This is the case of a person accompanied by the accompaniment of the mastery of wholesome things acquired by effort (*prāyogikānām kuśalānām dharmānām*), and of the mastery of meditative stabilization, deliverance, concentration, attainment, etc., whether mundane or supramundane (*laukikānām lokottarānām vā dhyānavimokṣasamādhi-samāpatyādīnām*), as well as certain other neutral things (*tadekayānām cāvyākṛtānām*).

¹⁰⁴ Pradhan's edition lacks part of this phrase probably due to an error in printing, since Gokhale's edition does contain this phrase.

3. What is accompaniment by practice? This is the case of a person accompanied by the accompaniment of the practice of something, whether wholesome (*kuśala*) or unwholesome (*akuśala*) or neutral (*avyākṛta*), in the face of (*sammukhibhūta*) the aggregates, elements and spheres.

The person whose wholesome roots (*kuśalamūla*) have been completely cut off (*samucchinna*) may be considered to be accompanied and not accompanied by the accompaniment of the seeds of wholesome things (*kuśalānām dharmānām bijasamanvāgamena*). As for the extremist (*ātyantikah punah*), he is a case of the accompaniment by the defilements (*kleśasamanvāgama*) and should be considered among the wilful-extremists (*icchhantika*) who have deliberately given up parinirvāna.¹⁰⁵ Because the cause of deliverance is absent (*mokṣahetuvaikalya*), the extremist is a case of non-accompaniment by the cause of those things that procure deliverance.

What benefit does the person who is well-versed in the teaching of accompaniment obtain? He reaches the understanding of the increase and decrease of things (*dharma*). He who understands the increase and decrease of things in this way has no fixed concepts (*na ekāntikasamjñī*) in regard to anything, worldly success or failure (*laukikyān sampattau vipattau vā*), but directs himself exclusively to abandoning attachment and aversion (*anunayapratighaprahāṇa*).

The first Compendium of the Abhidharmasamuccaya
entitled The Compendium of Characteristics
is herein completed.

¹⁰⁵ See Lankā, pp. 65-66.

c. **COMPENDIUM OF ASCERTAINMENT (VINIŚCAYASAMUCCAYA)**

CA. **CHAPTER ONE ASCERTAINMENT OF THE TRUTHS (SATYAVINIŚCAYA)**

What is ascertainment (*viniścaya*)?

- I. The ascertainment of the Truths (*satyaviniścaya*),
- II. the ascertainment of the teachings (*dharma-viniścaya*),
- III. the ascertainment of acquisition (*prāptiviniścaya*),
- IV. the ascertainment of dialectic (*samkathyaviniścaya*).

I. **What is the ascertainment of the Truths?** These are the Four Noble Truths (*catvāryāryasatyāni*):

- (1) suffering (*duhkha*),
- (2) the origin (*samudaya*),
- (3) the cessation (*nirodha*) and
- (4) the path (*mārga*).

CAA. **FIRST SECTION: DUHKHASATYA**

CAA.1. **THE TRUTH OF SUFFERING IN REFERENCE TO THE LIFE OF BEINGS AND THE BASIS OF LIFE**

(1) **What is the Truth of suffering (*duḥkhasatya*)?** It should be understood by reference to

- (a) the life (existence) of beings (*sattvajanma*) and
- (b) the basis of life (*janmādhishṭhāna*).

(a) **What is the life of beings?** It is the life of beings

- in hell (*naraka*), amongst animals (*tiryak*) and ghosts (*preta*);
- amongst human beings (*manusya*) in the eastern region (*Pūrvavideha*), in the western region (*Aparagodānīya*), in the continent of India (*Jambhudvīpa*), and in the northern region (*Uttarakuru*);
- amongst the gods in the assembly of the Four Great Kings (*Cāturmahā-rājakāyika*), in the heavens of the Thirty-Three (*Trāyastriṁśa*), of the Free from Strife (*Yāmas*), of the Blissful Ones (*Tuṣita*), of the Delighting in Creation (*Nirmāṇarati*), of the Mastery over the Creations of Others (*Paranirmitavaśavarti*), in the assembly of Brahma (*Brahmakāyika*), in the heavens of the Acolytes of Brahma (*Brahmapurohita*), of the Great Brahma (*Mahābrahma*), of the Limited Light (*Parīttābha*), of the Unlimited Light (*Apramāṇābha*), of Clear Light (*Abhāsvara*), of the Limited Virtue (*Parīttaśubha*), of the Unlimited Virtue (*Apramāṇaśubha*), of the Extensive Virtue (*Śubhakṛtsna*), of the Cloudless (*Anabhraka*), of the Increasing Merit (*Puṇyaprasava*), of the

Great Maturity (*Brhatphala*), of Those of Non-Perception (*Asamjñisattva*), of the Not Greater (*Avṛha*), of the Without Distress (*Atapa*), of the Good View (*Sudrśa*), of the Good Aspect (*Sudarśana*), of the Highest (*Akaniṣṭha*, lit., ‘not the least’),

- of the Sphere of Infinite Space (*Ākāśānanyāyatana*), of the Sphere of Infinite Consciousness (*Vijñānanyāyatana*), of the Sphere of Nothingness (*Ākiñcanyāyatana*) and of the Sphere of Neither Perception nor Non-Perception (*Naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana*).

(b) What is the basis of life? It is the receptacle world (the inanimate world) (*bhājanaloka*). Above the circle of the atmosphere (*vāyumanḍala*) rests the circle of water (*apmanḍala*). On the circle of water rests the circle of the earth (*prthivīmanḍala*). On the circle of the earth rests Mount Sumeru, seven mountains of gold (*kāñcanaparvata*), four continents (*dvīpa*, lit. ‘island’), eight intermediate islands (*antaradvīpa*), the inner ocean (*abhyantaratasamudra*) and the outer ocean (*bāhyasamudra*), four terraces of Sumeru (*Sumerupariṣaṇḍa*), the dwellings (*sthānāntara*) of the gods of the assembly of the Four Great Kings (*Cāturmahārājakāyika*) and the Thirty-Three (*Trāyastriṃśa*), the circular chain of mountains surrounding the earth (*cakravādaparvata*); in space (*akaśe*), the heavenly residences (*vimāna*) of the gods of the heavens of the Yāmas, of the Blissful Ones (*Tuṣita*), of the Delighting in Creation (*Nirmānarati*), of the Mastery over the Creations of Others (*Paranirmitavaśavarti*) and of the gods of the form realm (*rūpavacara*); the abodes of the demi-gods (*asura*), the places of hell (*naraka*): the hot hells (*uṣṇanaraka*), the cold hells (*sītanaraka*), the isolated hells (*pratyekanaraka*); and the residences of the other animals (*tiryak*) and ghosts (*preta*).

- Just as the sun and moon light up the directions of space by shining and by moving, so in a thousand worlds¹⁰⁶, a thousand moons, a thousand suns, a thousand Sumerus that are the kings of mountains, a thousand of the four continents, a thousand residences of the gods of the assembly of the Four Great Kings (*Cāturmahārājakāyika*), a thousand residences of the Thirty-Three (*Trāyastriṃśa*), a thousand residences of the Yāmas, a thousand residences of the Blissful Ones (*Tuṣita*), a thousand residences of the Delighting in Pleasure (*Nirmānarati*), a thousand residences of Mastery over the Creations of Others (*Paranirmitavaśavarti*), a thousand worlds of Brahma – this is called 1 small chilioocosm (*sahāsracūdikalokadhātu*).
- 1000 small chiliocosms is called a second medium chilioocosm (*dvitiyamadhyamasāhasra lokadhātu*).
- 1000 medium chiliocosms is called a third megachilioocosm (*trtiya mahāsāhasra lokadhātu*).

This trichilio megachilioocosm (*trisāhasra mahāsāhasra lokadhātu*)¹⁰⁷ is surrounded by a circular range of great mountains (*mahācakravādaparvata-maṇḍala*). The durations of the dissolution and evolution of this trichilio-megachilioocosm are equal (*samasamvartavivarta*).

¹⁰⁶ Cf. *yavatā candimasuriyā pariharanti disā bhanti virocanā, tāva sahassadhā loko...* M. I, p. 328.

¹⁰⁷ Cf. *sahassī cūlanikā lokadhātu, dvisahassī majjhimakā lokadhātu, tisahassī mahāsahassī lokadhātu*. A I, p. 227; Nd2, 235, 2b.

Just as round drops of rain fall from the sky constantly without interruption, so in the direction of the east, an infinite number of universes will dissolve or will evolve, dissolve or remain dissolved, or evolve and remain evolved constantly and without interruption. As in the direction of the east, so it is in all the ten directions.

Indeed, the world of beings (the animate world) or the receptacle world (the inanimate world) which are produced by the power of actions and defilements (*karmakleśajanita*) and which are dominated by actions and defilements (*karmakleśādhipateya*),¹⁰⁸ all of this is called the Truth of suffering (*duḥkhasatya*).

The realm of the completely pure world (*pariśuddhalokadhātu*) is not included in the Truth of suffering and is not created by the power of actions and defilements, nor is it dominated by actions and defilements. It is solely the result of the great aspiration (*mahāprāṇidhāna*) which is guided by supremacy over the roots favorable to purification (*vyavadānakuśala-mūlādhipati*). The place of its arising is inconceivable. It is understood by the Buddha alone. It does not belong to the domain of meditative absorption of those who meditate (*dhyāyin*), therefore even less so to that of non-meditators.

CAA.2.

THE EIGHT TYPES OF SUFFERING

The **classification of suffering** is of eight types:

- 1) suffering of birth (*jātiduḥkha*),
- 2) suffering of old age (*jarā*),
- 3) suffering of sickness (*vyādhi*),
- 4) suffering of death (*marana*),
- 5) suffering of association with what is unpleasant (*apriyasamprayoga*),
- 6) suffering of separation from what is pleasant (*priyaviprayoga*),
- 7) suffering of not obtaining what one desires (*yad apīcchhan na labhate*),
- 8) in brief (*samkṣiptena*), the five aggregates of attachment (*pañchopādānaskandha*) are suffering.

1) Why is birth suffering? Because of the suffering due to obstruction and because it is the basis of the other kinds of suffering.

2) Why is old age suffering? Because of the suffering caused by change in time (age).¹⁰⁹

3) Why is sickness suffering? Because of the suffering caused by change of the elements.

4) Why is death suffering? Because of the suffering caused by the loss of life.

¹⁰⁸ The animate world is produced by the power of actions and defilements, and the inanimate world is dominated by actions and defilements.

¹⁰⁹ Tibetan: na chod.

5) Why is association with what is unpleasant suffering? Because of the suffering caused by association itself.

6) Why is separation from what is pleasant suffering? Because of the suffering caused by separation itself.

7) If one does not obtain what one desires, why is that suffering? Because of the suffering caused by the non-obtaining of the desired result.

8) Why are the five aggregates of attachment suffering? Because of the suffering caused by agitation (turbulence).

CAA.3. **THE SIX TYPES OF SUFFERING**

These eight types may be gathered into six:

- (2) suffering of obstruction,
- (3) suffering of change,
- (4) suffering of association,
- (5) suffering of separation,
- (6) suffering of not obtaining a desired result, and
- (7) suffering of agitation (turbulence),

Thus these six types in general include the eight preceding types. Whether six or eight, it is the same thing.

It is said that there are three types of suffering. The eight types are included therein.

In this case, are the eight included in the three, or the three in the eight? They are grouped according to their proper order:

- (i) The suffering of birth, old age, sickness and death and association with what is unpleasant are simple suffering (*duḥkhaduḥkhatā*).
- (ii) The sufferings of being separated from what is pleasant and of not obtaining what one desires are the suffering caused by change (*vipariṇāmaduḥkhatā*).
- (iii) The five aggregates of attachment are suffering as suffering caused by conditioned states (*samskāraduḥkhatā*).

CAA.4. **THE TWO TYPES OF SUFFERING**

Furthermore, it is said that there are two kinds of suffering:

- (a) suffering according to conventional truth (*saṃvritisatya*) and
- (b) suffering according to ultimate truth (*paramārtha-satya*).

(a) What is suffering according to conventional truth, and (b) what is suffering according to ultimate truth?

- (a) From the suffering of birth to the suffering of not obtaining what one desires, are suffering according to conventional truth.
- (b) The five aggregates of attachment are suffering is suffering according to ultimate truth.

CAA.5.

THE FOUR GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TRUTH OF SUFFERING

What are the general characteristics of suffering? They are the characteristics of

- (1) impermanence (*anitya*),
- (2) suffering (*duḥkha*),
- (3) emptiness (*śūnya*) and
- (4) non-self (*anātma*).

CAA.5.1.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERISTIC OF IMPERMANENCE

(1) What is the characteristic of impermanence? In short, it is of twelve kinds:

- (i) non-reality,¹¹⁰
- (ii) destruction,
- (iii) change,
- (iv) separation,
- (v) presence,¹¹¹
- (vi) essential nature (*dharmaṭālakṣaṇa*),
- (vii) instantaneity,
- (viii) continuity,¹¹²
- (ix) sickness, etc.,
- (x) differing continuity of mind,¹¹³
- (xi) good and bad fortune and
- (xii) dissolution and evolution of the world receptacle.

(i) What is the characteristic of non-reality? It is the fact that in the aggregates, spheres and elements there is never a self or anything belonging to a self.

¹¹⁰ Tib. gan med pa'i mchan ŋid.

¹¹¹ Tibe. ſe ba'i mchan ŋid.

¹¹² Tib. rgyun gyi mchan ŋid.

¹¹³ Tib. sems sna chogs kyi rnam par 'bhuñ ba'i mchan ŋid.

- (ii) **What is the characteristic of destruction?** It is the cessation of conditioned things that have been born, their momentary appearance and disappearance.
- (iii) **What is the characteristic of change?** It is the alteration of conditioned things in their different states, their continuity as a series.
- (iv) **What is the characteristic of separation?** It is the lack of dominance over conditioned things or the appropriation by others.
- (v) **What is the characteristic of presence?** It is present impermanence, impermanence experienced in this very moment.
- (vi) **What is the characteristic of essential nature?** It is future impermanence, which one will inevitably experience.
- (vii) **What is the characteristic of instantaneity?** It is the fact that conditioned things do not last longer than one moment (*kṣaṇa*).
- (viii) **What is the characteristic of continuity?** It is the uninterruptedness throughout beginningless time of the continuity of arisen and ceased conditioned things.
- (ix) **What is the characteristic of sickness, etc.?** It is the change in life because of the using up of the four elements by time.¹¹⁴
- (x) **What is the characteristic of differing continuity of mind?** It is the fact that sometimes the mind is full of lust, sometimes it is free of lust; similarly, it is full of hatred or free of hatred, full of delusion or free of delusion, contracted or distracted, depressed or elated, excited or non-excited, calm or agitated, concentrated or not, and so on -- this is continuity of the mind.
- (xi) **What is the characteristic of good and bad fortune?** At the end of good fortune there is bad fortune and destruction.
- (xii) **What is the characteristic of dissolution and evolution of the world receptacle?** There are three types of dissolution and evolution caused by fire, water and wind. The upper limits (*śīrṣa*, head) of the three dissolutions are the second, third and fourth absorptions (*dhyāna*). As for the fourth absorption, only the disappearance and appearance of the external abodes are considered as their dissolution and evolution, because these abodes appear and disappear only with the gods of the fourth absorption. This is called dissolution and evolution.¹¹⁵

Again, there are three minor eras of the universe (*antarakalpa*), those of

- (i) famine,
 - (ii) sickness and
-

¹¹⁴ Cf. MA I, p. 57: *kālo ghasati bhūtāni*, ‘time consumes (eats up) the elements (beings).’

¹¹⁵ For further details concerning dissolution and evolution (*saṃvartavivarta*), see Kośa, chapter III, pp. 181, 210, 214, 216.

(iii) weapons.

At the end of the three kinds of minor eras of the universe, there is destruction by weapons, etc., when the world remains dissolved.

- (1) A minor era of the universe is the first period of the diminishing of life (*apakarṣa*, degeneration).
- (2) Another minor era of the universe is the last period of increase of life (*utkarṣa*, regeneration).
- (3-20) Eighteen minor eras of the universe comprise the increase and decrease of life.

Thus, the universe dissolves during twenty minor eras, during twenty minor eras it remains dissolved, during twenty minor eras it evolves, and during twenty minor eras it remains evolved.

These eighty minor eras of the universe altogether make up one great era of the universe (*mahākalpa*). The length of life of the gods in the form realm and in the formless realm is calculated based on these eras of the universe (*kalpa*).

Furthermore, it is said that beings die and leave these abodes

- (i) at the expiration of their life-span (*āyu*), or
- (ii) at the expiration of their merit (*punya*), or
- (iii) at the expiration of their activity (*karma*).

What is the expiration of the life-span? It is death at the normal time (*kāla-marana*).¹¹⁶

What is the expiration of merit? It is premature death (*akālamaraṇa*), death due to lack of merit, because beings are attached to delightful absorption (*āsvādasamāpatti*).¹¹⁷ Thus they die as a result of the expiration of merit.

What is expiration of activity (*karma*)? It is death at the expiration of actions the results of which must be experienced immediately after death in the following life (*upapadyavedanīyakarma*), or of actions the results of which must be experienced later in successive lives (*aparaparyāyavedanīyakarma*), or by the expiration of both.

CAA.5.2.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERISTIC OF SUFFERING

2. **What is the characteristic of suffering (*duḥkhalakṣaṇa*)?** The three types of suffering, the eight types or six types of suffering, as they have been defined above, are generally considered as suffering.

Why is it said in the sūtra: ‘All that is impermanent is suffering’?¹¹⁸ Because the characteristic of suffering is evident by reason of impermanence, in two cases: (i) in the case of birth, suffering as suffering (*duḥkaduḥkatā*) is evident because of impermanence; (ii) in the case of destruction (death), suffering as a

¹¹⁶ I.e., after a long life.

¹¹⁷ See Kośa, chap.V, 8, 43; VI, 222; VIII, 132, 144.

¹¹⁸ Cf. S II, p. 53: *yad aniccam tam dukham*.

result of change (*vipariṇāmaduḥkata*) is evident because of impermanence; suffering as a conditioned state (*samskāraduḥkata*) is evident because of impermanence in both cases [i.e., birth and death]. Therefore, because of the impermanence and change of conditioned things, the Blessed One has said: ‘Everything that is experienced is included in suffering.’¹¹⁹

And again, the eight kinds of suffering beginning with birth appear in conditioned things which are subject to appearance and disappearance. It is in this sense that the Blessed One has said: ‘Everything that is impermanent is suffering.’

Moreover, suffering, such as birth, appear in conditioned things which are subject to impermanence. Hence suffering in the nature of impermanence. The meaning of suffering should be understood in this way here.¹²

CAA.5.3.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERISTIC OF EMPTINESS

(3) **What is the characteristic of emptiness (*śūnyatā*)?** It is the non-existence (*abhāva*) of a certain thing, there. To see (*samanupaśyanā*) in this way is emptiness.

Again, it is the existence (*bhāva*) of another thing, there. In this way there is true knowledge (*yathābhūtajñāna*). This is called emptiness perceived by penetration (*avatāra*). True knowledge denotes the informed meaning.

What is the meaning of the non-existence of a certain thing, there? It is the non-existence in the aggregates, elements and spheres of a self or anything whatsoever belonging to a self of permanent, durable, eternal, immutable nature. In this way is their emptiness.

What is the meaning of the existence of another thing, there? It is the fact that there is non-self in the aggregates, elements and spheres. It is the nonexistence of the self, and the existence of the non-self. It is in this sense that the Blessed One has said: ‘Existence is the true knowledge of an existent thing; non-existence is the true knowledge of a non-existent thing.’

Furthermore, emptiness is threefold:

- i) the emptiness of non-existence (*abhāvaśūnyatā*),¹²⁰
- ii) the emptiness of existence as such-and-such (*tathābhāvaśūnyatā*) and
- iii) natural emptiness (*prakṛtiśūnyatā*).

The first should be understood as imaginary (*parikalpita*), the second as relative (*paratantra*)¹²¹ and the third as absolute (*pariniṣpanna*).

¹¹⁹ Cf. ibid., p. 53: *yad kiñci vedayitam tam dukkhasmin ti*.

¹²⁰ *svabhāvaśūnyatā* in Pradhan’s restoration seems to be a printing error. For the three forms of emptiness, see Sūtrālaṅkāra, chap. XIV, v. 34 and p. 95.

CAA.5.4.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERISTIC OF NON-SELF

(4) **What is the characteristic of non-self (*anātma*)?** It is the non-existence in the aggregates, elements and spheres of the characteristics postulated in the theory of the self (*ātmavāda*) as a result of the nonexistence of the characteristics of a self in the aggregates, elements and spheres. This is called the characteristic of non-self. For this reason the Blessed One said: ‘All things (dharmas) are without self.’¹²²

Furthermore, the Blessed One has said: “(i) All of that is not mine, (ii) nor ‘I am’ nor my self”.¹²³ What is the meaning of the phrase: ‘Thus should one understand that truly by correct wisdom’?¹²⁴

- (i) The phrase ‘all that is not mine’ is said in reference to outer things. ‘Outer things’ is the characteristic of things belonging to an imaginary self. Hence the extension of the idea to things belonging to a self.
- (ii) ‘Inner things’ is the characteristic of an imaginary self and of things belonging to it. Hence the extension of the idea to the self and things belonging to the self.

CAA.6.

THE MOMENTARY CHARACTERISTIC OF IMPERMANENCE

It was said above that impermanence has a momentary characteristic. **How should this be understood?** Just as the momentary characteristic of mind and mental activities, so in the same way should one understand the momentary characteristic of matter (body, etc.), as a result of its appropriation by mind, its acquisition and preservation by mind, its transformation by mind, having mind as its base, being produced by the supremacy of the mind, being dominated by the mind.

CAA.7.

THE MOMENTARY CHARACTERISTIC OF MATTER

Furthermore, one should understand ‘the momentary characteristic of matter (body)’ because it is subject to the final transformation, and also due to the destruction of the self-essence (*svarasavinaśa*) of a thing that has been born regardless of its condition (*anapekṣya pratyayam*).

CAA.8.

THE FOUR GREAT ELEMENTS AND THE DERIVATIVES

It is said: ‘Whatever is matter (*rūpa*) is the four great elements (*catvāri mahābhūtāni*) and the derivatives (*upādāya*) of the four great elements.’¹²⁵ **Why is that said?** It is said in this way because of their co-

¹²¹ This phrase is missing in Pradhan’s restoration.

¹²² *sabbe dhammā anattā*, Dhp. XX, 7 (or v. 279); M I, p. 228; S II, pp. 132, 133.

¹²³ *Sabbam.....n’etam mama, n’eso’ ham asmi, ne me so attā*. M I, p. 139.

¹²⁴ *Evaṁ etam yathābhūtam sammappaññāya daṭṭhabbaṁ*, ibid., p. 139. These two phrases go together: *Sabbam.....n’etam mama, n’so ham asmi, ne me so attā’ti evaṁ etam yathābhūtam sammappaññāya daṭṭhabbaṁ*. ‘All that is not mine, nor ‘I am’, nor my self. This is how one should really understand that by true wisdom.’

¹²⁵ Cf. *Cattāro ca mahābhūtā catunnañ ca mahābhūtanāñ upādāya rūpañ -- idam vuccati sabbam rūpam*. Dhs., p.124, section 584.

existence (*sambhava*). ‘Derived’ (*upādāya*) means that it has its basis in the same place (*ekadeśāśrayībhāva*). If a certain element occurs in a combination (*samudāya*), it is said that it exists there. There are things that contain the totality of the elements (*sārvabhadrika*). Also in regard to derived matter (*upādāyarūpa*), if a certain derived substance occurs in a combination, it should be understood as existing there.

CAA.9.

THE ATOM ESTABLISHED BY ULTIMATE ANALYSIS

Furthermore, it is said that a collection of matter (*rūpasamudāya*) is composed of atoms. Here the atom (*paramānu*) should be understood as not having a physical body (*nihśarīra*). The atom is established (*vyavasthāna*) by means of ultimate analysis (*paryantaprabhedaṭaḥ*) by the intellect (*buddhyā*) for the purpose of abandoning (*vibhāvana*)¹²⁶ the idea of grouping (*piṇḍasamjñā*) and for the purpose of penetrating into the non-reality (*dravyāparinispattipraveśa*) of matter.

CAA.10.

ANOTHER SET OF EIGHT TYPES OF SUFFERING

Furthermore, there is

- (1) immense and unlimited (*vipulam asamlikhitam*) suffering,
- (2) limited (*saṃlikhitam*) suffering,
- (3) limited and unlimited (*saṃlikhitāsaṃlikhitam*) suffering; also there is
- (4) medium and limited (*madhyamasamlikhitam*),
- (5) light and unlimited (*tanukam asamlikhitam*),
- (6) lighter and limited (*lanutaram saṃlikhitam*),
- (7) lightest and limited (*tanutamam saṃlikhitam*) sufferings;
- (8) there is a form of non-suffering (*aduḥkha*) that has the appearance of suffering (*duḥkhapratibhāsa*) which approaches the great limit (*mahāsaṃlekhapratyupasthāna*).

(1) What is immense and unlimited suffering? It is the suffering in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara*) of those who have not acquired wholesome roots (*anupachitakuśalamūla*).

(2) What is limited (*saṃlikhitam*) suffering? It is the same as the preceding in those who have acquired wholesome qualities leading to deliverance (*utpannamokṣabhāgīya*).

Katamo c' avuso rūpupādanakkhandho? Cattāri ca mahābhūtāni catunnañ ca mahābhūtānam upādāyarūpam. M. I, p. 185.

¹²⁶ Here *vibhāvana* means ‘abandonment’, ‘renunciation’ and not ‘examination’, ‘investigation’, ‘explanation’, ‘exposition’, ‘assurance’, etc. as usually. Dhs. A. p. 163 explains *vibhāvana* as *antaradhāpanā* “to make disappear”. Cf. Kośa, VIII, 3, *vibhūtarūpasamjñā* which means ‘the one who has abandoned the perception of rūpa’.

(3) **What is limited and unlimited (*samplikhitāsamplikhitam*) suffering?** It is the same as above in those who have acquired wholesome roots directed towards mundane detachment (*laukikavairāgya*).

(4) **What is medium and limited (*madhyamasamplikhitam*) suffering?** It is the suffering of those who have been born into the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) and who lack the wholesome qualities leading to deliverance (*vivarjitamokṣabhāgīya*).

(5) **What is light and unlimited (*tanukam asamplikhitam*) suffering?** It is the suffering of those who have been born into the formless realm (*ārūpya*) and who lack the wholesome qualities leading to deliverance.

(6) **What is lighter and limited (*tanutarām samplikhitam*) suffering?** It is the suffering of disciples in the course of training (*śaikṣa*).

(7) **What is the lightest limited (*tanutamam samplikhitam*) suffering?** They are the six spheres¹²⁷ that make up the condition for the vital faculty (*jīvitendriyapratyaya*) of disciples who have finished the course of their training (*aśaikṣa*), (i.e., arhant).

(8) **What is the non-suffering that has the appearance of suffering and approaches the great limit (*adūkhakhaṇḍaḥ khaṇḍapratibhāṣām mahāsaṃplekhaphratyupasthānam*)?** This is the case of bodhisattvas who have attained perfection (*pāramiprāpta*) and who deliberately continue to be reborn into existence (*bhavopapatti*).

CAA.11.

THE THREE TYPES OF DEATH

It is said that death (*marana*) is suffering. Here death is threefold:

- (i) that of a person whose mind is wholesome (*kuśalacitta*),
- (ii) that of a person whose mind is unwholesome (*akuśalacitta*) and
- (iii) that of a person whose mind is neutral (*avyākṛtacitta*).

(i) The death of a person whose mind is wholesome should be understood as that which results when the mental activity is clear (*paṭuke cittapracāre*) due to the power of wholesome roots (*kuśalamūlabala*) or due to another's influence (*paropasamjhāra*).

(ii) The death of a person whose mind is unwholesome should be understood as that which also results when the mental activity is clear due to the power of unwholesome roots or due to another's influence.

(iii) The death of a person whose mind is neutral should be understood as that which results when the mental activity is clear or obscure, when it is incapable of mental formation (*abhisamkārāsamartha*) due to the lack of the two.

In the person who has been a doer of good (*śubhakārin*), the lower part of the body becomes cold first. But in the evil-doer (*aśubhakārin*), the upper part of the body becomes cold. At this moment, the intermediate existence (*antarābhavo'bhinirvartate*) unfolds before the evil-doer in the appearance (*nirbhāsa*), for

¹²⁷ *sadāyatana*: eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mental organ

example, of a black bull or goat (*kṛṣṇa kutapa*) or a very black night (*andhakāratamisrā rātri*); before the person who has been a doer of good, it appears like a white cloth (*śukla paṭa*) or like the night illumined by the moon (*sajyotsnā rātri*).

CAA.12.

INTERMEDIATE EXISTENCE

There is intermediate existence for a person who is going to be reborn in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*) or in the form realm (*rūpadhātu*), and for a person who leaves the formless realm (*arūpyadhātu*). The latter is like a *gandharva*¹²⁸ created by mind (*manomaya*). He lives for seven days more or less and may die even before that. Sometimes he returns.¹²⁹ Remaining there, he accumulates actions (*karma*) and he also sees similar beings (*sabhāgāṁś ca sattvān paśyati*). In the place where he is to be born, he has this physical form (*tad ākṛti*) and his movements are unobstructed (*apratihatagati*). Like a being endowed with supernatural powers (*rddhimān*), moving rapidly (*āśugāmī*), he comes to the place of his rebirth (*upapattyāyatane pratihanyate*). Like the pans of a balance going up and down, he dies and is tied by conception into the place of his rebirth. The being who is in the intermediate existence (*antarābhavastha*) develops lust (*rāga*) for the place of his rebirth, and the other defilements (*kleśa*) make up its condition (*pratyaya*) also. With this lust, the intermediate existence ceases and the embryo (*kalala*), equipped with consciousness (*savijñānaka*), arises which is the result (*vipāka*). The development of the faculties (*indrīya*) begins subsequently, as is explained in conditioned production (*pratītyasamutpāda*), and one of the four modes of birth (*yoni*, womb), birth from an egg (*aṇḍaja*), birth from the placenta (*jarāyuja*), birth from moisture (*samsvedaja*), apparitional birth (*upapāduka*) occurs.

¹²⁸ *Gandharva* is explained as ‘someone who lives on odors’. For a detailed discussion, see Kośa, chap. III, pp. 36-53.

¹²⁹ He returns to his previous dwelling hoping to receive the merits of good actions performed on his behalf by his relatives. Therefore, generally on the seventh day, the relatives of the dead person carry out, in his name, meritorious activities such as having the Dharma preached by a monk, giving alms (*mataka dāna*) to the Community (*Saṅgha*), and transferring the merit to him for his happiness in his new life.

CAB.

SECOND SECTION: SAMUDAYASATYA

(2) What is the Truth of the origin (*samudaya*) of suffering? It is

- (a) the defilements (*kleśa*) and
- (b) the actions dominated by the defilements (*kleśādhipateya karma*).

The thirst (desire, *trṣṇā*) that produces re-existence and re-becoming (*paunarbhavikī*), which is bound to passionate lust (*nandīrāgasahagatā*) and which takes its delights here and there (*tatratastrā'bhinandinī*), was designated by the Blessed One as the Truth of the origin of suffering (*samudayasatya*). This is the main exposition (*prādhānyanirdeśa*) of the Truth of the origin.

What is the principal meaning (*prādhyānyārtha*)? It is the meaning that is present everywhere (*sarvatragārtha*). **What does it mean that it is present everywhere?** It is the fact that this thirst (*trṣṇā*) is present in regard to all objects (*vastusarvatraga*), on all occasions (*avasthāsarvatraga*), at all times, past, present and future (*adhvasarvatraga*), in all realms of existence (*dhātusarvatraga*),¹³⁰ in all pursuits (*eṣaṇāsarvatraga*),¹³¹ and in all forms (*prakārasarvatraga*).¹³²

CAB.1.

THE DEFILEMENTS (KLEŚA)

What are the defilements (*kleśa*)? The defilements should be understood:

- (1) by their enumeration (*parisamkhyāna*),
- (2) by their characteristic (*lakṣaṇa*),
- (3) by their sudden appearance (*utthāna*),
- (4) by their objects (*ālambana*),
- (5) by their connection (*samprayoga*),
- (6) by their synonyms (*paryāya*),
- (7) by their differences (*vipratipatti*),
- (8) with respect to their realms (*dhātu*),
- (9) by their groups (*nikāya*) and
- (10) by their abandonment (*prahāna*).

¹³⁰ That is, in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*), in the realm of form (*rūpadhātu*) and in the formless realm (*arūpyadhadhātu*).

¹³¹ That is, the pursuit of pleasure and satisfaction of all kinds.

¹³² Such as the desire for continuity of existence (*bhava*) or for annihilation (*vibhava*).

CAB.1.1.

ENUMERATION (PARISAMKHYĀNA)

(1) **What is their enumeration (parisamkhyāna)?** Six or ten defilements. What are the six defilements? Lust (*rāga*), aversion (*pratigha*), pride (*māna*), ignorance (*avidyā*), doubt (*vichikitsā*) and (wrong) view (*drṣṭi*). Their number is brought to ten by the fivefold division of view.¹³³

CAB.1.2.

CHARACTERISTICS (LAKṢĀNA)

(2) **What is their characteristic (lakṣāna)?** When a thing (*dharma*) arises with the characteristic of perturbation (*aprasāntalakṣāna*) and the appearance of it disturbs the body and mind, this is the characteristic of the defilements.

CAB.1.3.

SUDDEN APPEARANCE (UTTHĀNA)

(3) **What is their sudden appearance (utthāna)?** If the latent residue (*anuśaya*) of a defilement is not destroyed, when an object favorable to its sudden appearance is present, if deep attentiveness is absent in this situation, then a defilement appears suddenly. This is called the sudden appearance of defilements.

CAB.1.4.

OBJECT (ĀLAMBANA)

(4) **What is their object (ālambana)?** All defilements take as their object all the defilements and everything belonging to the defilements. Moreover, the other defilements of the realm of the sense pleasures, with the exception of ignorance wrong view and doubt, do not take the higher realms as object. The defilements of a higher realm do not take a lower realm as object due to the absence of desire for the lower realm. Some defilements take cessation (*nirodha*) and the path (*marga*) as objects as a result of lack of understanding of cessation and the path. Elaboration with regard to them is considered here as taking them as object.

Furthermore, the defilements are twofold: those that take nonmaterial objects (*avastukālambana*) and those that take material objects (*savastukālambana*). **Which are those that take nonmaterial objects?** These are the views (*drṣṭi*) and the mental qualities associated with them. All the others are considered as taking material objects.

CAB.1.5.

CONNECTION (SAMPRAYOGA)

(5) **What is their connection (samprayoga)?** Lust (*rāga*) is not connected with aversion (*pratigha*). As with aversion, it is not connected with doubt (*vichikitsā*), but is connected with the others. Aversion should be understood in the same way as lust. Aversion is not connected with lust, pride (*māna*) and wrong view (*drṣṭi*). Pride is not connected with aversion and doubt. Ignorance is twofold: ignorance connected with all

¹³³ Thus the ten defilements are: 1. lust (*rāga*), 2. aversion (*pratigha*), 3. pride (*māna*), 4. ignorance (*avidyā*), 5. doubt (*vichikitsā*), 6. the idea of self (*satkāyadrṣṭi*), 7. the idea of grasping onto the extremes (*antagrāhadrṣṭi*), 8. attachment to opinions (*drṣtiparāmarśa*), 9. attachment to rites and rituals (*śīlavrataparāmarśa*), 10. wrong view (*mithyādrṣṭi*). These ten defilements are numbers 19 to 28 in the list of saṃskāras. See above p.[]. For *pañcha drṣṭi* (five views) see also Kośa, chap. V, p. 15.

defilements and pure ignorance.¹³⁴ **What is pure ignorance?** It is ignorance with respect to the Truths. Wrong view (*drṣṭi*) is not connected with aversion and doubt. Doubt is not connected with lust, pride and wrong view.¹³⁵ The minor defilements (*upakleśa*)¹³⁶ such as anger are not connected one with another. Absence of respect for oneself (*āhrīkya*) and absence of respect for others (shamelessness, *anapatrāpya*) are connected everywhere with unwholesome things (*akuśala*). Inertia (*styāna*), excitement (*auddhatya*), absence of trust (*āśraddhya*), laziness (*kausīdya*), indolence (*pramāda*) are connected everywhere with what is defiled (*kliṣṭa*).

CAB.1.6.

SYONYMS (PARYĀYA)

(6) What are their synonyms (paryāya)? All the defilements have synonyms denoting different meanings and different circumstances:

- 1) fetter (*samyojana*),
- 2) bond (*bandhana*),
- 3) latent residue (*anuśaya*),
- 4) minor defilements (*upakleśa*),
- 5) wrapping (*paryavasthāna*),
- 6) flooding (*ogha*),
- 7) yoke (*yoga*),
- 8) grasping (*upādāna*),
- 9) bondage, knot (*grantha*),
- 10) hindrance (*nīvaraṇa*),

¹³⁴ Tib. ma dres pa, ‘unmixed’ (*āvenki*?).

¹³⁵ This phrase, which is found in the Tibetan and Chinese versions, is missing in Pradhan’s restoration.

¹³⁶ There are twenty: 1. anger (*krodha*), 2. grudge (*upanāha*), 3. hypocrisy (*mrakṣa*), 4. spite (*pradāśa*), 5. jealousy (*ñṛṣyā*), 6. avarice (*mātsarya*), 7. deception (*māyā*), 8. dissimulation, concealment (*sāṭhya*), 9. self-importance (*mada*), 10. violence (*vihimsā*), 11. absence of respect for oneself (*āhrīkya*), 12. absence of respect for others (*anapatrapya*), 13. inertia (*styāna*), 14. excitement (*auddhatya*), 15. absence of trust (*āśraddhya*), 16. laziness (*kausīdya*), 17. indolence (*pramāda*), 18. forgetfulness (*muśitasmr̥titā*), 19. lack of attentiveness (*asamprajanya*), 20. distraction (*vikṣepa*). These twenty minor defilements are numbers 29 to 48 in the list of *samskāras*.

See also Trimśikā, p. 29 and Kośa, Chap. V, p. 88.

Cf. the list of sixteen *upakkilesa*, M I, p. 36 – 1. *abhijjā-visamalobho*, 2. *byāpādo*, 3. *kodho*, 4. *upanāho*, 5. *makkho*, 6. *palāso*, 7. *issā*, 8. *macchariyam*, 9. *māyā*, 10. *sāṭheyyam*, 11. *thambho*, 12. *sārambho*, 13. *māno*, 14. *atimāno*, 15. *mado*, 16. *pamādo*.

The five hindrances (*pañcha nīvaraṇa*) are generally considered as *cittassa upakkilesā*, ‘minor defilements of the mind’. S V, pp. 92, 108, 115; Vbh, p. 256.

- 11) remainder, stump (*khila*),
- 12) stain (*mala*),
- 13) danger (*nigha*),
- 14) arrow (*salya*),
- 15) accessories (*kiñchana*, lit. some thing),
- 16) wrong deeds (*duścharita*),
- 17) outflow (impurity, *āsrava*),
- 18) distress (*vighāta*),
- 19) burn (*paridāha*), 20) tribulation (*upāyāsa*),¹³⁷
- 20) battle (*rāna*),
- 21) fever (*jvara*),
- 22) dense forest (*vanatha* or *gahana*)¹³⁸ and
- 23) obstruction (*vibandha*).

1) How many fetters (*saṃyojana*) are there? Why are they fetters? Where do they fetter?

There are nine fetters: the fetters of

- (i) attachment (*anunaya*),
- (ii) aversion (*pratigha*), (
- (iii) pride (*māna*),
- (iv) ignorance (*avidyā*),
- (v) views (*drṣṭi*),
- (vi) seizing (*parāmarśa*),
- (vii) scepticism (*vichikitsā*),
- (viii) jealousy (*īrṣyā*) and
- (ix) greed (*mātsarya*).¹³⁹

¹³⁷ This term is missing in Pradhan's restoration.

¹³⁸ Pradhan's restoration: *vanasa*.

¹³⁹ In the Pali texts (D. Saṅgīti-sutta; Vbh 377; A V, 17, etc.) there are ten *saṃyojanas*: 5 *orambhāgiyas*: (1) *sakkāyadiṭṭi*, (2) *vivikicchā*, (3) *sīlabbataparāmāsa*, (4) *kāmacchanda*, (5) *vyāpāda*; and 5 *uddhambhāgiya*: (6) *rūparāga*, (7) *arūparāga*, (8) *māna*, (9) *uddhacca*, (10) *avijjā*. But Vibh. p. 391 gives a list that is slightly different: (1)

- (i) **What is the fetter of attachment (*anunayasamyojana*)?** It is the desire (*chhanda*) for the three realms.¹⁴⁰ The person who is fettered by attachment has no revulsion for the three realms. As a result of absence of revulsion, he performs unwholesome (*akuśala*) actions and does not perform wholesome (*kuśala*) actions. Producing future suffering in this way, he is fettered by suffering.
- (ii) **What is the fetter of aversion (*pratighasamyojana*)?** It is ill-will towards beings, suffering and the conditions of suffering.¹⁴¹ The person who is fettered by aversion does not abandon the objects of aversion. Since he does not abandon them, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Producing future suffering in this way, he is fettered by suffering.
- (iii) **What is the fetter of pride (*māna-samyojana*)?** There are seven types of pride:

- [1] pride (*māna*),
- [2] super pride (*atimāna*),
- [3] supreme pride (*mānātimāna*),
- [4] pride of ‘I am’ (*asmimāna*),
- [5] superior pride (*abhimāna*),
- [6] inferior pride (*ūnamāna*) and
- [7] false pride (*mithyāmāna*).¹⁴²

- [1] **What is pride?** It is an elation of the mind of a person who thinks: ‘I am superior to my inferior, or, I am equal to my equal.’
- [2] **What is super pride?** It is an elation of the mind of a person who thinks: ‘I am superior to my equal, or, I am equal to my superior.’
- [3] **What is supreme pride?** It is an elation of the mind in a person who thinks: ‘I am superior to my superior.’

kāmarāga, (2) *patigha*, (3) *māna*, (4) *dīṭṭhi*, (5) *vicikicchā*, (6) *sīlabbataparāmāsa*, (7) *bhavaragā*, (8) *issā*, (9) *macchariya*, (10) *avijjā*.

¹⁴⁰ The realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*), the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) and the formless realm (*arūpyadhadhātu*).

¹⁴¹ This is the precise definition of *pratigha*.

¹⁴² See also Trimśika, p. 209.

The list of *sattamāna* is exactly the same in Vbh. P.383 except for the order. In the Vbh the order is: (1) *māno*, (2) *atimāno*, (3) *mānātimāno*, (4) *imāno* (Skt. *ūnamānah*), (5) *adhimāno* (Skt. *abhimānah*), (6) *asmimāno*, (7) *micchāmano* (skt. *mithyāmānah*).

/4/ What is the pride of ‘I am’? It is an elation of the mind that arises from the wrong belief in a self and in things belonging to a self in the five aggregates of attachment.

/5/ What is superior pride? It is an elation of the mind of a person who thinks of having attained special high spiritual states (*uttaraviśeṣādhigama*) when he has not attained them.

/6/ What is inferior pride? It is an elation of the mind of a person who thinks that he is only slightly inferior to a person who is very superior to him.

/7/ What is false pride? It is an elation of the mind in a person who thinks he is virtuous when he is not.

The person who is fettered by pride does not understand the self and what belongs to the self. Not understanding these, he grasps the idea of self and what belongs to the self, commits unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Producing future suffering in this way, he is fettered by suffering.

(iv) **What is the fetter of ignorance (*avidyā-samyojana*)?** It is ignorance in regard to the three realms. The person who is fettered by ignorance does not understand suffering and its origin. Not understanding, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

(v) **What is the fetter of views (*drṣṭi-samyojana*)?** There are three views: the idea of self (*satkāyadrṣṭi*), the idea of grasping the extremes (*antagrāhadṛṣṭi*) and wrong view (*mithyādrṣṭi*). The person who is fettered by views searches for and becomes attached to a false imaginary deliverance. Being attached to a false deliverance, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

(vi) **What is the fetter of seizing (*parāmarśa-samyojana*)?** It is attachment to views (*drṣṭiparāmarśa*) and attachment to observances and rituals (*śīlavrataparāmarśa*). The person who is fettered by seizing imagines and is attached to false means of deliverance. Being attached to false means of deliverance, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

(vii) **What is the fetter of scepticism (*vichikitsā-samyojana*)?** It is confusion with regard to the Truths. The person who is fettered by scepticism has doubts with regard to the Three Jewels (*ratnatraya*), the Buddha, the Dharma and the Sangha, and does not behave well towards the Three Jewels. Not behaving properly towards the Three Jewels, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

(viii) **What is the fetter of jealousy (*īrṣyā-samyojana*)?** It is an angry thought produced by intolerance for the well-being of others on the part of someone who desires honor and

gain. The person who is fettered by jealousy desires honor and gain and does not venerate the teaching (*dharma*). Respecting honor and gain, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

(ix) **What is the fetter of greed (*mātsarya-saṃyojana*)?** It is a firm mental attachment of the person who desires honor and gain. The person who is fettered by greed is attached to accumulating and does not respect the notion of abandoning. Being attached to accumulating, he performs unwholesome actions and does not perform wholesome actions. Thus, producing future suffering, he is fettered by suffering.

2) **Bondage (*bandhana*)** is threefold:

- (i) the bond of lust (*rāga*),
- (ii) the bond of hatred (*dveṣa*) and
- (iii) the bond of delusion (*moha*).

- (i) By the bond of lust, beings are bound to the suffering of change (*viparināmaduhkha*);
- (ii) by the bond of hatred, beings are bound to ordinary suffering (*duḥkhaduhkha*);
- (iii) by the bond of delusion, beings are bound to suffering produced by the conditioned state (*saṃskāraduhkha*).

Moreover, as a result of lust, hatred and delusion, there is no freedom in the practice of wholesome actions. This is why they are called ‘bonds’.

3) There are seven **latent residues (*anuśaya*)**: the latent residues of

- (i) lust for the sense pleasures (*kāmarāga*),
- (ii) aversion (*pratigha*),
- (iii) desire for existence and becoming (*bhavarāga*),
- (iv) pride (*māna*),
- (v) ignorance (*avidyā*),
- (vi) the views (*drṣti*) and
- (vii) scepticism (*vichikitsa*).

- (i) **What is the latent residue of lust for the sense pleasures (*kāmarāgānuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency (*dauṣṭhulya*) to lust for the sense pleasures.
- (ii) **What is the latent residue of aversion (*pratighānūśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward aversion.

- (iii) **What is the latent tendency of desire for existence and becoming (*bhāvarāgānuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward desire for the form realm and the formless realm.
- (iv) **What is the latent tendency of pride (*mānānuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward pride.
- (v) **What is the latent tendency of ignorance (*avidyānuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward ignorance.
- (vi) **What is the latent tendency of views (*drṣṭyanuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward wrong views.
- (vii) **What is the latent tendency of scepticism (*vichikitsānuśaya*)?** It is a latent tendency toward scepticism.

In the person who is not free of the pursuit of sense pleasure, the latent tendencies of lust for the sense pleasures and aversion remain underlying. In the person who is not free of the pursuit of existence and becoming, the residue of desire for existence and becoming remains underlying. In the person who is not free of the pursuit of the false holy life (*mithyābrahmacharya*), the latent residues of pride, ignorance, wrong views and scepticism remain underlying. These beings possess weak antidotes (*hīnapratipakṣa*), and having conceit (*mada*) and pride and, as well, delusion with respect to the Truths, they imagine false deliverance and the path leading to it and become confused and doubtful with regard to the teaching and to the Buddha's discipline (*dharmavinaya*).

4) As for the **minor defilements (*upaklesa*)**, those that are major defilements are also minor defilements; but the minor defilements are not major defilements. With the exception of the major defilements, the remainder of what is defiled are all the mental activities (*chaitasikadharma*) included in the aggregate of the formations. **What are they?** With the exception of the six defilements beginning with lust (*rāga*), the other impure mental activities beginning with anger (*krodha*) are included in the aggregate of formations. But lust (*rāga*), hatred (*dveṣa*) and delusion (*moha*), as mental activities, are also called minor defilements because the mind is defiled by them and there is neither detachment nor deliverance nor abandonment of the hindrances. That is why they are called minor defilements.¹⁴³ As the Blessed One has said: 'Lust, hatred and delusion have defiled, distracted and polluted your mind for a long time.'

5) There are eight **wrappings (*paryavasthāna*)**:

- (i) inertia (*styāna*),

¹⁴³ Thus, M I, p. 91 gives *lobha*, *dosa*, *moha* as *cittassa upakkilesā*. *Upakkilesā* is used as a synonym for *lobha* and *abhijjhākāyagantha* in their definition in Dhs, pp. 189, 201.

- (ii) drowsiness (*middha*),
- (iii) excitement (*auddhatya*),
- (iv) remorse (*kaukrtya*), (v) jealousy (*īrṣyā*),
- (v) greed (*mātsarya*),
- (vi) absence of respect for oneself (*āhrikyā*) and
- (vii) absence of respect for others (*anapatrāpya*).

They are called wrappings because they completely cover the mind, actively and ceaselessly. Furthermore, these wrappings cover the mind at the moment of acquisition of the sign (*udgraha-nimitta*)¹⁴⁴ during the development of concentration (*śamathabhāvanā*) and also at the time of practicing the pure virtuous holy life.

6) **Flooding (ogha)** is fourfold: the floodings of

- (i) the sense pleasures (*kāmaugha*),
- (ii) existence and becoming (*bhavaugha*),
- (iii) wrong views (*drṣtyogha*) and
- (iv) ignorance (*avidyaugha*).¹⁴⁵

Flooding, in a symbolic sense, denotes a current of water tumbling down a slope. (i) The first is reflecting upon the pursuit of sense pleasures. (ii) The second is reflecting upon the pursuit of existence and becoming. The last two, (iii) and (iv), are reflecting upon the pursuit of a false holy life. This is explained by the relationship of subject and object (*āśrayāśritasambandha*).

7) **Yoke (yoga)** is fourfold: the yokes of

- (i) the sense pleasures (*kāmayoga*),
- (ii) existence and becoming (*bhavayoga*),
- (iii) wrong views (*drṣtiyoga*) and
- (iv) ignorance (*avidyāyoga*).¹⁴⁶

Yoke denotes the obstruction of detachment since it is contrary to purification. Again, the yokes are reflecting upon the pursuits of the four things respectively as in the preceding case.

8) **Grasping (upādāna)** is fourfold, namely, the graspings of

¹⁴⁴ During *kasiṇa* meditation. See Vsm., p. 125.

¹⁴⁵ S IV, p. 257; V, 59, 292, 309, D III, p. 230 give the same list of four *oghas* in the same order.

¹⁴⁶ A II, p. 10; D III, p. 230; S V, 59 give the same list of four *yogas* in the same order.

- (i) the sense pleasures (*kāmopādāna*),
- (ii) wrong views (*drṣtyupādāna*),
- (iii) observances and rituals (*sīlavratopādāna*) and
- (iv) the theory of self (*ātmavādopādāna*).¹⁴⁷

Grasping should be understood as causing dispute and rebirth. **What is the result of grasping?** Because of the obstructive defilement of lust for the sense pleasures, lay people quarrel. The first grasping (i) is the root of this type of quarreling. Because of the obstructive defilement of attachment to wrong views, monastics argue. The last three graspings, (ii), (iii) and (iv), constitute the root of this type of dispute. The sixty-two types of wrong view constitute grasping of views. The grasping pf observances and rituals is the austere ascetic practice that follows the various observances and rituals. The grasping of the theory of self, (iv), is the notion of the self associated with this ascetic practice. Heretics dispute because of the grasping of wrong views and of observances and rituals, and although they do not dispute in regard to the theory of self (*ātmavāda*), nevertheless they dispute with adherents of the Dharma. Thus they are called graspings (*upadāna*) because they are attached to the cause of disputes and because they produce painful results in future births.

- 9) There are four **bonds or knots (grantha)**, namely, the physical knots (*kāyagrantha*) of
- (i) covetousness (*abhidhyā*),
 - (ii) enmity (*vyāpāda*),
 - (iii) attachment to observances and rituals (*sīlavrataparāmarśa*) and
 - (iv) dogmatic fanaticism (*idamśatyābhiniveśa*) (lit. passionate attachment to the idea ‘this is the only truth’).¹⁴⁸

Knots should be understood as the clenching of the body in a person whose mind is given over to concentration. **What is the result of the knots?** The mind is distracted in four ways: the mind is distracted as a result of (i) attachment to things such as wealth, (ii) evil conduct in regard to disputable things, (iii) the suffering produced by austere observances and rituals and (iv) decisions made with superficial attentiveness (*ayoniśo*) concerning knowable things.

- 10) There are five **hindrances (nīvaraṇa)**: the hindrances of
- (i) desire for the sense pleasures (*kāmacchanda*),
 - (ii) enmity (*vyāpāda*),
 - (iii) inertia and drowsiness (*styāna-middha*),

¹⁴⁷ The same list of the four upādāna in the same order: D II, p. 58; III, 230; M I, pp. 51, 66; S II, p. 3; V, P. 59

¹⁴⁸ S V, p. 59; D III, p. 230; Vsm, p. 683 give the same list in the same order..

- (iv) excitement and remorse (*auddhatya-kaukṛtya*) and
- (v) scepticism (*vichikitsā*).¹⁴⁹

Hindrance should be understood as darkness on the wholesome side (*kuśalapakṣa*), especially in regard to devotion to the religious life (*pravrajyābhirati*) in the case of an accusation concerning moral behavior (*pratipattichodanā*), during concentration (*śamatha*) at the time of acquisition of the image (*udgraha*), and in equipoise (*upekṣā*).

11) **Remainder, stump (*khila*)**, is three-fold: the stumps of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.¹⁵⁰

Natures that are furnished with lust, etc., are caused by previous habituation related to lust, hatred and delusion. They are called stumps because it is difficult for beings to uproot them due to lack of control over their minds, lack of pliancy in their minds and the difficulty of deliverance.

12) **Stain (*mala*)** is threefold: the stains of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.¹⁵¹

This is the wrong behavior caused by lust, hatred and delusion. Virtuous monks (*sabrahmachārī*), seeing another monk behaving in such a way in a village or in the forest, will say: “This venerable one commits such and such faults, behaves in such and such ways. He is a thorn in the village, he is carnal (*āmiṣa*) and impure.” This is why they are called stains.

13) There are three **dangers (*nigha*)**: the dangers of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

¹⁴⁹ D I, p. 246; M I, p. 60; A III, p. 63; Vbh, p. 199; Vsm, p. 146, etc., give the same list of the five *nīvaraṇas* in the same order.

¹⁵⁰ S V, p. 57 gives the same list of three *khilas*. But D III, pp. 237-238; M I, p. 101; A IV, 460 give a list of five *cetokhilas*: (1) doubt in regard to the Master (*satthā*), (2) the Dharma, (3) the Saṅgha, (4) the value of the precepts (*sikkhā*), (5) angry attitude of mind towards co-monastics (*sabrahmacārī*).

¹⁵¹ The same list of the three *malas*: Vbh, p. 368.

Lust, hatred and delusion are called dangers because as a result of them, beings suffer ceaseless torment in birth and death for a long period of time.

14) There are three **arrows** (*śalya*): the arrows of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.¹⁵²

Lust, hatred and illusion are called arrows because they cause attachment to existence and to the instruments of existence (*bhavopakarana*), because they maintain uninterrupted continuity, because they produce scepticism towards the Buddha, the Dharma and the Sangha, and the four Truths of suffering, its origin, its cessation and the path.

15) There are three accessories (*kiñcana*, lit., something): the accessories of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.¹⁵³

They are called accessories because in accumulating wealth due to lust, hatred and delusion, one experiences fear, ill-will and confusion through wanting more.

16) There are three **misdeeds** (*duścarita*): the misdeeds of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.¹⁵⁴

Lust, hatred and delusion are called misdeeds because as a result of them, one does wrong through body, speech and mind (*kāyavāñmanoduścharitāni*). Furthermore, they are defined in this way because lust, hatred and delusion are the unwholesome roots (*akuśalamūla*) of the misdeeds resulting from them. **How is that?** In the world, one does wrong because of mundane trifles; one does wrong by thinking of a wrong someone has done to oneself; one does wrong by being attached to false doctrines. Thus lust, hatred and delusion, the unwholesome roots, are called misdeeds.

17) There are three **outflows** (*āsrava, impurities*): the outflows

¹⁵² Vbh, p. 377, gives a list of five *salla* (*śalya*): *rāga, dosa, moha, māna, diṭṭhi*.

¹⁵³ The same list of three *kiñcana*: D III, p. 217; M I, p. 298; S IV, 297; Vbh, p. 368.

¹⁵⁴ In the Pali texts, the three misdeeds are usually enumerated as the misdeeds of body (*kāyaduccarita*), of speech (*vacīduccarita*) and of mind (*manoduccarita*). A I, pp. 114, 138; Vbh, p. 363, etc.

- (i) of the sense pleasures (*kāmāsrava*),
- (ii) of existence and becoming (*bhavāsrava*) and
- (iii) of ignorance (*avidyāsrava*).¹⁵⁵

They are called outflows because they cause the mind to be distracted and dispersed. **Why?** The outflow of the sense pleasures is due to outer distraction; the outflows of existence and becoming are due to inner distraction; the outflow of ignorance is due to both of these two distractions.

18) There are three **distresses** (*vighāta*):¹⁵⁶ the distresses of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

This is the pursuit of existence and becoming, and the pursuit of the material things necessary for existence (*pariṣkāra*) due to lust, hatred and delusion. They are called distresses because one is always afflicted by the suffering of poverty, etc.

19) There are three **burns** (*paridāha*):¹⁵⁷ the burns of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) illusion.

This is the passionate attachment to the major and minor characteristics (*lakṣaṇānuvyañjana*) of a person or an object caused by superficial mindfulness (*ayoniśo*) as a result of lust, hatred and illusion. They are called burns because they burn the body and mind by passionate attachment to the major and minor characteristics.

20) There are three **tribulations** (*upāyāsa*): the tribulations of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

¹⁵⁵ The list of the same three *āsavas* (Pāli, *āsava*) in M I, p. 55; A I, pp. 165, 196; II, 211; III. 93, 414; S IV, 256; V, 56, 189; Vbh. 364. But there is a list of four *āsavas* in Mahāparinibbāna-sutta, D II, pp. 81, 84, 91, 98, 123, 126: *kāmāsava*, *bhavāsava*, *dīṭṭhāsava*, *avijjāsava*.

¹⁵⁶ *Parilāha* (*paridāha*) is usually used in the Pāli texts as synonymous with *kilesa*, but there is no definite list of them.

¹⁵⁷ *Parilāha* (= *paridāha*) in the Pāli texts is usually used as synonymous with *kilesa*, but there is no definite list of the *vighāta*.

The tribulations are desire and attachment caused by lust, hatred and illusion. They are called tribulations because, when the situation changes, one is affected by grief, lamentation, suffering and sadness,

21) There are three **battles** (*rāya*): the battles of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

They are called battles because, as a result of lust, hatred and delusion, one fights with weapons and clubs and one creates all kinds of quarrels and conflicts.

22) There are three **fevers** (*jvara*): the fevers of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) idelusion.

They are called fevers because, due to lust, hatred and delusion, one is burned by the great heat of unjust lust (*adharmarāga*), excessive greed (*viśamalobha*) and false doctrines (*mithyādharma*).

23) There are three **dense forests** (*vanatha* or *gahana*): the dense forests of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

They are called dense forests because as a result of lust, hatred and delusion, beings are busy with activities that produce birth and death, and are born in different groups consisting of the five destinies in the continuity of existence.

24) There are three **obstructions** (*vibandha*): the obstructions of

- (i) lust,
- (ii) hatred and
- (iii) delusion.

As a result of lust, hatred and delusion, there is great envy in respect to body and wealth, lack of understanding, desire for arguments, satisfaction in having just a small amount of wholesomeness (*kuśala*). They are called obstructions because, as a result of them, one does not develop wholesome things.

In this way the synonyms of defilement are innumerable (*apramāṇa*).

CAB.1.7.

DEPRAVITIES (VIPRATIPATTI)

(7) **What are their depravities (vipratipatti)?**¹⁵⁸ Two defilements, lust (*rāga*) and aversion (*pratigha*), deprave the mind with regard to objects (*viṣaya*) and views (*dr̥ṣti*). Pride (*māna*) depraves the mind with regard to beings and views. The idea of a self (*satkāyadr̥ṣṭi*), the idea of grasping the extremes (*antagrāhadr̥ṣṭi*) and wrong view (*mithyādr̥ṣṭi*) deprave the mind with regard to the knowables (*jñeyā*). Attachment to views (*dr̥stiparāmarśa*) and attachment to rites and rituals (*śilavrataparāmarśa*) deprave the mind with regard to views. Doubt (*vichikitsā*) depraves the mind with regard to the antidotes (*pratipakṣa*). Ignorance (*avidyā*) depraves the mind everywhere. The ten defilements¹⁵⁹ deprave the mind with regard to the Truths of suffering and its origin because they are their close bases. Furthermore, the ten defilements deprave the mind with regard to cessation and the path because they cause fear with regard to them.

CAB.1.8.

REALMS (DHĀTU)

(8) **What are their realms (dhātu)?** Except for aversion (*pratigha*), all the other defilements are bound to the three realms. As for aversion, it is bound only to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*). Furthermore, lust (*rāga*) is associated with pleasure (*sukha*), happiness (*prīti*)¹⁶⁰ and equanimity (*upekṣā*) in the realm of the sense pleasures. As it is in the realm of the sense pleasures, so it is in the first and second concentrations (*dhyāna*). In the third concentration, it is associated with happiness and equanimity. Above that, it is associated only with equanimity.¹⁶¹ Aversion is associated with suffering (*duḥkha*), grief and equanimity. Pride (*māna*) is associated with joy and equanimity in the realm of the sense pleasures. In the first and second concentrations, it is associated with happiness, bliss and equanimity; in the third concentration, with happiness and equanimity; above, it is associated with equanimity only. As with pride, so with the concept of self (*satkāyadr̥ṣṭi*), the idea of grasping the extremes (*antagrāhadr̥ṣṭi*) and attachment to observances and rituals (*śilavrataparāmarśa*). Wrong view (*mithyādr̥ṣṭi*) is associated with grief, joy and equanimity in the realm of the sense pleasures. In the form realm and the formless realm, it is related with the feelings. Doubt (*vichikitsa*) is associated with sadness and equanimity in the realm of the sense pleasures, and is related according to the feelings in the form realm and the formless realm. Ignorance (*avidyā*) is twofold, related and pure. Since it is associated with all the defilements, associated

¹⁵⁸ *Vipratipatti* usually means bad behavior, sin, fault, misfortune, divergence, difference, opposition, contradiction, contrariety, incompatibility, erroneous perception, false objection, aversion, hostility, conflict, confusion, perplexity. But here the word expresses the notion of misleading, prejudicing, deforming, perverting and depraving the mind in such a way that it is unable to have a correct view of an object or an idea. For example, when the mind is deprived or deformed by *rāga* or *pratigha*, it is unable to understand correctly and objectively an object or an idea because then it is prejudiced or deformed either by attachment (*rāga*) or by aversion (*pratigha*) and consequently takes a perverted view.

¹⁵⁹ See above, p { }.

¹⁶⁰ Pradhan's restoration has *saumanasya*. But the word *prīti* is more appropriate because it is also connected with the *dhyānas* as the following phrases indicate. *Prīti* is a member of *dhyāna* whereas *saumanasya* is not..

¹⁶¹ That is to say, *rāga* is associated with *sukha*, *prīti* and *upekṣā* in the first and second *dhyāna*, with *sukha* and *upekṣā* in the third, and with *upekṣā* in the fourth.

ignorance is related according to the feelings. Pure ignorance is associated with grief and equanimity in the realm of the sense pleasures. In the higher realms, it is related according to the feelings. Why are all the defilements associated with equanimity? Because all the defilements are in decline as a result of their apathy. Moreover, lust (*rāga*) in the realm of the sense pleasures belongs to the group of six consciousnesses.¹⁶² As with lust, so also with aversion and ignorance. Lust in the form realm belongs to four groups of consciousnesses,¹⁶³ and in the formless realm it belongs to the group of the mental consciousness. As with lust, so with ignorance. Pride, wrong view and doubt are everywhere linked to the group of mental consciousness. Moreover, lust, aversion and pride in the realm of the sense pleasures are active only with certain objects. Just as in the realm of the sense pleasures, so also in the form realm and the formless realm the other defilements are active everywhere with all objects.

CAB.1.9.

GROUPINGS (NIKĀYA)

(9) What are their groupings (nikāya)? There are two groups of defilements:

- (a) the group that should be abandoned by inner seeing (*darśanaprahātavyanikāya*) and
 - (b) the group that should be abandoned by meditation (*bhāvanāprahātavyanikāya*).
- (a) The group that should be abandoned by inner seeing is again fourfold:
- (i) the group that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of suffering,
 - (ii) the group that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of the origin of suffering,
 - (iii) the group that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of cessation and
 - (iv) the group that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of the path.

In the realm of the sense pleasures, the ten defilements¹⁶⁴ should be abandoned by the inner seeing of suffering. Just as for those that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of suffering, the same for those that should be abandoned by the inner seeing of the origin of suffering, the inner seeing of cessation and the inner seeing of the path. In the form realm, those that should be abandoned separately by the four inner seeings of sufferings, etc., are the nine defilements, with the exception of aversion. Just as in the form realm, so it is in the formless realm. Thus the groups of defilements that must be abandoned by inner seeing are one hundred and twelve in number.¹⁶⁵

¹⁶² Visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory, tactile and mental consciousnesses.

¹⁶³ Visual, auditory, tactile and mental. See Kośa, chap. VIII, p. 163.

¹⁶⁴ See above, p. [].

¹⁶⁵ In the realm of the sense pleasures:

to be abandoned by the insight of suffering	10 defilements
---	----------------

“	“	origin	10	“
---	---	--------	----	---

“	“	cessation	10	“
---	---	-----------	----	---

(b) In the realm of the sense pleasures, six defilements should be abandoned by meditation:

1. the innate concept of a self (*sahajā satkāyadr̥ṣṭi*),
2. the concept of grasping the extremes (*antagrāhadr̥ṣṭi*),
3. lust (*rāga*),
4. aversion (*pratigha*),
5. pride (*māna*) and
6. ignorance (*avidyā*).

In the form realm, except for aversion, the other five defilements are to be abandoned by meditation. As with the form realm, so for the formless realm. Thus the groups of defilements that are to be abandoned by meditation are sixteen in number.¹⁶⁶

CAB.1.10.

ABANDONMENT (PRAHĀÑA)

(10) What is their abandoning (*prahāñba*)? It is the abandonment

- (i) by analysis,
- (ii) by attention and
- (iii) by acquisition

“	“	path	10	“
---	---	------	----	---

In the realm of form

to be abandoned by the insight of suffering	9	“
“	“	origin
“	“	cessation
“	“	path

In the formless real

to be abandoned by the insight of suffering	9	defilements	“
“	“	origin	9
“	“	cessation	9
“	“	path	9
Total			112

¹⁶⁶ *śaṣṭih* (sixty) in Pradhan's restoration must be a mistake. The defilements to be abandoned by meditation in the *kāmadhātu* 6

“	<i>rūpadhātu</i>	5
“	<i>arūpyadhātu</i>	5
Total		16

- (i) **What is abandonment by analysis?** It is the abandonment
 - (a) by complete knowledge (*parijñāna*),
 - (b) by means of separation (*visamyoga*) and
 - (c) by acquiring the antidotes (*pratipakṣalābha*).
- (a) **What is complete knowledge?** It is the complete knowledge of things that constitute the cause (*nidāna*), the complete knowledge of the self-nature of things and the complete knowledge of their bad consequences (*ādīnava*).
- (b) **What is separation?** It is the fact of not grasping at whatever presents itself at the moment.
- (c) **What is acquiring the antidotes?** It is the path of acquiring the antidotes by means of which one does not allow the evil that has not yet arisen to arise (*anutpannasya anutpāda*), or one abandons the evil that has already arisen (*utpannasya prahāna*).
- (ii) **What is abandonment by attention?** By the attention that takes all objects in general, one sees everything as having no self. Understanding their impermanence, one abandons the defilements by developing the concept of impermanence, etc.
- (iii) **What is abandonment by acquisition?** There is no acquisition of the past, because it has ceased; nor of the future, because it has not yet arisen; nor of the present, because it is coexistent. Abandonment is simply rejecting the acquisition of the disturbance (*dauṣṭhulya*) caused by the defilements. As disturbance by the defilements appears, the antidotes appear; as the antidotes appear, the disturbance simultaneously disappears in the same way as, in the world, shadows disappear when the light appears. This is disjunction. When future defilements remain among what has not arisen, this is called abandonment.¹⁶⁷

CAB.2.

ACTIONS DOMINATED BY THE DEFILEMENTS (KLEŚĀDHIPATEYAKARMA)

What is action dominated by the defilements (*kleśādhipateyakarma*)?

- 1) The action of volition (*cetanākarma*) and
- 2) the action carried out after having willed it (*cetayitvā karma*).¹⁶⁸

All of this has the characteristic of action.

Furthermore, action is fivefold:

- (i) the act of perception or reception (*upalabdhikarma*),¹⁶⁹

¹⁶⁷ Cf. Vsm, p. 50. *Ettha ca pahānanti koci dhammo nāma natthi aññatra vuttappakārnam pāṇātipātādīnam anuppādamattato.* ‘Here there is nothing called abandonment except for the simple non-occurrence of the destruction of life, etc., as has been explained.’

¹⁶⁸ Cf. the Pali term *sañcetanika-kamma*, M III, p. 209; A V, pp. 292, 294, 297, 299. See also Kośa, chap. IV, p. 1.

- (ii) the act of implementation (*kāritrakarma*),¹⁷⁰
- (iii) the act of intention (*vyavasāyakarma*),¹⁷¹
- (iv) the act of transformation (*parinatikarma*).¹⁷² and
- (v) the act of acquiring (*prāptikarma*).¹⁷³

In this context, what is generally understood is the act of intention (*vyavasāyakarma*).

CAB.2.1.

2 TYPES OF ACTION

1) What is the action of volition (volitional action, *cetanākarma*)? It is

- (i) meritorious action (*pūṇyakarma*),
- (ii) demeritorious action (*apūṇyakarma*) and
- (iii) unchanging action (*āniñjyakarma*).¹⁷⁴

2) What is action carried out after one has willed it (*cetayitvā karma*)? It is

- (i) physical (*kāyakarma*),
- (ii) vocal (*vākkarma*) and
- (iii) mental (*manaskarma*) action.

These three actions, physical, vocal and mental, are wholesome (*kuśala*), and unwholesome (*akuśala*).

CAB.2.2.

10 TYPES OF BAD OR GOOD ACTION

What is unwholesome (*akuśala*)? There are ten kinds of unwholesome actions:

- (i) destruction of life (*prāṇātipāta*),¹⁷⁵
- (ii) theft (*adattādāna*, lit., taking what is not given),

¹⁶⁹ This is the action of the sense faculties like perception or the reception by the eye of an external object such as a visible form.

¹⁷⁰ Such as support (*ādhāra*, *āśraya*). The function of earth is to support the objects that are on it. The function of matter (*rūpa*) is to obstruct (*rundhati*) space.

¹⁷¹ This is the volitional activity of the mind, of the speech and of the body.

¹⁷² Of activities such as making a gold ornament by a goldsmith.

¹⁷³ This refers to such things as comprehension (*sāksātkarma*) of *nirvāṇa* by means of the eightfold noble path.

¹⁷⁴ These are the *dhyānas*.

¹⁷⁵ de La Vallée Poussin's translation of the word *prāṇātipāta* as 'murder' (Kośa, chap. IV, pp. 46, 153, 163, 186, 188, etc.) is not correct. The term signifies the destruction of no matter what kind of living being, even an insect, and murder is included therein. But murder in particular, which is one of the four pārājikas for a bhikṣu, is expressed, not by the word *prāṇātipāta*, but by the phrase, *manussaviggham jīvitā voropeyya*, 'to deprive a human being of life'.

- (iii) lust (*kāmamithyācāra*, lit., illegitimate sexual relations),
- (iv) lying (*mr̄ṣāvāda*),
- (v) slandermongering (*piśunavāk* or *paiśunya*),
- (vi) coarse language (*paruṣavāk*),
- (vii) idle gossip (*sambhinnapralāpa*),
- (viii) excessive greed (*abhidhyā*),
- (ix) enmity (*vyāpāda*) and
- (x) wrong view (*mīthyādrṣṭi*).¹⁷⁶

What is wholesome (*kuśala*)? There are ten kinds of wholesome actions:

- (i) abstention (*virati*) from destruction of life,
- (ii) abstention from theft,
- (iii) abstention from adultery,
- (iv) abstention from lying,
- (v) abstention from slandermongering,
- (vi) abstention from coarse language,
- (vii) abstention from idle gossip,
- (viii) absence of excessive greed (*anabhidhyā*),¹⁷⁷
- (ix) absence of enmity (*avyāpāda*),
- (x) right view (*samyakdrṣṭi*).

Furthermore, destruction of life, etc., has five conditions:

- i) object (*vastu*),¹⁷⁸
- ii) intention (*āśaya*),¹⁷⁹

¹⁷⁶ The same list of the ten unwholesome and wholesome deeds in the Pali texts. Cf. M. III, p. 45, *Sevitabba-asevitabba-sutta* (no. 114); A V, p. 264; Vsm, p. 684.

¹⁷⁷ Note the word ‘abstention’ (*virati*) in reference to the first seven unwholesome actions beginning with taking life (*prāṇātipāta*), and this *virati* is included in *śīla* (discipline) which controls physical and verbal actions only. But the last three, beginning with *anabhidhyā* are mental qualities where it is not a case of abstention (*virati*), but absence of excessive greed, etc.

¹⁷⁸ I. e., *prāṇa*, a living being.

¹⁷⁹ I.e., *vadhakacitta*, violent mind, the intention to kill.

- iii) application (*prayoga*),¹⁸⁰
- iv) defilement (*kleśa*)¹⁸¹ and
- v) accomplishment (*nīṣṭhāgamana*).¹⁸²

The sūtra mentions volitional action (*cetanākarma*).

What are the volitional actions? They are:

- (i) volitional action brought about by the command of another,
- (ii) volitional action brought about by the suggestion of another,
- (iii) volitional action carried out without understanding good and evil,
- (iv) volitional action carried out under the influence of evil roots¹⁸³ and
- (v) volitional action brought about by wrong views (*viparyāsa*).¹⁸⁴

Of these five, if either (iv) or (v), i.e., under the influence of evil roots or by wrong views, is committed or acquired, its result will necessarily be experienced. ‘Committed’ means produced by behavior; ‘acquired’ means gathered together by the traces (*vasanā*).

CAB.2.3.

3 TYPES OF DETERMINATE ACTIONS

The actions the results of which are determinate are mentioned in the sūtra.

What are these determinate actions?

- (i) Determination of an act by an action,¹⁸⁵

¹⁸⁰ I.e., the act itself of killing.

¹⁸¹ *Rāga, dveśa, moha*, either together or separately, at the moment of killing.

¹⁸² I.e., the achievement of the act of killing. These five conditions must be fulfilled before an unwholesome action is complete. If one of these five conditions is absent, the unwholesome action will not be complete. For example, let us take the last condition *nīṣṭhāgamana*, ‘accomplishment’, in reference to the unwholesome action of killing. If a person shoots at an animal with the intention of killing it but misses, and as a result the animal escapes, certainly that person commits an unwholesome mental action by producing evil thoughts such as desire, hatred, etc. But the unwholesome action of killing the animal is not complete because there is no *nīṣṭhāgamana*, accomplishment of the action, even though all four other conditions are fulfilled. Let us take the first condition, *vastu*, ‘object’, i.e., living being. If a person shoots a rock in the dark thinking it is an animal and hits the target, the unwholesome action of killing is not complete because the *vastu* (object, a living being) is not there, but that person commits an unwholesome mental action by producing evil thoughts. Let us take *āśaya*, ‘intention’. If a person treads underfoot an insect without being aware of it, without intention, and kills it, there is the action of killing, but it is not an unwholesome action because there was no intention (*āśaya*), and consequently no other defilements. This is also the case with the other conditions.

¹⁸³ Namely, *lobha, dveśa, moha*, which are the roots of evil (*akuśalamūla*).

¹⁸⁴ Of these five kinds of action, the first three are weak and the last two are strong.

- (ii) determination by experiencing the results¹⁸⁶ and
- (iii) determination by circumstances.¹⁸⁷

CAB.2.4.

3 TYPES OF RESULTS OF THE 10 TYPES OF BAD OR GOOD ACTIONS

- 1) The **results of the ripening** (*vipākaphala*) of the ten types of unwholesome actions are produced in the three unfortunate destinies (*durgati*). the results of weak, middle and strong are produced in the animal realm (*tiryak*), the hungry ghost realm (*preta*) and the hell realm (*naraka*) respectively.
- 2) Their **secondary results** (*nisyandaphala*), separately and accordingly, are the dangers that threaten the individual who is born as a human and his property.
- 3) Their **predominant results** (*adhipatiphala*), separately and accordingly, are the dangers that threaten outer things.¹⁸⁸

The sūtra says:

- 1) The results of the ripening (*vipākaphala*) of the ten kinds of wholesome actions are produced amongst those who are born as gods or as humans in the realms of the gods or of humans.
- 2) Their secondary results (*nisyandaphala*), separately and in conformity, are the increase of well-being of the individual and the things belonging to him in these spheres.
- 3) Their predominant results (*adhipatiphala*), separately and in conformity, are the increase of outer things in these spheres.

CAB.2.4.1.

PROJECTING AND COMPLETING ACTION

The results of wholesome and unwholesome actions are produced in the good and bad destinies (*sugati*, *durgati*) and, as well, by (i) projecting action (*ākṣepa-karma*) and (ii) completing action (*paripūraka-karma*).¹⁸⁹

- i) **What is projecting action?** It is the action by means of which the result of ripening is produced.

¹⁸⁵ I.e., a certain act in this lifetime becomes necessary or inevitable as a result of a previous action (*karma*).

¹⁸⁶ This refers to numbers (iv) and (v) in the preceding paragraph.

¹⁸⁷ There are three circumstances in which an action can produce its results: 1. during this actual lifetime (*drśṭadharmavedanīyakarma*), 2. during the immediately following lifetime (*upapadyavedanīyakarma*), 3. later in following lives (*aparaparyāyavedanīyakarma*).

¹⁸⁸ For details concerning the results produced separately and accordingly, see *Cullakkammavibhaṅga-sutta* (no. 135) in M. Also see Kośa, chap. IV, 186.

¹⁸⁹ *Ākṣepaka-karma* corresponds to *janaka-kamma* in the Pāli Abhidhamma. It is the karma that produces rebirth. This karma helps to develop the conditions in a given situation. If an individual is born into a well-off family, that is the result of an *ākṣepa-karma* (or *janaka-kamma*). The simple fact of being born into such a family does not mean that he acquires all the benefits of this fortunate situation. It is the *paripūraka-karma* (or *upatthambhaka-kamma*) that helps him to get the best part of it.

- ii) **What is completing action?** It is the action by means of which, after having been born, one experiences good and bad results.

One action can project one lifetime (*ātmabhāva*), or several actions can project a lifetime, or several actions can project several lifetimes.

CAB.2.4.2.

THE ORDER OF THE RESULTS OF MATURATION

A being is accompanied by many actions. In this case, what is the order of results of maturation?

- i) First to produce its results is the most serious action;¹⁹⁰
- ii) next, the action that appears at the moment of death;¹⁹¹
- iii) then, that which was habitually done previously;¹⁹²
- iv) finally, that which was done earlier in a past lifetime.¹⁹³

CAB.2.5.

3 TYPES OF ACTION: MERITORIOUS, DEMERITORIOUS, UNCHANGING

The sūtra says: ‘Action is threefold:

- (i) meritorious action (*punya-karma*),
- (ii) demeritorious action (*apunya-karma*) and
- (iii) unchanging action (*āniñjyakarma*).

(i) What is meritorious action? It is wholesome action (*kuśala-karma*) associated with the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmapratisamyukta*).

(ii) What is demeritorious action? It is unwholesome action (*akuśala-karma*).

(iii) What is unchanging action? It is wholesome action associated with the form realm and the formless realm (*rūpārūpyapratisamayukta*).

The sūtra says: ‘Meritorious, demeritorious and unchanging (*punya*, *apunya*, *āniñjya*) actions are the formations (*saṃskāra*) conditioned by ignorance (*avidyā*).’

¹⁹⁰ Pradhan’s restoration: *audārika-karma*. But very probably *guru-karma*. Cf. Kośa, IX, 297. In Pali also it is *garu-* or *garuka-kamma*.

¹⁹¹ *Āsanna-* or *maraṇāsanna-kamma* in Pali.

¹⁹² In Pali *ācinnaka-* or *bahula-kamma*.

¹⁹³ This refers to *kaṭakka-kamma* in Pali. These four actions produce their results in this order. Serious action has priority over the others. If there is no serious action, then an action which presents itself to the mind at the moment of death produces its results. If no particular action presents itself to the mind at the moment of death, then the action most frequently done produces its results. If none of these three actions has the opportunity of bearing results, then an action done in a past lifetime will produce its results. See Kośa, IX, 297.

Why are meritorious and unchanging actions called formations conditioned by ignorance? Ignorance is twofold:

- (i) ignorance of results (*vipāka-avidyā*) and
 - (ii) ignorance of reality (*tattvārtha-avidyā*).
- (i) Ignorance of results produces the demeritorious formations (*apuṇya-samskāra*).
- (ii) Ignorance of reality produces the meritorious and unchanging formations (*punya-āniñjya-samskāra*).¹⁹⁴
- The preparation for the act of killing is carried out by greed, hatred and ignorance,¹⁹⁵ but its accomplishment only by hatred. It is the same for the act of speaking with coarse language (*paruśavāk*) and for enmity (*vyāpāda*) as for killing.

¹⁹⁴ This refers to the well-known expression *avidyāpratyayāḥ saṃskārāḥ* ‘the formations are conditioned by ignorance’, and to many passages in the sūtras. *Punyābhisaṃskāra*, *apunyābhisaṃskāra* and *āniñjyābhisaṃskāra* constitute *karmabhava* (existence by karma or action). The Vbh (PTS), p.137 explains *kammabhava*: *Tattha kamato kammabhave?* *Puññābhisaṃkhāro apuññābhisaṃkhāro āneñjābhisaṃkhāro. Ayam vuccatikammabhave. Sabbam pi bhavagāmi kammaṇi kammabhave.* Thus all action (*karma*), whether good or bad, helps in the continuation of existence and becoming (*bhava*). And all *punya*-, *apunyā-āniñjya-samskāra* that contribute to the continuity of the cycle of existence, are conditioned by ignorance, as explained in the S (PTS) II, pp. 81-82: *Avijjāgato ‘yam bhikkhave prisapuggalo puññām ce samkhāram abhisamkharoti puññūpagamhoti viññānam apuññām ce samkhāram.....āneñjam ce samkhāram abhisamkharoti āneñjūpagam hoti viññānam*. This construction, the accumulation of good as well as bad, is *samskāra* due to ignorance, to the nescience of reality. When one is free of ignorance and one sees reality, one does not acquire *punya*, *apunyā* or *āniñjyasamōkāra*, as is explained in the S II, p. 82: *Yato kho bhikkhave bhikkhuno avijjā pahīnā hoti vijjā uppannā, so avijjāvirāgā vijuppādā neva puññābhisaṃkhāram.....na apuññābhisaṃkhāram.....na āneñjābhisaṃkhāram abhisamkharoti.* An arhat who is free of ignorance (*avidyā*) and has obtained the knowledge of reality (*vidyā*) is beyond duality, beyond good and evil, and does not acquire any karma, even good karma. Thus the Dhp in referring to such a person says: *puññapāpapahīnassa* ‘to him who has eliminated merit and demerit’ (III, 7 or verse 39); *yo’ dha puññān ca pāpañ ca bāhetvā* ‘he who has abandoned merit and demerit’ (XIX, 12 or verse 267); *yo’ dha puññān ca pāpañ ca ubho saṅgamupaccagā* ‘he who has gone beyond the two bonds of merit and demerit’ (XXVI, 30 or verse 412). When an arhat does a good act or attains a *dhyāna*, this is only a pure action (*kriyā*), not a karma which produces rebirth or continuation of existence, because he is free of the false idea of a self and of the desire for continuity and for becoming.

Here in our text, two forms of ignorance are distinguished: ignorance of results (*vipāka-avidyā*) which produces *apunyā* ‘demerit’, and ignorance of reality (*tattvārtha-avidyā*) which produces *punya* and *āniñjya* ‘merit’ and ‘unchanging’. When one is ignorant, ignoring in the moral sense the results of good and bad actions, one is liable to commit bad actions. But when one has the knowledge of good and evil, also in the moral sense, one tries not to commit *apunyā*, but one tries to acquire *punya* and *āniñjya*. Nonetheless, all of this is situated on the moral level of existence and becoming (*bhava*) and here there is still the sense of duality, of good and evil. But when one is free of ignorance and one obtains the knowledge of reality, that is, when one becomes an arhat, one goes beyond duality, beyond good and bad, as we have already seen above in the citations from Dhp.

¹⁹⁵ For example, the act of killing animals for their meat, hides, etc., is provoked by greed; the act of killing an enemy is provoked by hatred; the act of killing animals for sacrifice, by ignorance.

- The preparation for the act of stealing is done by greed, hatred and ignorance, but its accomplishment only by greed. It is the same for adultery and excessive greed as it is for greed.
- The preparation for the act of lying is done by greed, hatred and ignorance, its accomplishment by any one of the three. It is the same for idle gossip (*sambhinnapralāpa*) and slander (*piśunavāk*) as it is for lying.
- The preparation for holding wrong views is carried out by lust (*rāga*), hatred and ignorance, but its accomplishment only by ignorance.

CAB.2.6.

4 TYPES OF ACTION: COMMON, NON-COMMON, STRONG, WEAK

The sūtra mentions

- (i) common action (*sādhāraṇakarma*),
- (ii) non-common action (*asādhāraṇakarma*),
- (iii) strong action (*balavatkarma*) and
- (iv) weak action (*durbalakarma*).

(i) What is common action (*sādhāraṇakarma*)? It is action that produces the various transformations in the world receptacle (inanimate world, *bhājanaloka*).¹⁹⁶

(ii) What is non-common action? It is action that produces transformations in the world of beings (animate world, *sattvaloka*), and also the actions of the beings that mutually control them. It is in reference to the force of this action that the dominant reciprocal condition (*anyonyādhipatipratyaya*) of beings is spoken of. Because of this reciprocal force that dominates beings, this action is also called common action. Therefore the sūtra says: ‘It is like the mutual view among beings in relation to one another. The negation of mutual experience is not permitted.’¹⁹⁷

(iii) What is strong action (*balavatkarma*)? It is unwholesome volitional action in a person whose antidotal qualities (*pratipakṣa*) are strong. An action that should produce results in hell produces results only in the present lifetime (*dṛṣṭadharmavedanīya*) as a result of obstruction by means of the power of antidotal qualities (*pratipakṣabalaviśkambhaṇa*); an action that should produce results in the present lifetime produces none at all. This action is designated as strong as a result of the power of the antidotal qualities. All wholesome volitional actions are designated as strong as a result of the power of the antidotal qualities. Referring to this type of action, the Blessed One said: ‘My noble disciples

¹⁹⁶ This refers to actions of nature such as the changes in the seasons in the world.

¹⁹⁷ *Sādhāraṇakarma* is the action of nature that produces things such as the transformations of the seasons which all the world experiences in common. This does not exist on the volitional level. *Asādhāraṇakarma* is the volitional activity of an individual the results of which are experienced only by this individual and not by others in common. But with regard to individuals, there is also a kind of *sādhāraṇakarma* which is the mutual relationship among the individuals that mutually influences them (*anyonyādhipatipratyaya*).

develop a wholesome mind for unlimited vast actions (*apramāṇavaipulya*); but in regard to constructed and limited actions (*abhisamṣkṛta sapramāṇa*), they do not reject them nor do they retain them, nor do they fall into the category of fabricated and limited actions.¹⁹⁸ Unwholesome volitional action in a person whose antidotal qualities are weak is also designated as strong.

Futhermore, a volitional action destined to produce results, or one that has not been destroyed, or that is unknown, is also called strong. With that in mind, it is said: All wholesome and unwholesome actions that are destined to producre results and that have not been destroyed by the noble path (*āryamārga*) are designated as strong actions. An unwholesome action associated with the realm of the sense pleasures, an action habitually performed in the past, an action performed opportunely,¹⁹⁸ an action irreversible (*asādhya*)¹⁹⁹ because of its incompatibility with final extinction (*aparinirvāṇadharma*)²⁰⁰ – all of these actions are strong by nature. A strong action should also be considered in respect to its domain (*kṣetra*, field) and to the mind's determination.²⁰¹

Furthermore, a strong action should be understood according to nine reasons:

- (i) its domain (*kṣetra*, field),²⁰²
- (ii) its object (*vastu*),²⁰³
- (iii) its self-nature (*svabhāva*),²⁰⁴
- (iv) its base (*āśraya*),²⁰⁵
- (v) attentiveness (*manasikāra*),²⁰⁶
- (vi) its intention (*āśaya*),²⁰⁷
- (vii) its assistance (*sahāya*),²⁰⁸

¹⁹⁸ Opportunely: an action performed during youth is considered stronger than an action performed during childhood or old age. Or an action performed during the state of good health is stronger than an action performed during a state of ill health.

¹⁹⁹ I.e., an action that cannot be countered by an antidote.

²⁰⁰ This refers to the *icchantikas*. Cf. Gokhale, Abhisam , p. 30 or Pradhan, p. 35.

aparinirvāṇadharma *kāṇām icchantikāṇām*.

²⁰¹ Here determination refers to a decision such as the determination to become buddha – *abhisambidhiprāṇidhāna*.

²⁰² I.e., *punya* *kṣetra*, for example, the Sangha because of their great and noble virtues.

²⁰³ I.e., *dānavastu*, things given, the quality and quantity of things given.

²⁰⁴ For example, *śīla* by its self-nature is stronger than *dāna*, and *bhāvanā* is stronger than *śīla*.

²⁰⁵ I.e., the person accomplishing the action. Wholesome action in a person who is morally pure is stronger than that in an impure person.

²⁰⁶ I.e., profound attentiveness, concentration accompanied by devotion to the thing accomplished.

²⁰⁷ I. e., aspiration for *nirvāṇatam*

- (viii) its frequent practice (*bahulikāra*),
- (ix) its connection to many people (*bāhujanya*).²⁰⁹

(iv) Weak action (*durbalakarma*) [should be understood] in the opposite sense.

CAB.2.7.

RETRIBUTION VS. THE POSSIBILITY OF THE RELIGIOUS LIFE AND NIRVĀNA

The Blessed One has said: ‘If someone says: “In the way that a person commits and accumulates actions (*karma*), in that same way he experiences the retribution (*vipāka*)”, then there is no holy life (*brahmacaryavāsa*) and no possibility of completely destroying and putting an end to suffering. But if it is said: “In the way that a person commits and accumulates actions of which the results must be experienced, in that same way will he experience their appropriate results”, then there is a holy life and the possibility to destroy completely and put an end to suffering.’²¹⁰

What is the meaning of these words in the sūtra?

Here the Buddha’s intention is to refute wrong notions such as: ‘Only wholesome results come from a wholesome action; only unwholesome results come from an unwholesome action; only results that are neither wholesome nor unwholesome come from an action that is neither wholesome nor unwholesome.’

The correct idea may be expressed thus:

- 1) With regard to a wholesome action: that which must produce a wholesome sensation, the wholesome results are recognized; that which must produce an unwholesome sensation, the unwholesome results are recognized; that which must produce a sensation that is neither wholesome nor unwholesome, the results that are neither wholesome nor unwholesome are recognized.
- 2) With regard to an unwholesome action: that which must produce a wholesome sensation, the wholesome results are recognized; that which must produce an unwholesome sensation, the unwholesome results are recognized; that which must produce a sensation that is neither wholesome nor unwholesome, the results that are neither wholesome nor unwholesome are recognized.
- 3) With regard to an action that is neither wholesome nor unwholesome: that which must produce a sensation that is wholesome, the wholesome results are recognized; that which must produce an unwholesome sensation, the unwholesome results are recognized; that which must produce sensations

²⁰⁸ I.e., a wholesome action carried out by mutual aid.

²⁰⁹ I.e., the well-being of many. Cf. the expression well-known in the sūtras: *bahujanahitāya bahujanasukhāya*, ‘for the well-being of many, the happiness of many’.

²¹⁰ This quotation is from A I, pp. 249, 253. *Yo kho bhikkhave evam vadeyya*: ‘Yathā yathā’yam purisokammam karoti tathā tathā paṭisaṁvediyatīti’, evam santam bhikkhave brahmacariyavāso na hoti okāso na paññāyati sammā dukkhassa antakiriyāya. *Yo ca kho bhikkhave evam vadeyya*: ‘Yathā vedaniyam ayam puriso kammaṇi karoti tathā tathā’ssa vipākam paṭisaṁvedayatīti’, evam santam bhikkhave barnacariyavāso hoyi okāso paññāyati sammā dukkhassa antakiriyāya.

that are neither wholesome nor unwholesome, the results that are neither wholesome nor unwholesome are recognized.

This is the meaning of these words in the sūtra.

CAB.2.8.

3 TYPES OF ACTION: DISCIPLINED, UNDISCIPLINED, NEITHER-DISCIPLINED-NOR UNDISCIPLINED

Furthermore, the division of action (*karmaprabedha*) is threefold:

- 1) disciplined action (*samvarakarma*),
- 2) undisciplined action (*asamvarakarma*) and
- 3) action that is neither disciplined nor undisciplined (*naivasamvaranāsamvarakarma*).

CAB.2.8.1.

DISCIPLINED ACTION: 3 TYPES

What is disciplined action (*samvarakarma*)? It is action contained

- 1) in the Code of Discipline (*pratimokṣa-samvara*),
- 2) in the discipline of meditation (*dhyānasamvara*) and
- 3) in the discipline of the pure supramundane state (*anāsravasamvara*).

CAB.2.8.1.a.

THE CODE OF DISCIPLINE

What is the action (*karma*) included in the discipline according to the Code of Discipline (*pratimokṣa*)? These are the seven disciplines of those who have joined the Community (Saṅgha).²¹¹ Furthermore, there are eight kinds of disciplines:

- (1) the discipline of the monk (*bhikṣusamvara*),
- (2) the discipline of the nun (*bhikṣuṇīsamvara*),
- (3) the discipline of those in training (*śikṣamāṇasamvara*),
- (4) the discipline of the novice (*śramaṇerasamvara*),
- (5) the discipline of the novice nun (*śrāmaṇerīsamvara*)
- (6) the discipline of the male lay disciple (*upāsakāsamvara*),
- (7) the discipline of the female lay disciple (*upāsikāsamvara*)

²¹¹ The Tibetan version gives eight disciplines, which is probably an error of confusion with the eight disciplines which follow. But these eight disciplines have no connection with the *Prātimokṣa* (Pali, *Pātimokha*) which has only seven kinds of disciplines or restrictions: 1. *pārājika*, 2. *saṅghādisesa*, 3. *aniyata*, 4. *nissaggiya-pācittiya*, 5. *pācittiya*, 6. *pātidesanīya*, 7. *sekhiya*.

The Sūtrālaṅkāra, pg. 55 (commentary on XI, 8) mentions five categories of *āpatti* ‘transgressions’. In that case the *aniyata* and *nissaggiya-pācittiya* should be omitted. See also Lévy’s translation, p. 100, note 1.

(8) the fasting discipline (*upavāsasamvara*).

1-5) To what kind of person is the monastic (*pravrajita*) discipline prescribed? To the person who follows a life of abstention from bad conduct and the sense pleasures.²¹²

6-7) To what kind of person is the lay discipline of men and women prescribed? To the person who follows a life of abstention from bad conduct but not abstention from the sense pleasures.²¹³

8) To what kind of person the discipline of fasting prescribed? To the person who does not follow a life of abstention from bad conduct or abstention from the sense pleasures.²¹⁴

In the case of certain lay disciples who stay in a monastic institution (*śikṣāsthāna*), their discipline is called accompaniment (*samanavāgama*); the discipline of a lay disciple is called non-accompaniment (*asamanavāgama*), and the said accompaniment is also called danger to morality (*śilavipatti*), as in the case of hermaphrodites and eunuchs.

Is the discipline of the lay disciple refused to eunuchs? No, the discipline of a lay disciple is not refused to them; only the station in life of a lay disciple is refused to them because it is not suitable for them to associate with the monastics of the community of monks and nuns or to serve them.

There are five kinds of eunuchs:

- (i) eunuch by birth (*jātipaṇḍaka*),
- (ii) jealous eunuch (*īrṣyapāṇḍaka*),
- (iii) fourteen-day eunuch (*pakṣapāṇḍaka*),
- (iv) wet eunuch (*āsecanakapaṇḍaka*) and
- (v) eunuch of effort (*āpatpaṇḍaka*).²¹⁵

²¹² This refers to the discipline according to the *Vinaya*.

²¹³ This refers to the five usual lay precepts: 1. abstention from destroying life, 2. from stealing, 3. from having illicit sexual relations, 4. from lying, 5. from taking intoxicating liquors.

²¹⁴ This refers to the eight precepts (*upavasathaśīla*) that are observed by lay people on the days of the full moon, the new moon, the first quarter and the last quarter. The eight precepts are to abstain 1. from taking life, 2. from stealing, 3. from having sexual relations (even licit), 4. from lying, 5. from taking intoxicating liquors, 6. from eating after the mid-day meal, 7. from amusing oneself by dancing, singing, music, and other diversions, and from adorning oneself with garlands, perfumes, etc., 8. from using luxurious beds and seats.

²¹⁵ These five types correspond respectively to 1. *napumsakapāṇḍaka*, 2. *usūyapāṇḍaka*, 3. *pakkhapāṇḍaka*, 4. *āsittapāṇḍaka*, 5. *opakkamikapāṇḍaka*, as described in the *Samantapāśādikā*, Commentary on the *Vinaya* (Colombo, ed. III, 1900, pg 187). According to the explanation in the Commentary, the *napumsakapāṇḍaka* is born a hermaphrodite, impotent or without distinct sexual organs (*abhāva*). The *usūyapāṇḍaka* is a person whose sexual appetite is satisfied by jealousy (excitement) when he sees the sexual union of others. The *pakkhapāṇḍaka* is a person who becomes a eunuch during the fourteen dark days (*kālapakkha*), i.e., during two weeks from the full moon to the new moon, and who obtains sexual satisfaction during the fourteen light days (*junhapakkha*), i.e. during the two weeks

CAB.2.8.1.b.

THE DISCIPLINE OF MEDITATION

What is the action (*karma*) included in the discipline of meditation (*dhyāna-saṃvara*)? It is the abstention (*virati*) of a person free of the desire of the sense pleasures when the seeds of his defilements derived from immorality have been cut: it is the abstention in a person free of lust (*vitarāga*) in the stages of the first, second and third absorptions (*dhyāna*). This is called the physical and verbal action (*kāyavākkarma*) included in the discipline of absorption.

CAB.2.8.1.c.

THE DISCIPLINE OF THE PURE REALM

What is action included in the discipline of the pure (*anāśrava*) realm? It is the pure abstention (*anāśravavirati*) obtained by means of insight of the Truth by the power of the attentiveness of the pure realm. This is called the action contained in the pure realm.

CAB.2.8.2.

UNDISCIPLINED ACTION

What is undisciplined action (*asaṃvara*)? It is a course defined by birth or by the choice of certain activities. Who are these undisciplined ones? They are the killers of sheep (*aurabhrika*), the killers of chickens (*kaukkuṭika*), the killers of pigs (*śaukarika*), the killers of birds (*śākunika*), fishermen (*mātsyika*), hunters (*lubdhaka*), the hunters of deer (*vāgurika*), bandits (*cora*), executioners (*ghātaka*), cow-stealers (*gobandhaka*), elephant-stealers (*nāga-* or *hastibandhaka*), governors (*māṇdalika*),²¹⁶ snake charmers (*nāgamandalika*), jailers (*kārāgārika*), spies (*sūchaka*), those who inflict pain (torturers) (*upaghātaka*), etc.²¹⁷

CAB.2.8.3.

ACTION THAT IS NEITHER DISCIPLINED NOR UNDISCIPLINED

What is action included in neither discipline nor non-discipline (*naivasāṃvaranāśaṃvara*)? It is conduct that is neither disciplined nor undisciplined. These are [ordinary] actions, wholesome or unwholesome (*kuśalākuśalakarma*).

CAB.2.9.

3 TYPES OF ACTION: PRODUCING A PLEASANT, UNPLEASANT AND NEITHER PLEASANT NOR UNPLEASANT SENSATION

Furthermore, action is threefold:

- (i) action that produces a pleasant sensation (*sukhavedanīyakarma*),
- (ii) action that produces an unpleasant sensation (*duḥkhavedanīyakarma*) and

between the new moon and the full moon. The *āsittapāṇḍaka* is a eunuch whose sexual appetite is satisfied when he takes the male sex organ of another into his mouth and when the latter emits semen into his mouth. (The *Kāmasūtra* of Vatsyāyana, ed. La Fontaine d'Or, Paris, pp. 85-87, gives a detailed description of this type of eunuch.) The *opakkhamikapaṇḍaka* is a person who emits semen by means of some sort of effort or device.

²¹⁶ Kings, high ministers, judges, procurers, etc. can be included in this category. See Kośa, IV, 91.

²¹⁷ Cf the list in A III, p. 383: *orabhikā sūkarikā sākuṇikā māgavikā luddā macchaghātakā corā coraghātakā bandhanāgārikā*.

(iii) action that produces a sensation that is neither pleasant nor unpleasant (*aduḥkhāsukhavedanīyakarma*).

(i) What is action that produces a pleasant sensation? It is any wholesome action (*kuśalakarma*) from the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmavacara*) up to the third absorption (*dhyāna*).²¹⁸

(ii) What is action that produces an unpleasant sensation? It is unwholesome action (*akuśalakarma*).

(iii) What is action that produces a sensation that is neither pleasant nor unpleasant? It is any action carried out above the third absorption (*dhyāna*).

CAB.2.10.

3 TYPES OF ACTION: PRODUCES RESULTS IN THE PRESENT LIFETIME, ETC.

Furthermore, action (*karma*) is threefold:

- (1) action that produces results in the present lifetime (*drṣṭadharmavedanīyakarma*),²¹⁹
- (2) action that produces results in the following rebirth (*upapadyavedanīyakarma*) and
- (3) action that produces results in successive rebirths later than that (*aparaparyāyavedanīyakarma*).

(1) What is action that produces results in the present lifetime? It is action the results of which ripen in this very life. It consists of either harming or serving a person who has come out of the absorption on universal loving-kindness (*maitrīsamāpatti*). As in regard to a person who has come out of the absorption on universal loving-kindness, so also in regard to a person who has come out of the absorption called ‘free of battle’ (*araṇsamāpatti*), or the absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*), or the fruition of the state of stream-enterer (*srotāpatipihala*), or the fruition of the state of arhat (*arhattvaphala*).²²⁰

Furthermore, an individual who carries out a wholesome (*kuśala*) or unwholesome (*akuśala*) action with regard to the Saṅgha headed by the Buddha (*buddhapramukhaSaṅgha*) will also experience the results in this very lifetime. Others who carry out wholesome or unwholesome actions can experience their results in the present lifetime according to the intensity of their intention.

(2) What is action that produces results in the next lifetime (*upapadyavedanīya-karma*)? It is action the results of which will ripen in the next lifetime as, for example, the five actions of immediate effect

²¹⁸ The fourth *dhyāna* of the *rūpadhātu* and the four *dhyānas* of the *arūpadhātu* are not included because they are free of both pleasant and unpleasant sensations.

²¹⁹ *Drṣṭadhharma* lit. means ‘visible things’, i.e., ‘the visible order of things’. Hence ‘this world’ or ‘the present lifetime’. *Drṣṭadhharma* also has the sense of ‘having seen the Truth’ in the expression *diṭṭhadhammo pattaḍhammo vidiṭṭadhammo...* in the suttas.

²²⁰ If someone harms or serves (such as giving alms to) such a holy person when he comes out of an absorption (*samāpatti*), that individual will experience the results of his action in this very lifetime.

(*ānantaryakarma*).²²¹ Furthermore, any other wholesome or unwholesome action the results of which will ripen in the next lifetime is called action producing results in the next lifetime.

- (3) What is action that produces results in successive rebirths later than that (*aparaparyāyavedanīyakarma*)?** It is action the results of which will ripen in rebirths that will follow the immediately following rebirth. It is called action that produces results in successive rebirths later than the next one.

CAB.2.11.

4 TYPES OF ACTION: BLACK, WHITE, BLACK AND WHITE, NEITHER

Furthermore, action (*karma*) is fourfold:

- (1) action that is black and that produces black results (*krṣṇam krṣṇavipākam karma*),
- (2) action that is white and that produces white results (*śuklam śuklavipākam karma*),
- (3) action that is black and white and that produces black and white results (*krṣṇaśuklam krṣṇaśuklavipākam karma*) and
- (4) action that produces neither black results nor white results (*akṛṣṇaśuklavipākam karma*) and that leads to the destruction of action (*karmakṣaya*).

- (1) What is action that is black and that produces black results?** It is unwholesome action (*akuśalakarma*).
- (2) What is action that is white and that produces white results?** It is the wholesome actions of the three realms (*traidhātuka kuśalakarma*).²²²
- (3) What is action that is black and white and that produces black and white results?** It is action of the realm of sense pleasures (*kāmapratisamyukta*) that is black in intention (*āśaya*) but white in its means (*prayoga*), or action that is black in its means but white in intention.
- (4) What is action that produces neither black nor white results and that leads to the destruction of action?** It is pure action (*anāśravakarma*) in the path of application (*prayogamarga*) and in the immediate path (*ānantaryamarga*).²²³

²²¹ These are the five extremely heinous actions which are destined to produce their results in the immediately following lifetime, namely: matricide (*mātughāta*), patricide (*pitughāta*), murdering a saint (*arahantaghāta*), wounding (lit. spilling the blood of) the Buddha with a hateful mind (*lohituppāda*), and schism in the community (*saṅghbheda*). A person who commits one of these five heinous crimes is described as destined to hell (*āpāyika, nerayika*) and it is impossible to counteract (*atekkiccha*, lit. incurable) his action. A III, p. 146. See also Kośa, IV, 201..

²²² Three realms: *kāmadhātu, rūpadhātu* and *arūpyadhātu*.

²²³ Cf. *Atthi bhikkhave kammañ cañhañ cañhavipākam, atthi bhikkhave kammañ sukkam sukkhavipākam, atthi bhikkhave kammañ kañhasukkam kañhasukkavipākam, atthi bhikkhave kammañ akanhañ asukkañ akanhāsukkhavipākam kammañ kammakkhayāya saṃvattati* (A II, p. 230).

These four types of karma are explained in M I, p. 389; A II, p. 230. See also Kośa, chap. IV, p. 128.

CAB.2.12.

ACTIONS OF PURIFICATION AND SILENCE

The explanation concerning actions of purification and of silence (*śauseya-mauneyakarma*) that are impure because of deceit should be understood in a comparable way as referring generally to obstructions which have the appearance of contributing to pure actions (*anāsravakarma*).²²⁴

CAB.2.13.

GIVING

Moreover, generosity (*dāna*) is a purificatory action (*śauseyakarma*).

What is the act of generosity (*dānakarma*)? It should be considered according to

- (i) its base (*nidāna*),
 - (ii) its arising (*utthāna*),
 - (iii) its objects (*pradeśa, vastu*) and
 - (iv) its nature (*svabhāva*).
- (i) Its base is absence of lust (*alobha*), absence of hatred (*adveṣa*) and absence of delusion (*amoha*), which are the wholesome roots (*kuśalamūla*).
 - (ii) Its arising comprises the same things (i.e. *alobha, adveṣa, amoha*) associated with the will (*cetanā*).
 - (iii) Its objects are the things that should be given (*deyavastu*).
 - (iv) Its nature means the physical, verbal and mental actions at the moment of accomplishing generosity.

What is the accomplishment of generosity (*dānasampat*)? It should be understood that generosity may be accomplished in proportion to its frequency (*abhiṣṇadāna*), its impartiality (*apakṣapātadāna*) and the

Pradhan restores the last phrase as *akṛṣṇāśuklavipākam vyāmiśram karma*. But insertion of the word *vyāmiśra* ‘mixture’ is not attested by the Chinese version nor by the Pali texts mentioned above. Also doctrinally the word *vyāmiśra*, ‘mixture’, is not applicable to the *akṛṣṇāśuklakarma* because it is *anāsrava*, ‘pure’. Pradhan does not restore the phrase ‘that leads to the destruction of actions’ (*karmakṣaya*). The Pali texts cited above also say *kammam kammakkhayāya saṃvattati* ‘this action leads to the destruction of actions’. Kośa kārikā, IV, 60 says *tatkṣaya nirāsravam* ‘pure action leads to the destruction of actions’.

For *prayogamārga* and *ānantaryamārga* see Kośa, chap. VI, pp. 277, 278.

²²⁴ This refers to traditional Brahmanic views about the holiness of so-called sacred ablutions (*snāna*) and the observance of silence (*mauna*). In the *Vatthūpama-sutta* (no. 7) of the M, the Buddha ridicules the Brahmanic idea of washing away one’s sins in the sacred waters of the Bāhukā, Sarasvati, Gayā, Prayāga, etc. (M, I, p. 39). The Brahmanic doctrine establishes many outer observances and ceremonies for spiritual purification, but the Buddha teaches that these things cannot purify a morally impure individual, but that person must be purified by abstaining from evil actions and by practicing pure actions of body, speech and mind – *kāyena soceyyam vācāya soceyyam manasā soceyyam* (A V, p. 266). See also *Āmagandha-sutta*, Sn. II 2; Dhp X (verse 141), XXVI 11, 12, (Verses 393, 394). The Buddha also discredits the Brahmanic notion of silence (*mauna*) as means of purification. Dhp, XIX 13 (verse 268) says: *na monena muni hoti mūḍharūpo avidassu* ‘an ignorant fool does not become wise by silence’. But *ariyo tuṇhībhāvo* ‘noble silence’ is advised. See A IV, p. 359; S II, p. 273; also Kośa, IV, p.135.

fulfillment of a vow (*icchhāparipūrṇadāna*). Moreover, generosity may be accomplished in proportion to its disinterestedness (*aniśrita*),²²⁵ its complete purity,²²⁶ its utmost joy,²²⁷ its frequency, its field (*kṣetra*),²²⁸ and its proper distribution of new and old things.²²⁹

What is accomplishment in regard to the things that should be given (*deyasampat*)? It is that which comprises things acquired without oppressing others, things acquired without causing harm to others, clean and immaculate things, pure things, and things acquired legitimately.

CAB.2.14.

HOW A MONK BECOMES VIRTUOUS, ETC.

It is said in the sūtra:²³⁰ ‘A monk, (1) virtuous (*śīlamabavāgata* or *śīlavat*), (2) disciplined according to the Code of Discipline (*prātimokṣasamvara-saṃvrta*), (3) endowed with good conduct (*ācāragocarasampanna*), (4) seeing great danger in even a small transgression (*anumātṛesvavadyeṣu mahābhayadarśin*), (5) practices according to the precepts (*sikṣate śikṣapadeṣu*).’

- 1) How does one become virtuous (*śīlavat*)?** By observing the pure virtues (*viśuddhaśīla*).
- 2) How does one become disciplined according to the Code of Discipline (*prātimokṣasamvara-saṃvrta*)?** By observing the virtues leading to emancipation (*nairyānikaśīla*).
- 3) How does one become endowed with good conduct (*ācāragocara-sampanna*)?** By conforming to the pure virtues (*viśuddhaśīla*) of those who are venerated.
- 4) How does one see great danger in even a small transgression (*anumātṛesvavadyeṣu mahābhayadarśin*)?** By exerting oneself in the virtues with great respect.
- 5) How does one practice according to the precepts (*sikṣate śikṣapadeṣu*)?** By exerting oneself in the virtues recommended by the precepts.

²²⁵ I.e. free of *lobha*, *dveṣa*, *moha*.

²²⁶ I.e. purity on the side of the giver of the gift (*dāyaka*) as well as on the side of the receiver (*pratigrāhaka*). When the giver is morally pure and the receiver impure, then the purity exists only on the part of the donor; when the donor is morally impure but the receiver is pure, then the purity exists only on the part of the receiver; when both donor and receiver are morally impure, the impurity exists on both parts; when donor and receiver are both morally pure, then the purity is complete. See M III, p. 256.

²²⁷ A gift may be made without joy, with some resentment, some displeasure of the mind (*appasannacitta*), but that which is praiseworthy is generosity carried out with a joyful heart, with pleasure of the mind (*suppasannacitta*). See ibid, p. 257

²²⁸ For this classification, see *Dakkhiṇāvibhang-sutta* (no. 142) in M III, p.254. Also A IV, p. 237 and Kośa IV, 236.

²²⁹ Cf. A III, p. 41: *yāni tāni navasassāni navaphalāni tāni paṭhamāṇ śīlavantesu patiṭṭhāpeti*.

²³⁰ D I, 250, III, 285:bhikkhu śīlavā hoti pātimokkha saṃvarasamvuto viharati ācāragocarasampanno anumattesu vajjesu bhayadassāvī samādāya sikkhati sikkhāpadesu.

CAB.2.15.

HOW TO PRACTICE BODILY AND VOCAL CONDUCT

Now, on the subject of what the Buddha taught concerning morality (*śīla*) in the sūtras by words such as ‘one is disciplined in one’s body’: ²³¹

- (1) **How can one be disciplined in body and speech?** By having attentiveness (awareness) (*samprajanya*).
- (2) **How can one be endowed with physical and vocal accomplishment?** By putting an end to transgressions (*āpatti*) and non-transgressions (*anāpatti*).
- (3) **How can one have pure physical and vocal conduct?** By following the right path without any regret (*avipratisāra*) until attaining absorption (*saṃādhilābha*).
- (4) **How can one have wholesome physical and vocal conduct (*kuśalamudācāra*)?** By going beyond defiled thoughts (*kliṣṭavitarka*).
- (5) **How can one have physical and vocal conduct that is blameless (*anavadya*)?** By avoiding false aspirations (*mithyāprāṇidhi*) and by developing the holy life (*brahmaccarya*).
- (6) **How can one have physical and vocal conduct that is without ill-will (*avyābadhyā*)?** By not looking down on others and living in harmony.
- (7) **How can one have harmonious (*ānulomi*) physical and vocal conduct?** By always turning toward the attainment of nirvāṇa.
- (8) **How can one have decorous (*anucchavika*) physical and vocal conduct?** By concealing one’s wholesome (*kuśala*) actions while revealing one’s unwholesome (*akuśala*) actions.
- (9) **How can one have physical and vocal action serving as means (*aupayika*)?** By accepting the holy life (*brahmaccarya*).
- (10) **How can one have appropriate (*pratirūpa*) physical and vocal action?** By being humble in regard to one’s own preceptors (*guru* or *ācārya*) and in regard to those who occupy the position of preceptor.
- (11) **How can one have respectful (*pradakṣiṇa*) physical and vocal conduct?** By accepting advice respectfully.
- (12) **How can one have physical and vocal conduct that is free from affliction (*atapta*)?** By rejecting severe penitences (*kaṣṭatapas*) and inferior tendencies (*hīnādhimukti*).
- (13) **How can one have physical and vocal conduct that is free from regret (*atanutāpya*)?** By not regretting the wealth and activities that have been abandoned.

²³¹ Cf. *kāyena saṃvuto siyā*, etc. Dhp XVII, 11, 12, 13 (or verses 231, 232, 233); *kāyena saṃvaro sādhu*, ibid. XXV, 2 (or verse 361).

- (14) How can one have physical and vocal conduct that is free from repentance (*avipratisāri*)? By being content with little and by not feeling repentant.

CAB.2.16.

WHY DO SENTIENT BEINGS HAVE THEIR OWN ACTION AS THEIR BELONGING

The Blessed One has said: '(i) Beings have their own actions as their belongings (*karmasvaka*), (ii) they are the heirs of their own actions (*karmadāyaka*), (iii) they have their actions as womb (*karmayoni*), (iv) they have their actions as refuge (*karmapratīśaraṇa*)'. (v-vi) Action (*karma*) separates all beings into high and low, inferior and superior states.'²³²

- i) Why do beings have their own actions as their belongings? Because they experience the results of the actions done by themselves.
- ii) Why do they become the heirs of their actions? Because by experiencing the actions done by themselves, they obtain wholesome or unwholesome actions (*kuśalākuśalakarma*) as their reciprocal heritage.
- iii) Why do they have their actions as womb? Because beings are not born without cause (*ahetu*) nor by an irregular cause (*viṣamahetu*).
- iv) Why do they have their actions as refuge? Because they are connected to counteracting actions (antidotes) (*pratipakṣakarma*) and superior actions.
- v) Why do beings become higher and lower as a result of their actions? Because they obtain different individualities (*ātmabhāvaprabedha*) in good and bad destinies (*sugatidurgati*) because of their actions.
- vi) Why do they become inferior and superior as a result of their actions? Because beings have different good and bad qualities.

CAB.2.17.

CONCEIVABILITY AND INCONCEIVABILITY OF THE MATURATION OF ACTIONS

The Blessed One has said that the maturation (result) of the actions (*karmavipāka*) of beings is inconceivable (*acintya*).²³³

Which ripening of action is conceivable and which is inconceivable?

²³² Cf. M III, p. 203: *kammassakā māṇava, sattā kammadāyādā kammayoni kammabandhu kammaṭaṭisaranā. Kammaṇ satte vibhajati yadidañ hīnappaññatāya*. Also M I, P. 390, A III, p. 72.

²³³ Cf. *Kammavipāko bhikkhave acinteyyo*. There are four inconceivable things (*acinteyyāni*): 1. the ability (power) of the buddhas (*buddhavisaya*), 2. the power of meditative absorption (*jhānavisaya*), 3. the maturation of actions (*kammavipāka*), 4. the notion of the universe (*lokacintā*). A II, p. 80.

For a wholesome action (*kuśalakarma*), the desirable ripening (*istiṣṭavipāka*) in the god or human destinies is conceivable (*cintya*). For an unwholesome action (*akuśalakarma*), the undesirable ripening (*aniṣṭavipāka*) in the three lower and evil (*hīnādurgati*)²³⁴ destinies is conceivable.

- (1) If different maturations (results) in the individuality (*ātmabhāva*) of a being come from a certain action, that is inconceivable.
- (2) This same wholesome or unwholesome action is inconceivable in its details such as place, object, cause, method of maturation.
- (3) An action that produces diversity in the varied external objects is inconceivable.²³⁵
- (4) An action associated with precious stones (*mani*), with spells (*mantra*), with medicinal herbs (*auṣadhi*), with hand-mudras (*muṣṭiyoga*) is inconceivable.²³⁶
- (5) The miraculous activities of mystics (*yogi*) are inconceivable.
- (6) Actions performed by bodhisattvas by means of the power of their mastery (*vaśitā*) are inconceivable.

These masteries are:

- (i) mastery over duration of life (*āyurvaśitā*),
- (ii) mastery of mind (*cittavaśitā* or *cetovaśitā*),
- (iii) mastery of the necessities (*pariṣkāravaśitā*),
- (iv) mastery of activity (*karmavaśitā*),
- (v) mastery of birth (*upapattivaśitā*),
- (vi) mastery of propensity (*adhimuktivaśitā*),
- (vii) mastery of aspiration (*pranidhānavavaśitā*),
- (viii) mastery of miraculous powers (*rddhivaśitā*),
- (ix) mastery of knowledge (*jñānavavaśitā*) and
- (x) mastery of the Dharma (*dharmaśitā*).

Thus an action carried out by a bodhisattva mahāsattva by means of his power of such masteries is inconceivable.

- (7) The activity that accomplishes the work of all the Buddhas (*buddhakṛtyānuṣṭāna*) is inconceivable.²³⁷

²³⁴ The three lower and evil destinies: 1. *naraka* (hell), 2. *tiryak* (animal realm), 3. *preta* (hungry ghost realm).

²³⁵ As, for example, the different colors in various flowers produced by the sun.

²³⁶ This refers to the efficacy of special precious stones, mantra spells, medicinal herbs, magical offering rituals, etc. in various sicknesses, snake bites, etc. These things are still practiced nowadays in India.

CAB.3.

THE FOUR GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TRUTH OF THE ORIGIN

Thus, in brief, the Truth of the origin (*samudayasatya*) is fourfold according to the classification of its characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*):

- 1) characteristic of cause (*hetulakṣaṇa*),
- 2) characteristic of origin (*samudayalakṣaṇa*),
- 3) characteristic of source (*prabhavalakṣaṇa*) and
- 4) characteristic of condition (*pratyayalakṣaṇa*).

1) What is its characteristic of cause? It should be understood as the reason (*kāraṇa*) that brings (*āhāraka*) the traces of re-existence (*punarbhavāsanā*).

2) What is its characteristic of origin? It should be understood as the reason (*kāraṇa*) for the rebirth in the different types of those beings who have accumulated traces (*vāsanā*).

3) What is its characteristic of source? It should be understood as the reason that produces the differences of the numberless individual series (*santāna*).

4) What is its characteristic of condition? It should be understood as the reason that makes each being take on and abandon his state.²³⁸

²³⁷ In this list of inconceivables (*achintya*) (1) and (2) may be included in *kammavipāka*, (3) and (4) in *lokacintā*, (5) and (6) in *jhānavisaya*, and (7) in *buddhavisaya*. See above, p. [], note 2.

²³⁸ To obtain his present and future state and abandon his past state.

CAC.

THIRD SECTION: NIRODHASATYA

3. What is the Truth of cessation (*nirodhasatya*)?

The Truth of cessation should be understood according to:

- 1) its characteristic (*lakṣaṇa*),
- 2) its depth (*gāmbhīrya*),
- 3) its conventional meaning (*saṃvṛti*),
- 4) its absolute meaning (*paramārtha*),
- 5) its incomplete state (*aparipūri*),
- 6) its complete state (*paripūri*),
- 7) its unembellished state (*nirlaṅkāra*),
- 8) its embellished state (*sālaṅkāra*),
- 9) its residue (*śeṣa*),
- 10) its absence of residue (*aśeṣa*),
- 11) its supreme state (*agra*) and
- 12) its synonyms (*pariyāya*).

CAC.1

ITS CHARACTERISTIC (LAKṢAÑA)

1) **What is its characteristic (*lakṣaṇa*)?** It is (i) the non-appearance (*anutpāda*) of defilements (*kleśa*) in the noble path (*āryamārga*) of suchness (*tathatā*); it is (ii) the support of cessation (*nirodhāśraya*), or that which gives cessation (*nirodhaka*), or (iii) the very nature of cessation (*nirodhasvabhāva*). This is the characteristic of cessation.

The Blessed One has said: ‘It is the definitive cessation without residue of name-and-form (*nāmarūpa*) in relation to the spheres (*āyatana*) of the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mental organs.’²³⁹

It is also said: ‘Its sphere (*tadāyatana*) should be understood as the sphere where the eye ceases and where the perception of visible forms (*rūpasamjñā*) is detached, and so on up to ... where the mental organ ceases and where the perception of mental objects (*dharma-samjñā*) is detached.’

In this way, there is manifestation of objects (*ālambana*) and cessation of impure things (*sāsravadvharma*) in suchness (*tathatā*) beyond objects.²⁴⁰ This is the characteristic of cessation.

²³⁹ Cf. *ettha nāmañ ca rūpañca asesam uparujjhati*. D I, p. 223.

²⁴⁰ According to the Tibetan version: In this way, there is cessation of objects, impure things, in suchness.

CAC.2.

ITS DEPTH (GĀMBHĪRYA)

2) What is its depth (gāmbhīrya)? It is cessation by the pacification of the conditioned (*samskāra-upaśama*).²⁴¹

By such pacification, the cessation of these conditioned things (*samskāranirodha*)

- should not be called ‘something other’ (*anya*) [i.e. different from **itself** (???)],
- nor should it be called ‘non-other’ (*ananya*) [i.e., the same as **itself** (???)]; it should not be called ‘both other and non-other’ (*anya-ananya*),
- nor should it be called ‘neither other nor non-other’ (*naivānya-nānanya*).

Why? Because it is beyond elaborations (*nispṛapañca*).²⁴² In this case, when there is elaboration, cessation cannot be conceived of because it cannot be thought of by means of the path, by means of logic, or by means of what is wholesome.

The Blessed One has said: “To say of exhaustion, of detachment, of cessation, of pacification, of disappearance, etc., of these six spheres of contact (*saṃṇām āyatanañām*): ‘this is another (*anya*) or not-other (*ananya*) thing, or another and not-other (*anya-ananya*) thing, or a neither other nor not-other (*naivānya-nānanya*) thing’, would cause elaboration in regard to what is beyond elaboration.

When there is cessation, cutting off of the six spheres, then there is the stopping of elaborations.”

CAC.3.

ITS CONVENTIONAL MEANING (SAMVRTI)

3) What is nirodha from the conventional point of view (saṃvṛti)? It is cessation obtained by suppression of the seeds (*bijaṇigraha*) by means of the worldly paths (*laukikamārga*). The Blessed One called this ‘partial nirvāṇa’ (*tadāṁśikanirvāṇa*).

CAC.4.

ITS ABSOLUTE MEANING (PARAMĀRTHA),

4) What is it in the absolute sense (paramārtha)? It is cessation obtained by complete eradication of the seeds (*bijaṇirmūlana*) by means of noble wisdom (*āryaprajñā*).

CAC.5.

ITS INCOMPLETE STATE (APARIPŪRI),

5) What is its incomplete state (apariṇūri)? It is cessation obtained by those who are in the course of training (*śaikṣa*), e.g., the fruition of stream-entry (*srotāpattiphalā*), or the fruition of once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmiphala*), or the fruition of non-returner (*anāgāmiphala*).

²⁴¹ Cf. *Anicca vata saṃkhāra....tesaṃ vupasamo sukho*. D II, p. 157; S I, p. 158.

²⁴² The term *prapañca*, Pali *papañca*, has many meanings. In this context the most appropriate meaning seems to be ‘elaboration’. Cf. the term *atarkāvachara*, Pali *atakkāvacara*, ‘beyond logic’ in reference to *nirvāṇa*.

CAC.6.

ITS COMPLETE STATE (*PARIPOURI*)

6) What is its complete state (*paripūri*)? It is cessation obtained by those who are no longer in the course of training (*aśaikṣa*), the fruition of arhat (*arhatvaphala*).

CAC.7.

ITS UNEMBELLISHED STATE (*NIRLAMKĀRA*),

7) What is it as not being embellished (*niralamkāra*)? It is cessation obtained by the arhats who have been liberated by wisdom (*prajñāvimukta*).²⁴³

CAC.8.

ITS EMBELLISHED STATE (*SĀLAMKĀRA*)

8) What is it as having embellishment (*sālamkāra*)? It is the cessation obtained by the arhats who have been liberated on both sides (*ubhayatobhāgavimukta*)²⁴⁴ and who possess the three knowledges (*trividyā*)²⁴⁵ and six higher knowledges (*sadabhijñā*).²⁴⁶

CAC.9.

ITS RESIDUE (*ŚEṢA*),

9) What is it in terms of having residues (*śeṣa*)? It is cessation with substratum (*sopadhiśeṣanirodha*).²⁴⁷

²⁴³ *Prajñāvimukta* are those who have attained *nirvāṇa* by the wisdom corresponding to *suddhavipassanāyānika*, those who have attained *nirvāṇa* by simple insight as mentioned in Vsm, p. 588. They attain *nirvāṇa* by wisdom, by meditation on the non-self (*anātma*), without attaining the supernatural powers by means of *dhyāna*. M I, p. 477; Vsm, P. 659. Here *alamkāra* ‘embellishment’ means the miraculous powers attained by means of *dhyāna*. Those who attain *nirvāṇa* by pure wisdom or by insight without having attained the *dhyānas* are *niralamkāra* ‘without embellishment’. See also Kośa, chap. VI, pp. 276, 297.

²⁴⁴ *Ubhayatobhāgavimukta* ‘liberated on both sides’ are so called because they have attained (1) *nirvāṇa* as well as (2) the *dhyānas* with their miraculous powers (M I, p. 477; Vsm, p. 659; Kośa, chap. VI, pp. 274, 275, 276). Their *nirodha* is called *sālamkāra* because it has the embellishments of the miraculous powers obtained by means of the *dhyānas*.

²⁴⁵ *Trividyā*: (1) *Pūrvanivāśānusmṛtijñāna* (knowledge of remembering past lives), (2) *divyacakṣu* or *cyutupapādajñāna* (knowledge of seeing beings reborn in the different destinies), (3) *āsravakṣayajñāna* (knowledge of the extinction of the impurities, the defilements). M I, p. 482, *Tevijja-Vacchagotta-sutta*, no. 71. See also Kośa, chap. VII, p. 108.

²⁴⁶ *Sadabhijñā*: 1. *rddhividhajñāna* (power of flying through the air, walking on water as if on earth, diving into the earth as if into water, etc.), 2. *divyaśrotrajñāna* (power of hearing sounds no matter how far away), 3. *paracittajñāna* or *cetoparyāyajñāna* (power of entering into others’ minds), 4. *divyacakṣu* or *cyutupapādajñāna* (power of seeing beings reborn in the differernt destinies), 5. *pūrvanivāśānusmṛtijñāna* (power of remembering former existences), 6. *āsravakṣayajñāna* (knowledge of the extinction of the impurities, of the defilements). D III, p. 281; M I, p. 34; A I, p. 255; III, p. 17, and numerous other places in the Nikāyas. See also Kośa, chap. VII, p. 98.

²⁴⁷ In translating the term *upadhi*, the Tibetan version uses the word *phuṇ po* ‘skandha’ (aggregates).

Upadhi (Pali *upadhi* and also *upādi*) in this context means *pañcaskandha* ‘five aggregates’ and the results of past karma which are produced as long as the five aggregates exist. *Upadhi* has other meanings in other contexts. See BHS Dictionary of Edgerton and PTS (Dictionary).

CAC.10.

ITS ABSENCE OF RESIDUE (AŚEṢĀ),

10) What is it in terms of not having residue (aśeṣā)? It is cessation without substratum (*nirupadhišeṣanirodha*).

CAC.11.

ITS SUPREME STATE (AGRA)

11) What is its supreme state (agra)? It is the cessation of the bodhisattvas and the buddhas, which is the not-permanently-fixed nirvāṇa (*apratiṣṭitanirvāṇa*)²⁴⁸ because it is based on their determination to bring well-being and happiness to all living beings.

CAC.12.

ITS SYNONYMS (PARYĀYA)

12) What are its synonyms (paryāya)?

- (i) Total abandonment (*aśeṣaprahāṇa*),
- (ii) complete renunciation (*pratinihṣarga*),
- (iii) attainment of the limit (*vyantībhāva*),
- (iv) exhaustion (*kṣaya*),
- (v) detachment (*virāga*),
- (vi) cessation (*nirodha*),
- (vii) tranquility (*vyupaśama*),
- (viii) disappearance (*astamgama*),
- (ix-xxiii) etc.

(i) Why is cessation called total abandonment (*aśeṣaprahāṇa*)? Because the other terms are taken into consideration.²⁴⁹

(ii) Why is it called complete renunciation (*pratinihṣarga*)? Because it is the complete departure (*nihsarana*) from the envelopment of the defilements (*pariyavasthāna*).

(iii) Why is it called attaining the limit (*vyantībhāva*)? Because it puts an end (*vyantīkaroti*) to the latent residues (*anuśaya*).²⁵⁰

An arhat who has attained *nirvāṇa*, who, as long as he lives, possesses the five aggregates and is subject to all the vicissitudes connected with the five aggregates, is called *sopadhišeṣanirodha*, ‘cessation with residue’. After his death or *parinirvāṇa* ‘total extinction’, the five aggregates and all remaining karma are completely extinguished and then his cessation is called *nirupadhišeṣanirodha* ‘cessation without substratum’. See Vsm, p. 509; Siddhi, p. 671.

²⁴⁸ This is the *nirvāṇa* of the buddhas and bodhisattvas who are not permanently fixed in either *samsāra* or *nirvāṇa* – *samsāranirvāṇāpratiṣṭitatvāt*, Sūtrālaṅkāra, IX, 14. For *apratiṣṭhitanirvāṇa* see Siddhi, p. 671.

²⁴⁹ This means that the other synonyms for *nirodha* express only certain aspects of abandonment or extinction of the kleśas, but everything that is not expressed by them is included in the term ‘total abandonment’, *aśeṣaprahāṇa*.

- (iv) **Why is it called exhaustion (*kṣaya*)?** Because it is the disjunction (*viśamyoga*) obtained by the antidotes (*pratipakṣa*) of the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*).
- (v) **Why is it called detachment (*virāga*)?** Because it is the disjunction obtained by the antidotes of the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*).
- (vi) **Why is it called cessation (*nirodha*)?** Because it is the absence of the future appearance of suffering as result of actions, karma.
- (vii) **Why is it called tranquility (*vypaśama*)?** Because there is no mental suffering in the present lifetime as result of past actions. (*drṣṭadharma*).
- (viii) **Why is it called disappearance (*astamgama*)?** Because it is considered from the point of view of cessation with substrate (*sopadhiśeṣanirodha*).
- (ix) **Furthermore, why is this cessation also called unconditioned (*asamskṛta*)?** Because it is without the three characteristics (*lakṣaṇatraya*).²⁵¹
- (x) **Why is this cessation also called ‘difficult to see’ (*durdarśa*)?** Because it is beyond the reach of the physical eye (*carmacakṣu*) and the divine eye (*divyacakṣu*).
- (xi) **Why is this cessation also called stable (*achala*)?** Because it is without movement in the destinies (*gati*, in *samsāra*).
- (xii) **Why is this cessation also called not bowed down (*anata*)?** Because it is without the three kinds of thirst (*trṣṇātraya*).²⁵²
- (xiii) **Why is this cessation also called immortal (*amṛta*)?** Because it is without mortal aggregates (*skandhamāra*).²⁵³
- (xiv) **Why is this cessation also called pure (*anāsrava*)?** Because it is without any mortal stains (*sarvakleśamāra*).
- (xv) **Why is this cessation also called shelter (*layana*)?** Because it is the basis of blameless happiness and joy (*anavdyaprītiśukha*).
- (xvi) **Why is this cessation also called island (*dvīpa*)?** Because it is separation from the three realms of existence (*traidhātukaparicchhedā*).

²⁵⁰ Pradhan omits this paragraph in his restoration.

²⁵¹ The three characteristics of conditioned things (*samskṛtalakṣana*) are *utpāda* (appearance or birth), *vyaya* (disappearance) and *sthityanathātva* (changing during its duration). *Nirodha* is without these characteristics.

²⁵² The three kinds of thirst are *kāmatrṣṇā* (thirst for the sense pleasures), *bhavatrṣṇā* (thirst for existence and becoming) and *vibhavatrṣṇā* (thirst for extinction).

²⁵³ *Māra* means ‘death’. ‘he who brings death’. The aggregates (*skandha*) and the defilements (*kleśa*) are considered as *māra*.

- (xvii) Why is this cessation also called protection (*trāṇa*)? Because it is far from all the dangers of great suffering (*mahāduḥkhopadrava*).
- (xviii) Why is this cessation also called refuge (*śaranya*)? Because it is the state in which one does not rely on the application of intention (*āśayaprayoga*).
- (xix) Why is this cessation also called supreme goal (*parāyana*)? Because it is the state in which supreme nobility of spirit (*paramāryatvāgamana*) is attained.
- (xx) Why is this cessation also called eternal (*acyuta*)? Because it is free of birth (*jāti*).
- (xxi) Why is this cessation also called non-obstruction (*nirvāra*)? Because it is free from the burning of all the defilements (*sarvakleśasantapa*) and also free from the great burning of suffering caused by dissatisfaction of all desires.
- (xxii) Why is this cessation also called safety (*kṣema*)? Because it is the state free of fear of violence.
- (xxiii) Why is this cessation also called happiness (*śiva*)? Because it is the state of well-being.
- (xxiv) Why is this cessation also called that which has bliss as goal (*sukhārtha*)?²⁵⁴ Because it has as goal the ultimate bliss (*paramārthasukha*).
- (xxv) Why is this cessation also called auspicious (*svastyayana*)? Because it is the state where bliss is attained.
- (xxvi) Why is this cessation also called health (*ārogya*)? Because it is free of all illness of obstructions (*sarvāvaraṇaroga*).
- (xxvii) Why is this cessation also called immutable (*āniñjya*)? Because it is free of any distraction (*vikṣepa*).
- (xxviii) Why is this cessation called also extinction (*nirvāṇa*)? Because it is the state of signless peaceful bliss (*animittaśāntasukha*).
- (xxix) Why is this cessation also called unborn (*ajāta*)? Because it is free of successive births (*pratisandhyupapatti*).
- (xxx) Why is this cessation also called non-evolving (*abhūta*)? Because it is free from the birth later than the present (*taduttarakālotpatti*).
- (xxxi) Why is this cessation also called non-created (*akṛta*)? Because it is free of the penetrating force (*āvedha*) of previous actions and defilements (*pūrvakarmakleśa*).
- (xxxii) Why is this cessation also called unconditioned (*asamkṛta*)? Because it is not created by present actions and defilements (*vartamānakarmakleśa*).

²⁵⁴ Pradhan has *sauvarṇika*. But the Chinese version has *sukhārtha*.

(xxxiii) Why is this cessation also called ‘without birth’ (*anutpanna*)? Because it is free of the arising of a future series (*anāgatasantati*, future continuity).²⁵⁵

CAC.13.

THE FOUR GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TRUTH OF CESSATION

In brief, there are four kinds of characteristics of the Truth of cessation:

- 1) the characteristic of cessation (*nirodhalaṅkṣaṇa*),
- 2) the characteristic of peace (*sāntalaṅkṣaṇa*),
- 3) the characteristic of excellence (*praṇītalaṅkṣaṇa*) and
- 4) the characteristic of exit (*niḥsaraṇalaṅkṣaṇa*).

1) Why does it have the characteristic of cessation? Because it is free of defilements (*kleśavisaṁyoga*).

2) Why does it have the characteristic of peace? Because it is free of suffering (*duḥkhavisaṁyoga*).

3) Why does it have the characteristic of excellence? Because it is the basis of bliss and purity (*sukhaśucyadhiṣṭhāna*).

4) Why does it have the characteristic of exit? Because it is the basis of permanent well-being (*nityahitādhiṣṭhāna*).

²⁵⁵ These synonyms are borrowed from various places in different sūtras. For example see: S IV, p. 368; V, pp. 420, 421; Sn, verse 204, 1086; A I, p. 100; II, P. 34; Itv, p. 37; Ud, p. 80; etc. See also Kośa, chap. II, pp. 284-285.

CAD.

FOURTH SECTION: MĀRGASATYA

CAD.1.

THE CHARACTERISTIC OF THE TRUTH OF THE PATH

4. What is the Truth of the path (*mārgasatya*)?

It is that by means of which (i) one understands suffering (*duḥkham parijānīte*), (ii) one abandons the origin of suffering (*samudayam prajahāti*), (iii) one attains the cessation of suffering (*nirodham sākṣātkaroti*) and (iv) one develops the path (*mārgam bhāvayati*). This, in short, is called the characteristic of the Truth of the Path.

CAD.2.

THE ENUMERATION OF THE PATH

Furthermore, the Path is fivefold:

1. the Path of preparation (*sambhāramārga*),
2. the Path of application (*prayagamārga*),
3. the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*),
4. the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*) and
5. the Path of conclusion (*niṣṭhāmārga*).

CAD.2.1.

THE PATH OF PREPARATION (SAMBHĀRAMĀRGA),

1. What is the Path of preparation (*sambhāramārga*)? It is the discipline (*sīla*, virtue) of ordinary people (*prthagjana*), their control of their senses (*indriyeṣu guptadvāratā*),²⁵⁶ their moderation in food (*bhojane mātrājñātā*), their staying awake during the first and last parts of the night (*pūrvarātrāpararātram jāgaryānuyogam*),²⁵⁷ their effort (*vīrya*), their meditative stabilization and insight (*śamathavipaśyanā*) and state of attentiveness (*samprajanya*),²⁵⁸ It is also the merit acquired by other practices, the wisdom acquired by listening (study, teachings) (*śrutamayīprajñā*) and the wisdom acquired by reflecting (*cintāmayīprajñā*)

²⁵⁶ Pradhan's restoration has *indriyadvārarakṣā*. But *indriyeṣu guptadvāratā* (*indriyesu guttadvāratā* in the Pali *suttas*) seems to be the correct term.

²⁵⁷ Pradhan's restoration: *prathamārātrau taduttaratātriṣu vā nityam amiddham*. But this should be *pūrvarātrāpararātram jāgaryānuyogam*. Cf. Vbh, p. 249, *pubbarattāpararattam jāgariyānuyogam*. The meaning of this term is explained in detail in A II, p. 40: A monk (*bhikkhu*) walking about and sitting down (*caṅkamena nisajjāya*) during the day (*divasam*) keeps his mind pure (*cittam parisodheti*), free of hindrances (*āvaraṇyehi dhammehi*). In the same way, he keeps his mind pure during the first watch of the night (*rattiyā pāthamāṇ yāmāṇ*). During the middle watch of the night (*rattiyā majjhimāṇ yāmāṇ*) he sleeps. Then he awakens and spends the last watch of the night (*rattiyā pacchimāṇ yāmāṇ*) keeping his mind pure, walking about and sitting down. A night is divided into three watches of four hours each.

²⁵⁸ Cf. *Silasampanno hoti, indriyesu guttadvāro hoti, bhojane mattaññū hoti, jāgariyam anuyutto hoti*. A II, p. 39.

-- *indriyesu guttadvārā bhojane mattaññuno jāgariyam anuyuttā ... āraddhaviriyā pahitattā upaṭṭhitatasatī sampajānā samāhitā ekaggatā paññāvanto*. M I, p. 32

and the wisdom acquired by mental cultivation (*bhāvanāmayīprajñā*).²⁵⁹ By cultivating these qualities one obtains the potentiality for comprehending the Truth and for liberation (*abhisamayavimokṣa*).

CAD.2.2.

THE PATH OF APPLICATION (PRAYAGAMĀRGA)

2. What is the Path of application (*prayogamārga*)? That which is the Path of preparation (*sambhāramārga*) is the Path of application, but that which is the Path of application is not the Path of preparation.

The latter, the Path of application, consists of the wholesome roots (*kuśalamūla*) leading to penetration (insight, *nirvedhabhāgīya*)²⁶⁰ acquired thanks to the Path of preparation (*sambhāramārga*), namely,

- (i) the state of heat (*uṣmagata*),
- (ii) the state of summit (*mūrdhāna*),
- (iii) patience, acquiescence to the Truth (*satyānukūla* or *satyānuloma-kṣānti*)²⁶¹ and

²⁵⁹ Śrutamayīprajñā is obtained by studying the teachings, *cintāmayīprajñā* by rational thinking and *bhāvanāmayīprajñā* by meditation, mental cultivation, concentration. Śrutamayīprajñā has as object the word, the name (*nāma*) of a thing (*artha*) as symbol. *Cintāmayīprajñā* has as object the name (*nāma*) and the thing (*artha*) indicated by the name. *Bhāvanāmayīprajñā* has only the thing itself as object, for this wisdom transcends the stage of thought by use of symbols. A word or a name which is a symbol does not represent the thing (*artha*) completely in its true nature. *Bhāvanāmayīprajñā* transcends words and penetrates the thing (*artha*) itself without name, without any label.

For details of these three forms of wisdom, see Kośa, chap. VI, pp. 143, 159; Vbh, pp. 324. 325.

²⁶⁰ In the Pali sources we find three other *-bhāgiya* along with *nirvedhabhāgiya*: *hānabhāgiya* (leading to decline), *thitibhāgiya* (leading to stagnation), *visesabhāgiya* (leading to higher difference or to progress) and *nibbedhabhāgiya* (leading to penetration). Vsm, p. 88 explains them: *Tattha paccanikasamudācāravasea hānabhāgiyatā, tadanudhammatāya satiyā sañthānavasena thitibhāgiyatā, uparivisesādhigamavasena visesabhāgiyatā, nibbidāsaṅhagatasaññāmanasikārasamudācāravasena nibbedhabhāgiyatā ca vediyabbā*. ‘Decline (*hāna*) should be understood with respect to the appearance of opposing qualities, stagnation (*thiti*) with respect to the stability of the original attentiveness (*sati*), a higher difference (progress) (*visesa*) with respect to higher attainment, and penetration (*nibbedha*) with respect to the appearance of perception and attentiveness associated with aversion (*nibbidāsaṅhaga*).’

For example, for someone who has attained the first *dhyāna*, thoughts of sense pleasures (*kāmasaṅhagatā saññāmanasikārā*) are *hānabhāgiya* because, due to these thoughts, he will fall from that state. Qualities such as liberation from the five hindrances (*nīvaraṇa*) which preserve this state of *dhyāna* are *thitibhāgiya* (leading to stagnation). A mental state free of *vitarka* (reasoning) (*avitakkasaṅhagatā saññāmanasikārā*) is *visesabhāgiya* (leading to a higher distinction) because it leads to the second *dhyāna* which is higher. Here one must recall that in the first *dhyāna* there is *vitarka*, but the second *dhyāna* is free of *vitarka*). Thoughts of aversion to *samsāra* (*nibbidāsaṅhagatā saññāmanasikārā*) and detachment are *nibbedhabhāgiya* (leading to penetration) because they lead to penetration of the Truth, to the understanding of *nirvāṇa*. See Vbh, pp. 331-331; A II, p. 167; D III, pp. 276, 277; Vsm, p. 88.

²⁶¹ *Kṣānti* here does not mean ‘patience’ as it usually does. Sylvain Lévi and La Vallée Poussin translate this term as ‘patience’ in similar contexts, but see their excellent notes on this word, Translation of Mahāyānasūtrālankāra, p. 123, note 1, and Abhidharmakośa, chap. VI, p. 165, note 2. Kern’s expression ‘acquiescence’ is preferable. Cf. the Pali

(iv) supreme mundane virtue (*laukikāgradharma*).

(i) What is the state of heat (*uṣmagata*)? It is the concentration obtained by the light (*ālokalabdhāsamādhi*) and its conjunction with wisdom (*prajñāsamyojya*) in a direct personal experience of the Truths.²⁶²

(ii) What is the state of summit (*mūrdhānas*)? It is the concentration developed by the light (*ālokavṛddhāsamādhi*) and its conjunction with wisdom in a direct personal experience of the Truths.

(iii) What is patience, acquiescence, acceptance of the Truths (*satyānukūla* or *satyānuloma-kṣānti*)? It is the concentration obtained by a partial entry and the conjunction with wisdom in a direct personal experience of the Truths.

(iv) What is the supreme mundane virtue (*laukikāgradharma*)? It is the immediate concentration (*ānantaryacittasamādhi*) and the conjunction with wisdom in a direct personal experience of the Truths.

CAD.2.3.

THE PATH OF SEEING (*DARŚANAMĀRGĀ*)

3. What is the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*)? In brief,

(i) it is the inconceivable concentration (*anupalambhasamādhi*) obtained immediately after the supreme mundane virtue (*laukikāgradharma*) and the conjunction with wisdom.

(ii) It is also like the knowledge of subject and object (*ālambyālambanajñāna*).

(iii) It is also the direct knowledge itself of objects (1-2) without the conventional designations of beings and things (*apanītasattva-saṅketadharmasaṅketa*), (3) completely free of these two conventional designations (*sarvato'panītobhayasaṅketa*).²⁶³

expression *dīṭhe sute khantiṃ akubamāno* (Sn v. 897); *aññadiṭṭhikena aññakhantikena aññarucikena* (M I, p. 487); *imissā dīṭhiyā imissā khantiyā imissā ruciyā* (Vbh, p. 245).

²⁶² Here it is interesting to compare the word *uṣmagata* with the word *usmīkata* found in the suttas of the Pali *Nikāya*, e.g. *Alagaddūpama-sutta*, M I, p. 132; *Mahātaṇhāsaṅkhaya-sutta*, ibid., p. 258. The Buddha used the term *usmīkata* in reference to some disciples who had misunderstood his words and maintained false views that they had wrongly attributed to him. After having reprimanded the disciple who had held such a wrong view, the Buddha asked the following question of the other bhikkhus who were present: *Api nāyam...usmīkato'pi imasmiṃ dhammavinaye ti?* Is this person...(the name is mentioned)...himself *usmīkata* in this doctrine and this discipline?²

Perhaps this refers to the *uṣmagata* mentioned in this text and elsewhere (Mh. □ūtrālakāra, XIV, 26 commentary; Abhidharmakośa, VI, 163). But Buddhagosa explains the word *usmīkata* differently: ‘Just as when a great fire is extinguished there always remains a small piece of glowing charcoal, even the size of a firefly, by means of which one can produce a great fire once more. In the same way is it possible that this person may have a minuscule amount of the heat of wisdom (*ñāṇusmā*) by means of which he can make the effort to obtain the path and its fruits (*maggaphalāni*).’ MA, II, p. 104.

²⁶³ This is the understanding of things, the penetration into things, the seeing of things as they are in reality (*yathābhūtam*) without conventional designations, without symbols.

CAD.2.3.1. **DIVISION BY KNOWLEDGE OF (JÑĀNA) AND ACQUIESCENCE (KṢĀNTI) TO THE PATH OF SEEING (DARŚANAMĀRGĀ) INTO SIXTEEN STAGES**

Immediately following the supreme mundane virtue (*laukikāgradharma*), the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*) is divided into sixteen stages as follows:

- 1) acquiescence to the knowledge of the doctrine of suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣānti*),
- 2) knowledge of the doctrine of suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñāna*),
- 3) acquiescence to the consecutive knowledge of suffering (*duḥkhe anvayajñānakṣānti*),
- 4) consecutive knowledge of suffering (*duḥkhe anvayajñāna*);
- 5) acquiescence to the knowledge of the doctrine of the origin (*samudaye dharmajñānakṣānti*),
- 6) knowledge of the doctrine of the origin (*samudaye dharmajñāna*),
- 7) acquiescence to the consecutive knowledge of the origin (*samudaye anvayajñānakṣānti*),
- 8) consecutive knowledge of the origin (*samudaye anvayajñāna*);
- 9) acquiescence to knowledge of the doctrine of cessation (*nirodhe dharmajñānakṣānti*),
- 10) knowledge of the doctrine of cessation (*nirodhe dharmajñāna*),
- 11) acquiescence of the consecutive knowledge of cessation (*nirodhe ‘nvayajñānakṣānti*),
- 12) consecutive knowledge of cessation (*nirodhe anvayajñāna*);
- 13) acquiescence to the knowledge of the doctrine of the Path (*mārge dharmajñānakṣānti*),
- 14) knowledge of the doctrine of the Path (*mārge dharmajñāna*),
- 15) acquiescence to consecutive knowledge of the Path (*mārge anvayajñānakṣānti*),
- 16) consecutive knowledge of the Path (*mārge anvayajñāna*).

This is the division by (i) knowledge of (*jñāna*) and (ii) acquiescence (*kṣānti*) to the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*) into sixteen stages.²⁶⁴

- **What is suffering (*duḥkha*)?** It is the Truth of Suffering (*duḥkhasatya*).
- **What is the doctrine with regard to suffering (*duḥkhadharma*)?** It is the spiritual teaching (*śāsanadharma*) on the Truth of suffering.
- **What is knowledge of the doctrine (*dharmajñāna*)?** It is the knowledge investigating (*vicaya*) the doctrine on the Truth of suffering in the path of application (*prayogamārga*).
- **What is acquiescence to the knowledge (*jñānakṣānti*)?** It is the pure wisdom (*anāsravaprajñā*) that has in itself (*pratyātma*) direct experience (*pratyakṣanubhava*) of the Truth of suffering

²⁶⁴ Cf. Kośa, chap. VI, p. 184 et seq.

(*duḥkhasatya*), as a result of the dominant powers (*adhipatibala*) of the preceding investigation. By this wisdom, one abandons all the defilements (*kleśa*) that should be abandoned by seeing suffering (*duḥkhadarśana*). This is why it is called acquiescence to the knowledge of the doctrine on suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣānti*).

- **What is knowledge of the doctrine on suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñāna*)?** It is the knowledge by which one obtains liberation (*vimukti*) from the defilements mentioned above, immediately after acquiescence (*ksānti*). This is why it is called knowledge of the doctrine on suffering.
- **What is acquiescence to the consecutive knowledge of suffering (*duḥkhe anvayajñānakṣānti*)?** It is the pure wisdom (*anāsravaprajñā*) which appears by itself, having a direct experience of acquiescence in the knowledge of the doctrine on suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñānakhānti*) and of the knowledge of the doctrine on suffering (*duḥkhe dharmajñāna*), after which this is consecutive to the noble qualities (*āryadharma*). This is why it is called acquiescence of the consecutive knowledge of suffering.
- **What is the consecutive knowledge of suffering (*duḥkhe anvayajñāna*)?** It is the pure wisdom which appears immediately after that and which retains the acquiescence to the consecutive knowledge of suffering. This is called consecutive knowledge of suffering.

The same holds for the other Truths in the appropriate order.

The acquiescences (*ksānti*) and the knowledges (*jñāna*) are knowables (*jñeya*). In this case, there is perception (*avabodha*) of the ‘grasped’ (*grāhya*, object) by means of the acquiescence to and knowledge of the doctrine, and perception of the ‘grasper’ (*grāhaka*, subject) by means of the acquiescence and consecutive knowledges.²⁶⁵ Furthermore, in each case of acquiescence and knowledge, what is meant is a resting in the search for the signless (*animittaprekṣāvihāra*). These sixteen mind moments (*cittakṣāṇa*) are called the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*). The arising and accomplishment of the knowledge with regard to knowables (*jñeya*) is called a single mind moment (*ekacittalakṣaṇa*).

CAD.2.3.2.

THE FOUR WAYS OF PUTTING THE TRUTH OF THE PATH INTO PRACTICE

The Truth of the Path (*mārgasatya*) in its entirety should be put into practice in four ways:

- (i) by definition (*vyasthāna*),
- (ii) by discrimination (*vikalpana*),
- (iii) by experience (*anubhava*) and
- (iv) by perfection (*paripūri*).

(i) What is the definition (*vyavasthāna*)? Those such as the disciples (*śrāvaka*) who have reached the end of their training (*adhigama*) define (*vyavasthāpayanti*, explain) the Truth of the Path, the object of their

²⁶⁵ For *grāhya* and *grāhaka*, see Siddhi, p. 78.

knowledge, by means of groups of words, phrases and letters (*nāmapadavyañjanakāya*), by the subsequent knowledge they have acquired (*tatpr̄ṣṭhalabdhajñāna*).

(ii) What is discrimination (*vikalpana*)? Those who are engaged in understanding the Truth (*abhisamayaprayukta*) practice the Path as it is defined, discriminating it according to their mundane knowledge (*laukikajñāna*).

(iv) What is experience (*anubhava*)? Practicing in this way, they experience (*anubhavanti*) within themselves (*pratyātma*) the supramundane state free of elaborations (*lokottara niṣprapañcāvasthā*) called the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*).

(iii) What is perfection (*paripūri*)? Beyond that, they come to the perfection of the knowledge having completed the fundamental transformation (*aśrayaparāvṛtti*). And again, those who have reached the perfection of knowledge define the Truth of the Path (*mārgasatya*) by words, phrases and letters by means of their subsequent knowledge.

The sūtra says: ‘The eye of Truth (*dharmaçakṣu*) is born without a speck of dust (*viraja*) and without any stain (*vītamala*).’²⁶⁶ This is said in regard to the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*). It is without dust (*viraja*) because of acquiescence to the Truth (*dharmaṅkṣānti*); without stain (*vitamala*) because of knowledge of the Truth (*dharmajñāna*); and because of renunciation (*prahāṇa*) and complete knowledge (*parijñā*), the purity of the Path (*mārgaśuddhi*) is attained.

The sūtra says: ‘He who has (i) seen the Truth (*dr̄ṣṭadharma*), (ii) who has attained the Truth (*prāptadharma*), (iii) who has known the Truth (*viditadharma*), (iv) who has deeply penetrated the Truth (*paryavagāḍhadharma*), (v) who has gone beyond doubt (*tīrṇakāṅkṣa*), (vi) who has transcended scepticism (*tīrṇavicikitsa*), (vii) who is not dependent on others (*aparapraptyaya*), (viii) who is not led by others to the teaching of the Master (*śāstuḥ śāsane ‘nanyanya*), (ix) having confidence in himself in the doctrines (*dharmeṣu vaiśāradadyaprāpta*)’.²⁶⁷ This too is said in regard to the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*).

- (i) ‘Seen the Truth’ (*dr̄ṣṭadharma*) by acquiescence of the Truth (*dharmaṅkṣānti*).
- (ii) ‘Attained the Truth’ (*prāptadharma*) by knowledge of the Truth (*dharmajñāna*).
- (iii) ‘Known the Truth’ (*viditadharma*) by consecutive acquiescence (*anvayakṣānti*).
- (iv) ‘Deeply penetrated the Truth’ (*paryavagāḍhadharma*) by the consecutive knowledge (*anvayañāna*).
- (v) ‘Gone beyond doubt’ (*tīrṇakāṅkṣa*) because of absence of doubt about his knowledge (*svadhigama*) by means of acquiescence and knowledge (*kṣāntijñāna*).

²⁶⁶ Virajan vītamalan dhammacakkhum udapādi, A IV, p. 210; S IV, p. 47; V, p. 423, etc.

²⁶⁷ Diṭṭhadhammo pattadhammo viditadhammo pariyoḡāḍhadhammo tīrṇavicikiccho vigatakathaṅkatho vesārajappatto aparappaccayo satthusāsane. A IV, pp. 186, 210, etc.

- (vi) ‘Transcended scepticism’ (*tīrṇavicikitsa*) because of absence of doubt concerning the knowledge of others (*parādhigama*) in this position.
- (vii) ‘Not dependent on others’ (*aparapratyaya*) because of being independent of others and because of reflecting on his own wholesome qualities (*kuśala*) for the development of the Path (*mārgabhāvana*).
- (viii) ‘Not led by others in the Master’s teaching’ (*śāstuh śāsane ‘nanyaneya*) because of the fact that he cannot be misled by heretics (*anyatīrthya*) in regard to the Buddha’s teaching (*buddhaśāsana*).
- (ix) ‘Having confidence in himself in the doctrines’ (*dharmaśu vaiśaradyaprāpta*) because of the dauntlessness of his mind (*alīmacitta*) with regard to questions of doctrine concerning knowledge (*adhigama*).

CAD.2.4.

THE PATH OF CULTIVATION (*BHĀVANĀMĀRGA*)

CAD.2.4.1.

NINE TYPES OF PATH OF CULTIVATION

4. What is the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*)? It consists of:

- (1) mundane path (*laukikamārga*),
- (2) supramundane path (*lokottaramārga*),
- (3) weak path (*mṛdumārga*),
- (4) medium path (*madhyamārga*),
- (5) strong path (*adhimātramārga*),
- (6) path of application (*prayogamārga*),
- (7) immediate path (*ānantaryamārga*),
- (8) path of liberation (*vimuktimārga*) and
- (9) special path (*viśeṣamārga*).

CAD.2.4.1.a.

THE MUNDANE PATH (*LAUKIKAMĀRGA*)

(1) What is the mundane path (*laukikamārga*)? It consists of the first, second, third and fourth worldly concentrations (*laukikadhyāna*), the sphere of infinite space (*ākāśānāntyāyatana*), the sphere of infinite consciousness (*vijñānāntyāyatana*), the sphere of nothingness (*ākiñcanyāyatana*) and the sphere of neither perception nor non-perception (*naivasamjñānā-samjñāyayatana*). These concentrations and the formless states (*dhyānārūpyāḥ*) should be understood in reference to

- (i) their defilements (*samkleśa*),
- (ii) their purification (*vyavadāna*),

(iii) their definition (*vyavasthana*) and

(iv) their purity (*viśuddhi*).

(i) What are their defilements (*samklesha*)? They are the four (morally) undefined roots (*avyākṛtamūlāni*),²⁶⁸ namely, (a) thirst (*trṣṇā*, desire), (b) view (*drṣṭi*), (c) pride (*māna*) and (d) ignorance (*avidyā*).

- (a) One is stained by thirst (*trṣṇā*) due to the stain caused by enjoyment (*āsvāda* *samklesha*);
- (b) one is stained by view (*drṣṭi*) due to contemplation dominated by wrong view (*drṣṭyuttaradhyāyitā*);
- (c) one is stained by pride (*māna*) due to contemplation dominated by pride (*mānottaradhyāyitā*);
- (d) one is stained by ignorance (*avidyā*) due to contemplation dominated by doubts (*vicikitsottaradhyāyitā*).²⁶⁹

This is the way the major and minor defilements (*kleśopaklesāḥ*) belonging to the form realm and the formless realm (*rūpārūpyāvacarāḥ*) function (*pravartante*) in those of defiled mind.

(ii) What is their purification (*vyavadāna*)? The concentrations and pure formless realms (*śuddhakā dhyānārūpyāḥ*) are called purified (*vyavadāta*) due to their wholesome state (*kuśalatva*).²⁷⁰

(iii) What is their definition (*vyavasthāna*)? They are defined

- (a) by their factors (*aṅgavyavasthāna*),
- (b) by their attainment (*samāpattiyavyavasthāna*),
- (c) by their degree (*mātrāvyavasthāna*)²⁷¹ and
- (d) by their designations (*saṃjñākaranavyavasthāna*).

(a) What is the definition by their factors (*aṅgavyavasthāna*)?

²⁶⁸ *Trṣṇā*, *drṣṭi*, *māna* and *avidyā* are called *avyākṛtamūla* ‘(morally) indefinite roots’ when they act as defilements in the *dhyāna* states. Otherwise they are *akuśala*. A *dhyāna* that is far away from the *akuśalas* (*vivicca akusalehi dhammehi*) cannot have *akuśalas* as such. But when these four things defile a *dhyāna*, they are called *avyākṛtamūla*, not *akuśala*, because a *dhyāna* cannot have *akuśalas* and they are not *kuśala* either. Thus the word *avyākṛtamūla* is used to indicate that they are neither *kuśala* nor *akuśala* as such but only defilements (*saṃklesha*) for the *dhyānas*. See also Kośa, V, pp. 42, 43.

²⁶⁹ When a person who meditates is dominated by desire, thirst (*trṣṇā*), he develops a taste for *dhyāna* (*āsvādasamāpatti*); when he is dominated by view (*drṣṭi*), he falls into the wrong view that his *dhyāna* is eternal (*śāśvata*); when he is dominated by pride (*māna*) he thinks: ‘I have *dhyāna* but others do not’; when he is dominated by ignorance (*avidyā*), he falls into doubt (*vicikitsa*) and wonders whether the path where he finds himself is true or false, etc.

²⁷⁰ They are called pure because they have been relieved of the four *avyākṛtamūlāni* mentioned above.

²⁷¹ *Mātrā* lit. means ‘measure’ but in this context it signifies ‘degree’.

The first concentrations (*dhyāna*) consists of five factors: sustained thought,²⁷² investigation (*vitarka*), searching thought,²⁷³ reflection (*vicara*), joy (*prīti*), bliss (*sukha*, ease) and one-pointedness of the mind (*cittaikāgratā*).

The second concentration consists of four factors: inner serenity (*adhyātmasamprasāda*), joy (*prīti*), bliss (*sukha*) and one-pointedness of mind (*cittaikāgratā*).

The third concentration consists of five factors: equanimity (*upekṣā*), attentiveness (*smṛti*, memory), mindfulness (*samprajanya*, awareness), bliss (*sukha*) and one-pointedness of mind (*cittaikāgratā*).

The fourth concentration consists of four factors: purity of equanimity (*upekṣāpāriśuddhi*), purity of attentiveness (*smṛtipāriśuddhi*), neither happy nor unhappy sensation (*adukhāsukhavedanā*) and one-pointedness of mind (*cittaikāgratā*).²⁷⁴

Due to the counteragents (*pratipakṣāṅga*) and the beneficial factors (*anuśāmsāṅga*) as well as the factors the nature of which is the basis of both (*tadubhayāśravyasvabhāvāṅga*), there is no definition of factors in the formless realms (*ārūpyeṣu*). This is because calm abiding (*śamatha*) has but one taste (*ekarasa*).

(b) What is the definition by their attainment (*saṃpattiyavasthāna*)? The first concentration (*dhyāna*) is attained by means of seven attentivenesses (*sapta manaskāra*) and so on, up to the sphere of neither perception nor non-perception (*naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana*).

What are these seven attentivenesses?

- (1) attentiveness that recognizes characteristics (*lakṣaṇapratisamvedīmanaskāra*),
- (2) attentiveness belonging to determination (*ādhimokṣika*),²⁷⁵
- (3) attentiveness belonging to the state of solitude (*prāvivikta* or *prāviveja*),²⁷⁶
- (4) attentiveness that favors contentment (*ratisaṃgrāhaka*),²⁷⁷

²⁷² Verdu's definition. See Alfonso Verdu: 'Early Buddhist Philosophy in the Light of the Four Noble Truths' (1985).

²⁷³ Verdu's definition

²⁷⁴ The definition of the factors (*āṅga*) of the four *dhyānas* given here differs from that of the Pali Abhidhamma. For a detailed discussion of this subject, see "A Comparative Study of *Dhyānas* according to Theravāda, Sarvāstivāda and Mahāyāna", by Walpola Rahula, The Maha Bodhi, June 1962, pp. 190-199.

²⁷⁵ See Kośa, II, p. 325, VI, p. 150.

²⁷⁶ *Viveka* in Sanskrit means 'distinction, investigation, discretion (?), correct judgment', etc. But in Buddhist terminology it means 'solitude'. Cf. Dhp, XV, 9, *pavivekarasaṃ pītvā* 'having tasted the taste of solitude'. *Mīmāṃsā* (Pali *vīmaṃsā*) is the word that corresponds to 'investigation'.

²⁷⁷ *Rati* here does not mean 'attachment, love' as usual, but rather 'contentment'. In this context, *rati* is the opposite of *arati* 'discontentment, disgust, dissatisfaction'. *Arati* is a fault that is considered to be the second of Māra's ten armies.

- (5) attentiveness that investigates (*mīmāṃsaka*),
- (6) attentiveness to the accomplishment of application (*prayoganiṣṭha*) and
- (7) attentiveness to the results of the accomplishment of application (*prayoganiṣṭhāphala*).

(c) What is the definition by their degree (*mātrāvyavasthāna*)? The first concentration (*dhyāna*) may be developed to a weak degree (*mṛduparibhāvita*), to a medium degree (*madhyaparibhāvita*) and to a strong degree (*adhimātraparibhāvita*). As it is for the first concentration, so for the other concentrations and for the formless states (*ārūpya*).

The result of the first concentration developed in a weak, medium and strong manner consists of the three places of birth belonging to the first concentration. As it is with the first concentration, so it is for the others, each having three places of birth belonging to it.²⁷⁸ Since there are no distinct places in the formless realms, there is no division of places of birth for them. With regard to birth in the formless realms, there are high and low states (*ucchārañchatā*), inferior and superior (*hīnapraṇītātā*), as the result of their weak, medium or strong development.²⁷⁹

(d) What is the definition by their designation (*samjnākaraṇavyavasthāna*)? The buddhas and bodhisattvas attain (*saṃpadyante*) all the forms of meditative stability (*saṃādhi*) comprising the first *dhyāna*. The disciples and the pratyekabuddhas do not even know their names.²⁸⁰ Just as for those included in the first concentration, so for those included in the other concentrations and in the formless realm (*dhyānārūpya*), not to speak of the state of the perfection of *dhyāna* (*dhyānapāramitā*)²⁸¹

Cf. *kāmā te paṭhamā seā dutiā arati vuccati* (*Padhāna-sutta*, Sn, v. 436). Buddha to Māra: “Desire of the sense pleasures is your first army and the second is discontentment”. This discontent, dissatisfaction, is considered to be an obstacle to spiritual progress. *Rati* ‘contentment, satisfaction’, being the opposite of *arati*, is a quality favoring and encouraging the spiritual life.

²⁷⁸ Each *dhyāna* has, as result, three places of birth according to whether the development is weak, medium or strong. Thus the first *dhyāna* has: Brahmakāyika, Brahmapirohita and Mahābrahma; the second *dhyāna* has: Parīttābhā, Apramāṇābhā and Ābhāsvara; the third *dhyāna* has: Parītaśubha, Apramāṇaśubha and Śubhakṛtsna; the fourth *dhyāna* has: Ānabhraka, Punyaprasava and Bṛhatphala. All these realms are included in the *rūpadhātu*. For details see Kośa, chap. III, p.2 seq.

²⁷⁹ See also Kośakārikā, chap. III, v. 3, *ārūpyadhātūr asthāna upapityāchaturvidhāḥ*.

²⁸⁰ The *Bāṣya*, as cited by Pradhan, says: *teśām saṃādhīnāḥ śrāvakāḥ pratyekabuddhāś cha nāmānyapi na jānanti, kutaḥ evaiśām saṃkhyām jñāsyanti saṃāpastsyante*. ‘The disciples and the pratyekabuddhas do not know even the names of these *saṃādhis*. How then would they know their classification and how could they attain them?’

²⁸¹ That is to say, the disciples and pratyekabuddhas have no knowledge of the subject of *dhyānapāramitā*.

(iv) **What is their purity (*viśuddhi*) in the concentrations and the formless realms?** From the highest limit of the first concentration (*prāntakoṭika prathama dhyāna*) up to the sphere of neither perception nor non-perception (*naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana*) – this is called purity.

CAD.2.4.1.b.

THE SUPRAMUNDANE PATH (LOKOTTARAMĀRGĀ)

(2) What is the supramundane Path (*lokottaramārga*)?

It consists of the knowledge of suffering, its origin, its cessation and the path (*duḥkhasamudayanirodhamārgajñāna*) which is on the side of the knowledge of the doctrine and the consecutive knowledge (*dharmajñānānvayajñānapakṣya*) of the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*) and also in the concentration related to them (*taiś ca samprayuktah samādhīḥ*), and in the first concentration or in the others up to the sphere of nothingness (*ākiñcanyāyatana*). The sphere of neither perception nor non-perception (*naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatanaṁ*) is still mundane (*laukikam eva*) and it is not distinct (*aparisphuṭa*) because of the conduct of perception (*samjñāpracāra*).²⁸² That is why it is also called signless (*animitta*).

The Blessed One has said: ‘As long as there is absorption with perception (*saṃjñāsamāpatti*) there is penetration into (understanding of) perfect knowledge (Truth) (*ājñāprativivedha*).²⁸³

The absorption of cessation (*nirodhasamāpatti*) is supramundane (*lokottara*) and is produced among humans (*manuṣyesvabhinirhriyate*); since it is produced among humans, it is attained (*sammukhīkriyate*) among humans and in the form realm (*rūpadhātu*). It does not occur in the formless realm (*ārūpya*) because of lack of effort for it (*tadyatnānārambha*) on the part of those who dwell there as the result of the absorption that brings about peaceful liberation (*sāntavimokṣa*).

CAD.2.4.1.c.

THE WEAK PATH (MRDUMĀRGĀ)

(3) **What is the weak path (*mṛdumārga*)?** It is the weak-weak (*mṛdu-mṛdu*), weak-medium (*mṛdumadhyā*) and weak-strong (*mṛdvadhimātra*) path by means of which one abandons, in different stages (*bhūmau-bhūmau*), certain categories of defilements (*kleśaprakāra*) which are the strong-strong (*adhimātrādhimātra*), the strong-medium (*adhimātramadhyā*) and the strong-weak (*adhimātramṛdu*) categories of defilements (*kleśaprakāra*) belonging to the three realms (*traiḍhātukānām kleśānām*).

²⁸² In the *naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana* one is unable to meditate on the path because perception (*saṃjñā*) is not distinct; it is neither existent nor nonexistent. This state (the fourth *ārūpya*) is never *anāsrava*. See also Kośa, VIII, p. 145.

²⁸³ A IV, p. 426: *iti kho bhikkhave yāvatā saññāsamāpatti tāvatā aññāpaṭivedho*.

Ājñā in Sanskrit generally means ‘order, commandment’. But in Buddhist terminology it means ‘perfect understanding’, ‘understanding of the truth’, and also ‘arhathood’, Pali *aññā*. Cf. *Abhidhānappadīpikā*, v. 436, *aññā tu arahattañ ca*. Kauṇḍinya, the first of the five disciples of the Buddha, is known as Ājñāta-Kauṇḍinya (Pali *Aññā-Koṇḍañña*) because he was the first to understand the Truth.

CAD.2.4.1.d.

THE MEDIUM PATH (MADHYAMĀRGA)

(4) **What is the medium path (*madhyamārga*)?** It is the medium-weak (*madhyamṛdu*), medium-medium (*madhyamadhyā*) and medium-strong (*madhyādhimātra*) path by means of which one abandons, in stages, certain categories of the defilements which are the medium-strong (*madhyādhimātra*), the medium-medium (*madhyamadhyā*) and the medium-weak (*madhyamṛdu*) defilements belonging to the three realms.

CAD.2.4.1.e.

THE STRONG PATH (ADHIMĀTRAMĀRGA)

(5) **What is the strong path (*adhimātramārga*)?** It is the strong-weak (*adhimātramṛdu*), strong-medium (*adhimātramadhyā*) and strong-strong (*adhimātrādhimātra*) path by means of which one abandons, in different stages, certain categories of the defilements which are the weak-strong (*mṛdavadhimātra*), the weak-medium (*mṛdumadhyā*) and the weak-weak (*mṛdumṛdu*) defilements belonging to the three realms.²⁸⁴

CAD.2.4.1.f.

THE PATH OF APPLICATION (PRAYOGAMĀRGA)

(6) **What is the Path of application (*prayogamārga*)?** It is the path by means of which one abandons the defilements (*kleśa*).

CAD.2.4.1.g.

THE IMMEDIATE PATH (ĀNANTARYAMĀRGA)

(7) **What is the immediate path (*ānantaryamārga*)?** It is the path immediately after which the uninterrupted defilements (*nirantarah kleśa*) are destroyed.

CAD.2.4.1.h.

THE PATH OF LIBERATION (VIMUKTIMĀRGA)

(8) **What is the path of liberation (*vimuktimārga*)?** It is the path by means of which, when the defilements are destroyed (*prahīṇe kleśe*), one experiences (*sātṣātkaroti*) liberation (*vimukti*).

CAD.2.4.1.i.

THE SPECIAL PATH (VIŠEṢAMĀRGA)

(9) **What is the special path (*višeṣamārga*)?** For a variety of defilements other than the preceding ones (*tadanyasya kleśaprakārasya*), the path of application, the immediate path and the path of liberation are

²⁸⁴ It should be noted here that in regard to the Path there are three fundamental categories: weak (*mṛdu*), medium (*madhya*) and strong (*adhimātra*). When they are again divided into weak, medium and strong, their number is brought to nine: weak-weak, weak-medium and weak-strong; medium-weak, medium-medium and medium-strong; strong-weak, strong-medium and strong-strong. Similarly, the defilements are divided into nine groups: strong-strong, etc. It is interesting to note that by means of the weak-weak (*mṛdu-mṛdu*) path, i.e., practice which is not strong or intense but preliminary, one destroys at the beginning the strong or intense (*adhimātra*) defilements, i.e., the most coarse or most manifest defilements....It is by means of the strong-strong (*adhimātrādhimātra*) path, i.e. the most intensified and most developed practice, that one finally destroys the weak-weak defilements, i.e. the subtle and latent defilements. (This is the same as *anupūrvapratipadā* ‘gradual practice or ‘gradual path’). To quote a classical image: When washing cloth, one cleans first the most visible stains, and at the end, the small stains. To dissipate a deep darkness, a small lamp is sufficient; but a strong lamp is necessary to dissipate a slight darkness. See Kjośa, VI, p. 199.

called the special path (*prayogānantaryavimuktimārgāḥ viśeṣamārgaḥ*). The special path is also be the path of an individual who, giving up the application of the destruction of the defilements (*kleśaprāhanaprayoga*), is engaged (*prayukta*) in reflecting on the doctrine (truth) (*dharmaśintāyām*), or in conduct according to the doctrine (*dharmaśīhāre*), or in some special meditative attainment (*samāpattiviśeṣe*). Or also, it may be the path of an individual who is cultivating special qualities (*vaiśeṣikān guṇān*).²⁸⁵

CAD.2.4.2.

THE FOUR WAYS OF CULTIVATION OF THE PATH

What is cultivation of the Path (*mārgabhbāvanā*)? It consists of cultivation (meditation) with the view of

- (i) acquisition (*pratilambhabhbāvanā*),
- (ii) frequent practice (*nīṣevanabhbāvanā*),
- (iii) deliverance (or purification) (*nirdhāvanabhbāvanā*)²⁸⁶ and
- (iv) counteragent (*pratipakṣabhbāvanā*),²⁸⁷

(i) What is cultivation with the view of acquisition (*pratilambha-bhbāvanā*)? It is the meditation with the view of producing wholesome qualities that have not yet been produced (*anuppannānām kuśalānām dharmāṇām utpādāya*).²⁸⁸

(ii) What is meditation with the view of frequent practice (*nīṣevanabhbāvanā*)? It is meditation with the view of stability, of absence of confusion (so as not to forget), of multiplying, of increasing and growth of the wholesome qualities that have already been produced (*utpannānām kuśalānām dharmaṇam sthitaye asammoṣāya bhūyobhbāvāya vrddhivipulatāyai*).²⁸⁹

(iii) What is meditation with the view of deliverance (or purification, *nirdhāvanabhbāvanā*)? It is the meditation with the view of destroying the demeritorious and unwholesome qualities that have already been produced (*utpannānām pāpakānām akusalānām dharmāṇām prahāṇāya*).²⁹⁰

²⁸⁵ For details on *prayogamārga*, *ānataryamārga*, *vimuktimārga* and *viśeṣmārga* see Kośa, V, pp. 103, 104

²⁸⁶ *Nirdhāvana* can be derived either from *nir+dhāv*, ‘to run’ (thus ‘to save oneself’), ‘to escape, to few oneself’, or from *nir+dhāv* ‘to cleanse, to wash’, (hence ‘to purify’). Both of these fit this case. Here *nirdhāvana* means to escape or be freed from unwholesome and bad ideas and qualities which occur in oneself, i.e., to purify oneself from bad ideas and qualities.

²⁸⁷ This fourfold division of *mārgabhbāvanā* is exactly the same as the fourfold division of the *samyagvyāyama* (of the Noble Eightfold Path) or of the *samyakpradhāna*, as will be seen according to the following definitions compared with those of the Pali texts. (In the Pali texts only the order is different, the first two terms being given last and the last two first).

²⁸⁸ Cf. *anuppannānām kusalānām dhammānām uppādāya*. D II, p. 312; M II, p. 11; A II, p. 15.

²⁸⁹ Cf. *utpannānām kusalānām dhammānām ṭhitiyā asammoṣāya bhūyobhbāvāya vepullāya bhāvanāya pāripūriyā*, ibid.

²⁹⁰ Cf. *utpannānām pāpakānām akusalānām dhammānām pahānāya*, ibid.

(iv) **What is meditation with the view of counteragent (*pratipakṣa-bhāvanā*)?** It is the meditation with the view of the non-production of demeritorious unwholesome qualities that have not yet been produced (*anutpannāñ pāpakāñ ñakuśalāñ dhammāñ anutpādāya*).²⁹¹

Moreover,

- (i) the Path, when it appears (*utpadyamāna*), sets up (*avasthāpayati*) its traces or imprints (*svām vāsanām*): this is meditation with the view of acquisition (*pratilambha-bhāvanā*).
- (ii) The path itself, when one encounters it directly (*sammukhibhūta*), becomes the meditation (*bhāvanā*): this is the meditation with the view of frequent practice (*niṣevanabhāvanā*).
- (iii) The same path abandons (*vijahāti*) its obstacle (*svam āvaraṇam*): this is the meditation with the view of liberation (*nirdhāvanabhāvanā*).
- (iv) The same path sets up (*avasthāpayati*) the abandoned obstacle (*vihīnam āvaraṇam*) in such a way that it will not reappear in the future (*āyatāñ anutpattidharmatāyām*): this is the meditation with the view of counteragent (*pratipakṣabhbāvanā*).

CAD.2.4.3. **FOUR KINDS OF COUNTERAGENTS**

Furthermore, the counteragent (*pratipakṣa*) is fourfold: the counteragent of

- (1) criticism (*vidūṣanāpratipakṣa*),
- (2) abandoning (*prahāṇapratipakṣa*),
- (3) assistance (*ādhārapratipakṣa*) and
- (4) distancing (*dūrībhāvapratipakṣa*)

these are called meditation with the view of counteragent (*pratipakṣabhbāvanā*).

- (1) What is the counteragent of criticism (*vidūṣanāpratipakṣa*)? It is seeing the bad consequences (*ādīnavadarśanam*) of impure conditioned things (*sāsraveśu saṃskāreśu*).
- (2) What is the counteragent of abandoning (*prahāṇapratipakṣa*)? It is the Path of application and the immediate path (*prayogānantaryamārgaḥ*) mentioned above.
- (3) What is the counteragent of assistance (*ādhārapratipakṣa*)? It is the path of liberation (*vimuktimārga*) mentioned above.
- (4) What is the counteragent of distancing (*dūrībhāvapratipakṣa*)? It is the following path, i.e., the *višeśamārga* mentioned above.

CAD.2.4.4. **ELEVEN TYPES OF PATH**

Moreover,

²⁹¹ Cf. *anuppannāñ pāpakāñ akusalāñ dhammāñ anuppādāya*, ibid.

- (1) the path of examining things (*vastupariksāmārga*),²⁹²
- (2) the path of energetic exertion (*vyāvasāyikamārga*),²⁹³
- (3) the path of preparation with the view of meditative stabilization (*saṁādhipariksāmārga*),²⁹⁴
- (4) the path of application with the view of perfect understanding (*abhisamayaprāyogikamārga*),²⁹⁵
- (5) the path supporting perfect understanding (*abhisamayaśiṣṭamārga*),²⁹⁶
- (6) the path of perfect understanding (*abhisamayamārga*),²⁹⁷
- (7) the path leading to purity and emancipation (*viśuddhinairyāṇikamārga*),²⁹⁸
- (8) the path divided according to the bases and faculties (*niśrayendriyabhinnamārga*),²⁹⁹
- (9) the path of purification by means of the three trainings (*śikṣātrayapariśodhanamārga*),³⁰⁰
- (10) the path producing all the good qualities (*sarvagunanirhārakamārga*)³⁰¹ and
- (11) the path including the totality of the paths (*mārgasamgrahamārga*)³⁰²

all of these are called the Path.

CAD.2.4.5.

37 QUALITIES CONTRIBUTING TO AWAKENING, ETC.

This Path also includes respectively (*yathākramam*)

- (i) the thirty-seven qualities contributing to awakening (*saptatrimśad bodhipakṣadharma*),³⁰³

²⁹² This refers to the four *smṛtyupasthānas* explained below. Here *vastu* means *kāya* (body), *vedana* (sensation), *citta* (mind) and *dharma* (mental qualities and objects).

²⁹³ This refers to the four *samyakpradhānas* explained below.

²⁹⁴ This refers to the four *rddhipādas* explained below.

²⁹⁵ This refers to the five *indriyas* explained below.

²⁹⁶ This refers to the five *balas* explained below.

²⁹⁷ This refers to the seven *bodhyāgas* explained below.

²⁹⁸ This refers to the Eightfold Noble Path explained below.

²⁹⁹ This refers to the four *pratipads* explained below.

³⁰⁰ This refers to the four *dharmapadas* explained below.

³⁰¹ This refers to *śamatha* and *vipaśanā* explained below.

³⁰² This refers to the three *indriyas* explained below.

³⁰³ The thirty-seven *bodhipakṣadharma* are:

<i>smṛtyupasthāna</i>	4
-----------------------	---

<i>samyakpradhāna</i>	4
-----------------------	---

<i>rddhipāda</i>	4
------------------	---

- (ii) the four practices (*catasrah pratipadah*),
- (iii) the four stages of virtue (*catvāri dharmapadāni*),
- (iv) tranquility and insight (*śamatha-vipaśyanā*) and
- (v) the three faculties (*triṇī indriyāni*).³⁰⁴

CAD.2.4.5.a.

THE 37 QUALITIES CONTRIBUTING TO AWAKENING

CAD.2.4.5.aa.

THE FOUR APPLICATIONS OF MINDFULNESS (SMRTYUPASTHĀNA)

With regard to the applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*), one should understand

- (1) the object (*ālambana*),
- (2) the nature (*svabhāva*),
- (3) the accompaniment (*sahāya*, concomitance),
- (4) the cultivation (*bhāvanā*) and
- (5) the result of cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*)

<i>indriya</i>	5
<i>bala</i>	5
<i>bodhyāṅga</i>	7
<i>āryamārgāṅga</i>	<u>8</u>

37

These are explained in the following pages. They are exactly the same as in the post-canonical Pali sources. For example, see Vsm. p. 678 and following. See also Kośa, VI, p. 281. But the canonical Pali texts do not give all thirty-seven qualities under the term *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. S V, pp. 227, 237-9 gives only the five *indriyas* ‘faculties’ (*saddhā, viriya, sati, samādhi, paññā*) as *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. Vbh, p. 249 gives only the seven *bojjanigas* as *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. A III, pp. 70, 300-1 uses only the term *bodhipakkhiya dhamma* without mentioning their number or enumerating them. D II, p. 120, M III, p. 289 and A IV, p. 125 give all the thirty-seven qualities (*cattāro satipaṭṭhānā cattāro sammappadhāna*, etc.) without calling them *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. But A IV, p. 203 (*Pahārāda-sutta*) comparing the *dhamma-vinaya* Doctrine and Discipline to the *mahāsamudda* (great ocean) enumerates the thirty-seven qualities and calls them metaphorically *ratana* (jewels), but not *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. D II, p. 120 simply calls them *dhammā*. D III, p. 102 calls them *kusalā dhammā*. Vbh, p. 372 gives all thirty-seven and calls them *saddhammo* but not *bodhipakkhiyā dhammā*. These examples indicate that the list of the *bodhipakkhiya dhammā* was not fixed definitively under this term during the canonical period.

³⁰⁴ This phrase shows that the eleven categories of the path mentioned above correspond to the various virtues and practices given here as follows: 1. *vastupariṣamārga* (= 4 *smṛtyupasthānas*); 2. *vyāvasāyikamārga* (= 4 *samyakpradhānas*); 3. *saṃādhiparikarmamārga* (= 4 *rddhipādas*); 4. *abhisamayaprāyogikamārga* (= 5 *indriyas*); 5. *abhisamayaśiṣṭamārga* (= 5 *balas*); 6. *abhisamayamārga* (= 7 *bodhyāṅgas*); 7. *viśuddhinairiyāṇikamārga* (= Noble Eightfold Path); 8. *niśrayendriyabhinnamārga* (= 4 *pratipads*); 9. *śikṣātrayapariśodhanamārga* (= 4 *dharma padas*); 10. *sarvaguṇanirhārakamārga* (= *śamatha-vipaśanā*); 11. *mārgasaṃgrahamārga* (= 3 *indriyas*)

in the same way as one understands the object, etc., in reference to the other virtues contributing to awakening (*bodhipakṣa*).

- (1) **What are the objects (*ālambana*) of application of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*)?** These are the body (*kāya*), sensation (*vedanā*), mind (*citta*) and the qualities and mental objects (*dharma*). Or, these are the things belonging to oneself (*ātmāśrayavastu*), the things experienced by oneself (*ātmopabhogavastu*), oneself (*ātmavastu*) and the qualities belonging to defilement and purification of oneself (*ātmasamkleśa-vyavadānavastu*).
- (2) **What is the nature (*svabhāva*) of the application of mindfulness?** It is wisdom (*prajñā*) and attentiveness (*smṛti*).
- (3) **What is its accompaniment (*sahāya*)?** It is the mind and mental activities associated with application of mindfulness (*tatsamprayuktāś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).
- (4) **What is its cultivation (*bhāvanā*)?** It is the observation (*anupaśyanā*) of the body, etc., with regard to the inner body (*adhyātmamūkā kāya*) as well as in regard to the outer (*bahirdhā*) and the inner-outer body (*adhyātmabahirdhā*).

What is the inner body? It is the inner material spheres (bases) (*ādhyātmikāni rūpiṇyāyatānāni*).³⁰⁵

What is the outer body (*bahirdhā kāya*)? It is the outer material spheres (bases) (*bahirdhā rūpiṇyāyatānāni*).³⁰⁶

What is the inner-outer body (*adhyātmabahirdhākāya*)? It is the outer spheres (*bāhyāyatana*) which are the seats of the faculties (*indriyādhīṣṭhāna*)³⁰⁷ and which are linked with the inner spheres (*ādhyātmikāyatanaśambadha*); these are also the inner material spheres belonging to others (*pārasāntānikāni c' ādhyātmikāni rūpiṇyāyatānāni*).³⁰⁸

What is observation with regard to the body (*kāye kāyānupaśyanā*)?³⁰⁹ It is observation of the identity (or similarity) (*samatāpaśyanā*) of the natural image of the body (*prakṛtibimbakāyasya*) with the imagined counter-image of the body (*vikalpapratibimbakāyena*).

³⁰⁵ The inner material spheres or bases (*ādhyātmikāni rūpiṇyāyatānāni*) are : eye (*cakṣu*), ear (*śrotra*), nose (*ghrāṇa*), tongue (*jihvā*) and body (*kāya*).

³⁰⁶ The outer material spheres or bases (*bahirdhā rūpiṇyāyatānāni*) are: visible forms (*rūpa*), sound (*śabda*), smell (*gandha*), taste (*rasa*) and tangible (*spraṣṭavya*).

³⁰⁷ Here the word ‘faculty’ means the eye, etc. They reside on the outer spheres such as visible forms, sounds, etc.

³⁰⁸ The inner material spheres belonging to others are *cakṣu* (eye), *śrotra* (ear), *ghrāṇa* (nose), *jihvā* (tongue) and *kāya* (body) of other people which are the outer material spheres for oneself. The inner spheres of A become the outer spheres for B.

³⁰⁹ Lit., observation of the body with regard to the body.

What is inner sensation (*adhyātmam* *vedanā*)? It is the sensation produced as a result of one's own body.

What is outer sensation (*bahirdhā* *vedanā*)? It is the sensation produced as a result of the outer body.

What is inner-outer sensation (*adhyātmabahirdhā* *vedanā*)? It is the sensation produced as a result of the inner-outer body.³¹⁰ In the same way as with sensation, so for mind (*citta*), qualities and mental objects (*dharma*). One should understand observation in regard to sensations, etc., respectively, in the same way as observation in regard to the body.

Moreover, **cultivation** (*bhāvanā*) concerns

- (i) wish (*chanda*),
 - (ii) energy (*vīrya*),
 - (iii) effort (*vyāyāma*),
 - (iv) perseverance (*utsāha*),
 - (v) energetic action (*utsūḍhi*),
 - (vi) not slackening (*aprativāni*),
 - (vii) attentiveness (*smṛti*), (
 - (viii) mindfulness (*samprajanya*) and
 - (ix) diligence (*apramāda*).³¹¹
- (i) The development of volition (*chandabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of lack of attentiveness (*amanasikāropakleśa*). (ii) The development of energy (*vīryabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of laziness (*kausīdyopakleśa*).
 - (iii) The development of effort (*vyāyāmabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilements of torpor and excitement (*layauddhatyopakleśa*).
 - (iv) The development of perseverance (*utsāhabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of mental apathy (*cetaso līnatvopakleśa*).
 - (v) The development of energetic action (*utsūḍhibhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilements of discouragement, distress and fatigue (*viśādaparisrava-parikhedopakleśa*).

³¹⁰ The inner-outer body (*adhyātmabahirdhākāya*) as explained above in this paragraph.

³¹¹ Cf. ...*cando ca vāyāmo ca ussāho ca ussolhi ca appatīvāni ca sati ca sampajaññañca...* A II, p. 93, 195; III, p. 307; IV, 320; S V, p. 440.

- (vi) The development of not slackening (*aprativāñibhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of satisfaction with the acquiring (obtaining) of a little of what is wholesome (*alpamātrakuśalaśaṁtuṣṭi*).
 - (vii) The development of attentiveness (*smṛtibhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of confusion (forgetfulness) (*sammoṣa*) with regard to the teachings of the Blessed One (*bhagavataḥ śasane*).
 - (viii) The cultivation of mindfulness (*samprajanyabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of regret concerning transgressions (*āpattivipratisāra*).
 - (ix) The development of diligence (*apramādabhāvanā*) is accomplished by counteracting the minor defilement of abandoning obligations with respect to the wholesome (*kuśaleṣu nikṣiptadhura*).
- (5) What is the result of cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*) of the application of mindfulness?** It is the abandonment of the four errors (*viparyasa*),³¹² entry into the four Truths, and detachment from the body (*kāya*), etc.

CAD.2.4.5.ab.

THE FOUR KINDS OF RIGHT EXERTION (SAMYAKPRADHĀNA)

(1) What is the object (*ālamabana*) of the four kinds of right exertion (*samyak-pradhāna*)?

It is:

- (i) the produced (*utpanna*),
- (ii) the not yet produced (*anutpanna*),
- (iii) the adverse (*vipakṣa*, opposite) and
- (iv) the counteragent (*pratipakṣa*).³¹³

(2) What is their nature (*svabhāva*)? It is effort (*vyāyāma*).

(3) What is their accompaniment (*sahāya*)? It is the mind and the mental activities associated with them (*tatsamprayuktāś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).

(4) What is their cultivation (*bhāvanā*)? The sūtra says: One produces the wish (*chandam janayati*), one exerts oneself (*vyāyacchate*), one makes an energetic effort (*vīryam ārabhate*), one uses one's mind

³¹² The four errors (*viparyāsa*) are: to consider that which is impermanent (*anitya*) as permanent (*nitya*), that which is suffering (*duḥkha*) as happiness (*sukha*), that which is impure (*aśubha, aśuchi*) as pure (*śubha, śuchi*) and that which is not the self (*anātma*) as the self (*ātma*). See Kośa, V, p. 21.

³¹³ That is to say, *utpannakuśala* (the wholesome that is already produced), *anutpannakuśala* (the wholesome not yet produced), *akuśala* (the unwholesome already produced) and the counteragents hindering the appearance of the unwholesome not yet produced.

vigorously (*cittam pragṛhṇāti*) and one trains it (*pradadhāti*).³¹⁴ This is how cultivation by energy is explained.

The basis (*āśraya*) is the wish (*chanda*); energy (*vīrya*) is zeal (*udyoga*). One produces the wish (*chanda*) for tranquility (*śamatha*), energetic activity (*pragraha*), equanimity (*upekṣā*) and attentiveness concerning an object (*nimittamanasikāra*). One makes an energetic effort (*vīryam ārabhate*) to rid oneself of torpor and excitement (*layauddhatya*). Thus, after that, one can say that one uses one's mind vigorously and trains it (*cittam pragṛhṇāti pradadhāti*).

(5) What is the result of the cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*) of right exertion? It is the complete abandonment of opposing qualities (*vipakṣa*) and the acquiring and increase of counteracting qualities (*pratipakṣa*). This is the result of its cultivation.

CAD.2.4.5.ac.

THE FOUR FOUNDATIONS OF SUPERNORMAL POWERS (*RDDHIPĀDA*)

(1) What is the object (*ālambana*) of the four foundations of supernormal powers (*rddhipāda*)? It is the task to be accomplished by means of the attained concentration (*samādhi*).

(2) What is their nature (*svabhāva*)? It is concentration (*samādhi*).

(3) What is their accompaniment (*sahāya*)? It is

- (i) the wish (*chanda*),
- (ii) energy (*vīrya*),
- (iii) mind (*citta*),
- (iv) investigation (*mīmāṃsā*) and mind and associated mental activities (*tatsamprayuktāś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).

(i) What is meditative stabilization by the wish (*chandasamādhi*)? It is the focusing (*cittasyaikāgratā*) attained by the proper application of the will.³¹⁵

(ii) What is meditative stabilization by energy (*vīryasamādhi*)? It is the focusing of the mind (*cittasyaikāgratā*) attained by the constant application of energy.³¹⁶

(iii) What is meditative stabilization by the mind (*cittasamādhi*)? It is the focusing of the mind attained by the power of the preceding developed concentration.³¹⁷

³¹⁴ Cf. ...*chandam janeti vāyamati viriyam ārabhati cittam pagganhāti padahati...* D III, p. 221; A II, p. 15; S V, p. 269; Vbh, p. 216.

³¹⁵ Cf. Vbh, p. 216: *chandam ce bhikkhu adhipatim kariyā labhati samādhim labhati cittassa ekaggatam: ayam vuccati chandasamādhi.*

³¹⁶ Cf. Vbh, p. 217: *viriyam ce bhikkhu adhipatim kariyā labhati samādhim labhati cittassa ekaggatam: ayam vuccati viriyasamādhi.*

(iv) What is meditative stabilization by investigation (*mīmāṃsāsamādhi*)? It is the one-pointed focusing of the mind attained thanks to the hearing (study) of the doctrine and by inner reflection.³¹⁸

Furthermore,

- (i) meditative stabilization by the wish (*chandasamādhi*) is the focusing of the mind (*cittasyaikāgratā*) attained by producing the wish.
- (ii) Meditative stabilization by energy (*vīryasamādhi*) is the focusing of the mind attained by making an energetic effort.
- (iii) Meditative stabilization by the mind (*cittasamādhi*) is the focusing of the mind attained by using the mind.
- (iv) Meditative stabilization by investigation (*mīmāṃsāsamādhi*) is the focusing of the mind attained by using the mind vigorously.

(4) What is their cultivation (*bhāvanā*)? It is the practice of the eight conditions of practice (*pradhānasamāskāra*).

What are these eight conditions? They are:

- (1) wish (*chanda*),
- (2) effort (*vyāyāma*),
- (3) faith (*śraddha*),
- (4) relaxation (*praśrabdhī*),
- (5) attentiveness (*smṛti*),
- (6) introspection (*samprajanya*),
- (7) will (*cetanā*) and
- (8) equanimity (*upeksā*).³¹⁹

These eight conditions are again grouped into four categories consisting of:

- (a) energetic effort (*vyāvasāyika*),³²⁰

³¹⁷ The definition of *cittasamādhi* given in Vbh, p. 218 is different: *cittam ce bhikkhu adhipatiṃ kārityā labhati samādhiṃ labhati cittassa ekaggatām: ayam vuccati cittasamādhi*.

³¹⁸ The definition of *vīmaṇsāsamādhi* (= *mīmāṃsāsamādhi*) given by Vbh, p. 219 is different: *vīmaṇsaṃ ce bhikkhu adhipatiṃ kārityā labhati samādhiṃ labhati cittassa ekaggatām: ayam vuccati vīmaṇsāsamādhi*.

³¹⁹ Vbh, p. 217 explains the word *padhānasamākhāra* (= *pradhānasamāskāra*) differently and does not give these eight qualities: *Tattha katamo padhānasamākhāra? Yo cetasiko viriyārambho nikkamo parakkamo uyyāmo vāyāmo ussāho ussojhi thāmo dhiti asithilaparakkamatā anikkhittachandatā anikkhittaduratā dhurasampaggāho viriyam viriyindriyam viriyabalam sammāvāyāmo: ayam vuccati padhānasamākhāro*.

- (b) facilitation (*anugrāhaka*),³²¹
- (c) connection (*aupanibandhika*)³²² and
- (d) counteragent (*pratipakṣika*).³²³

Furthermore, the cultivation (*bhāvanā*) of (i) aspiration (*chanda*), (ii) energy (*vīrya*), (iii) mind (*citta*) and (iv) investigation (*mīmāṃsā*) is twofold:

- (a) the cultivation of abandoning restriction (*samkṣepa*) and distraction (*vikṣepa*) and the
- (b) cultivation of diligence (*alīnatva*) and of non-distraction (*avikṣepa*) and the compliance based on both of these.

(5) What is the result of the cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*) of the foundations of the supernormal powers? It is the clear understanding of the Truth (*dharmaḥijñā*) at will and the manifestation of higher knowledge (supernormal powers) (*abhijñāpradarśana*).

The result also consists of: acquisition (*adhibhaga*), obtainment (*prāpti*), flexibility (*karmaṇyatā*), mastery (*vaśita*) and activity (*kāritra*) in regard to various things, and in the accomplishing at will of such things as various marvels (*rddhi*), and in the attainment of higher qualities (*adhiguna*).

CAD.2.4.5.ad. **THE FIVE FACULTIES (PAÑCENDRIYA)**

- (1) What is the object (*ālamabana*) of the five faculties (*pañcendriya*)?** It is the four noble Truths (*catvāryāryasatyāni*).
- (2) What is their nature (*svabhāva*)?** It is faith (*śraddhā*), energy (*vīrya*), attentiveness (*smṛti*), concentration (*samādhi*) and wisdom (*prajñā*).³²⁴
- (3) What is their accompaniment (*sahāya*)?** It is the mind and associated mental activities (*tatsamprayuktaś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).
- (4) What is their cultivation (*bhāvana*)?** It is

- (i) the cultivation of application (*prayogabhāvanā*), by means of the faculty of faith (*śraddhendriya*), with the view of producing complete and strong conviction (*abhisampratyaya-samutthāna*) in regard to the Truths;

³²⁰ *Chanda* (volition) and *vyāyāma* (effort) are *vyāvasāyika*.

³²¹ *Śraddhā* (faith) and *praśrabdhī* (relaxation) are *anugrāhaka*.

³²² *Smṛti* (attentiveness) and *samprajanya* (introspection/mindfulness) are *aupanibandhika*.

³²³ *Cetanā* (will) and *upekṣā* (equanimity) are *prātipakṣika*.

³²⁴ Vbh, p. 341 gives the same list.

- (ii) the cultivation of application, by means of the faculty of energy (*vīryendriya*), with the view of producing effort (*vyāyāma*) so as to complete the already arisen strong conviction in regard to the Truths;
- (iii) the cultivation of application, by means of the faculty of attentiveness (*smṛtīndriya*), with the view of producing non-confusion (non-forgetfulness, *asammoṣa*), for the purpose of maintaining attentiveness (*smṛti*) in the person who is making an energetic effort in regard to the Truths;
- (iv) the cultivation of application, by means of the faculty of meditative stabilization (*samādhīndriya*), with the view of producing one-pointedness of mind (*cittaikāgratā*) in the person who is maintaining attentiveness (*smṛti*) in regard to the Truths; the cultivation of application, by means of the faculty of wisdom (*prajñendriya*), with the view of producing investigation (*pravicaya*) in the person whose mind is concentrated on the Truths.

(5) What is the result of the cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*) of the five faculties? It is the accomplishment of acquiescence to the supreme mundane qualities by the production of the understanding of the Truths and by the preparation for the state of heat (*uṣmagata*) and the state of summit (*mūrdha*).

CAD.2.4.5.ae.

THE FIVE POWERS (*PAṄCABALA*)

As with the five faculties, so for the five powers (*paṅcabala*). They are called powers because they crush and wipe out the dangers that are opposed to them, and because of their superiority.

CAD.2.4.5.af.

THE SEVEN FACTORS OF AWAKENING (*SAPTA-BODHYĀṄGA*)

(1) What is the object (*ālambana*) of the seven factors of awakening (*sapta-bodhyāṅga*)? It is the true nature of the four Noble Truths.

(2) What is their nature (*svabhāva*)? It is

- (i) attentiveness (*smṛti*),
 - (ii) investigation into the teachings (*dharma-vicaya*),
 - (iii) energy (*vīrya*),
 - (iv) joy (*prīti*),
 - (v) serenity (*praśrabdhi*),
 - (vi) concentration (*samādhi*) and
 - (vii) equanimity (*upekṣā*).
- (i) Attentiveness is the basis factor (*sanniśrayāṅga*);
 - (ii) investigation into the Truths is the nature factor (*svabhāvāṅga*);
 - (iii) energy is the exit factor (*niryāṇāṅga*);
 - (iv) joy is the beneficial factor (*anuśāmsāṅga*);

(v-vii) serenity, concentration and equanimity are the stainless factors (*asamkleśāṅga*) as a result of the absence of stains, association with the absence of stains and the nature of the absence of stains.

(3) What is their accompaniment (*sahāya*)? It is the mind and associated mental factors (*tatsamprayuktāś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).

(4) What is their cultivation (*bhāvanā*)? It is the development of attentiveness as a factor of awakening (*smṛtisambodhyāṅga*) associated with discrimination (*vivekaniśrita*), detachment (*virāganiśrita*), cessation (*nirodhanīśrita*) and turned towards abandonment (*vyavasargapariṇāta*).³²⁵ As it is with attentiveness as factor of awakening, so it is for equanimity as factor of awakening (*upeksāsambodhyāṅga*).³²⁶ The development of the factors of awakening having as object the four Truths is explained by these four terms respectively.³²⁷

(5) What is the result of the cultivation (*bhāvanāphala*) of the factors of awakening? It is the abandonment of the defilements that should be abandoned by vision (*darśana*).

CAD.2.4.5.ag.

THE EIGHT FACTORS OF THE NOBLE PATH (AŚTA ĀRYAMĀRGĀṄGA)

(1) What is the object (*ālambana*) of the eight factors of the Noble Path (aśta āryamārgāṅga)? It is the real nature (*yathābhūtatā*) of the Four Noble Truths.

(2) What is their nature (*svabhāva*)? It is

- (i) right view (*samyagdrṣṭi*),
 - (ii) right thought (*samyaksamkalpa*),
 - (iii) right speech (*samyagvāc*),
 - (iv) right action (*samyakkarmānta*),
 - (v) right livelihood (*magājīva*),
 - (vi) right effort (*samyagvyāyāma*),
 - (vii) right attentiveness (*samyaksmṛti*) and
 - (viii) right concentration (*samyaksamādhi*).³²⁸
- (i) Right view is the factor of discernment, correct discrimination (*paricchedāṅga*);

³²⁵ Cf. *satisambojjāṅgam bhāveti vivekanissitam vīraganissitam nirodhanissitam vossaggapariṇāmim*. D III, p. 226; M II, p. 12, III, p. 275; Vbh, p. 229.

³²⁶ I.e. the other Factors of Awakening are also associated with discrimination, etc.

³²⁷ I.e. *vivekaniśrita* refers to *duhkhasatya*, *virāganiśrita* refers to *samudayasatya*, *nirodhanośrita* refers to *nirodhasatya* and *vyavasargapariṇāta* refers to *mārgasatya*.

³²⁸ The very same list of the eight factors of the Noble Path is found throughout the Pali texts, e.g. D II, p. 311; M I, p. 15; A I, p. 177; S V, p. 421; Vbh, p. 104, etc.

- (ii) right thought is the factor producing harmonious contact with others (*parasamprāpanāṅga*);²¹⁴
- (iii) right speech,
- (iv) right action and
- (v) right livelihood are the factors producing trust in others (*parasampratyayāṅga*) as a result of purity of view, of morality and of livelihood (*dṛṣṭisīlajīvaviśuddhi*),²¹⁵
- (vi) right effort is the factor that brings relief from the major defilements (*kleśāvaraṇaviśodhanāṅga*);²¹⁶
- (vii) right attentiveness is the factor that brings relief from the minor defilements (*upakleśāvaraṇaviśodhanāṅga*),²¹⁷
- (viii) right concentration is the factor that frees the obstructions to the special qualities (supernormal qualities) (*vaiśeṣikaguṇāvaraṇaviśodhanāṅga*).²¹⁸

(3) What is their accompaniment (*sahāya*)? It is the mind and the mental activities associated with them (*tatsamprayuktaś cittacaitasikā dharmāḥ*).

(4) What is their cultivation (*bhāvanā*)? It is the same as those of the Factors of Awakening (*bodhyāṅga*).

(5) What is the result of their development (*bhāvanāphala*)? It consists of discernment, harmonious contact with others, trust on the part of others, freedom from the obstructions of the major and minor defilements and freedom from the obstructions to the special qualities.

CAD.2.4.5.b.

THE FOUR PRACTICES (PRATIPADAH)

What are the four practices (*catasrah pratipadah*)? These are:

²¹⁴ Right thought (*samyaksamkalpa*) consists of the thought of renunciation, of abandoning the possession of desires (*naiṣkramyasaṃkalpa*), of the thought of compassion, of loving-kindness (*avyāpādasamkalpa*), and of the thought of non-violence (*avihimsāsaṃkalpa*). D II, p. 312. These thoughts produce social harmony. This is why right thought is called the factor that produces harmony with others.

Right Speech (*samyagvāc*) is that which is without lies, scandal, coarseness or harmful gossip. Right action (*samyakkarmānta*) is that which is without harm to life, without theft and without sexual misconduct. Right livelihood (*samyagjīva*) is that which does not consist of professions harmful to others, e.g. trade in weapons, trade in animals for butchering, trade in poisons, intoxicating drink, etc. D II, p. 312. These three factors contribute to trust and mutual safety. That is why they are called the factors producing trust in others (*parasampratyayāṅga*).

²¹⁵ Right effort (*samyagvyāyāma*) is the same as *samyakpradhāna* explained above. See also D II, p. 312.

²¹⁶ Right attentiveness (*samyaksmṛti*) is the same as *smṛtyupasthāna* explained above. See also D II, p. 313.

²¹⁷ Right concentration (*samyaksamādhi*) refers to the four *rūpāvacaradhyānas* (= *vaiśeṣikaguna*) explained above. See also D II, p. 313.

- (i) the painful practice producing superior knowledge slowly (*duḥkhā pratipad dhandhābhijñā*),
 - (ii) the painful practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*duḥkhā pratipad kṣiprābhijñā*),
 - (iii) the pleasant practice producing superior knowledge slowly (*sukhā pratipad dhandhābhijñā*) and
 - (iv) the pleasant practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*sukhā pratipad kṣiprābhijñā*).³³²
- (i) The first consists of the fundamental concentrations (*mauladhyāna*)³³³ not obtained by those whose faculties are weak (*mṛdvindriya*);³³⁴
 - (ii) the second consists of the fundamental concentrations not obtained by those whose faculties are sharp (*tīkṣṇendriya*);
 - (iii) the third consists of the fundamental concentrations obtained by those whose faculties are weak; and
 - (iv) the fourth consists of the fundamental concentrations obtained by those whose faculties are sharp.³³⁵

³³² The same four practices are found in D III, p. 106; A II, pp. 149, 154, V, p. 63: *Catasso imā bhikkhave paṭipadā. Katamā catasso? Dukkhā paṭipadā dandhābhijñā, dukkhāpaṭipadā khippābhijñā, sukhāpaṭipadā dandhābhijñā, sukhā paṭipadā khippābhijñā. Ime kho bhikkhave catasso paṭipadā ti.*

It is interesting to note here that, in a conversation between Mogallāna and Sāriputta, the former confided that he had attained the state of arhant by the painful practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*dukkhā paṭipadā khippābhijñā*), whereas the latter confided that he had attained it by the pleasant practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*sukhā paṭipadā khippābhijñā*). A II, pp. 154-5.

³³³ The *mauladhyānas* are the four *dhyānas* and the four *ārūpyas*. See Kośa, chap. VIII, p. 145.

³³⁴ Here these faculties (*indriya*) are *śraddhā* (faith), *vīrya* (energy), *smṛti* (attentiveness), *saṃādhi* (concentration) and *prajñā* (wisdom) as explained in A II, p. 149.

³³⁵ Cf. the explanation of the four *pratipads* given in A II, pp. 149-150: Someone is by nature excessively greedy (*tibbarāgajātiko*), angry (*tibbadosajātiko*) and ignorant (*tibbamohajātiko*), and frequently experiences the pain and suffering caused by greed, hatred and illusion, and his five faculties (*pañcincinriyāni*), namely faith (*saddhā*), energy (*viriya*), attentiveness (*sati*), concentration (*saṃādhi*) and wisdom (*paññā*) are weak (*mudūni*). As a result of the weakness of his five faculties, he arrives slowly at the insight leading to the destruction of the impurities (*āsavakkhaya*). This is called the painful practice producing superior knowledge slowly (*dukkha paṭipadā dandhābhijñā*).

Someone is excessively greedy ... and frequently experiences the suffering ..., but his five faculties are sharp. As a result of these sharp faculties he arrives quickly ... This is called the painful practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*dukkhā paṭipadā khippābhijñā*).

Someone is not excessively greedy and does not experience the pain and suffering produced by greed ... but his five faculties are weak. Thus he arrives slowly at the insight ... This is called the pleasant practice producing superior knowledge slowly (*sukhā paṭipadā dandhābhijñā*).

Someone is not excessively greedy ... and his five faculties are sharp. Thus he arrives quickly.... This is called the pleasant practice producing superior knowledge quickly (*sukhā paṭipadā khippābhijñā*).

CAD.2.4.5.c.

THE FOUR STAGES OF VIRTUE (*CATVĀRI DHARMAPADĀNI*)

What are the four stages of virtue (*catvāri dharmapadāni*)? These are

- (1) the absence of avarice (*anabhidyā*),
- (2) the absence of enmity (*avyāpāda*),
- (3) right attentiveness (*samyaksmṛti*) and
- (4) right concentration (*samyaksamādhi*).³³⁶

- (1-2) The purity of the discipline of superior morality (*adhiśīlaśikṣāviśuddhi*) belongs to those who are free of avarice and of enmity;
- (3) the purity of the discipline of superior mind (*adhicittasikṣāviśuddhi*) belongs to those who have right attentiveness;
- (4) the purity of the discipline of superior wisdom (*adhiprajñāviśuddhi*) belongs to those who have right concentration.³³⁷

CAD.2.4.5.d.

TRANQUILITY AND INSIGHT

What is tranquility (*śamatha*)? It is

- (1) the contraction (close binding) (*upanibandha*) of the mind (*citta*),
- (2) its fixation (*śthāpana*), its placement (*saṃsthāpana*),
- (3) its establishment (*avasthāpana*),
- (4) its maintenance (*upathāpana*),
- (5) its control (*damana*),
- (6) its calmness (*śamana*),
- (7) its tranquility (*vyupaśamana*),
- (8) its unification (*ekotikarana*),
- (9) its composition (*saṃdhāna*) in itself (*adhyātman*).

What is insight (*vipaśyanā*)? It is

- (1) investigation (*vicaya*),
- (2) search (*pravicaya*),

³³⁶ Pradhan's restoration which gives *alobhādvēṣāṇām* is obviously in error. Cf. DIII, p. 229; A II, p. 29: *cattāri dhammapadāni: anabhijjhā dhammapadām, avyāpādo dhammapadām, saṃmāsatī dhammapadām, saṃmāsaṃdhi dhammapadām*.

³³⁷ These three phrases refer respectively to the well-known three disciplines: *śīla*, *saṃādhi* and *prajñā*.

- (3) complete reasoning (*parivitarka*),
- (4) inquiry (*mīmāṃsā*) into things (*dharma*) such as the desires (*kāma*),
- (5) the counteragents (*pratipakṣa*),
- (6) disturbance (*dauṣṭhulya*),
- (7) objects (*nimitta*),
- (8) fetters (*samyojana*), such as the perversions (*viparyāsa*) of those who are oppressed by desires, and such as the establishment of those whose minds are not perverted.

Furthermore, with respect to tranquility and insight (*śamatha-vipaśyanā*), there are four paths:

- (i) A person is in possession of tranquility but not of insight: the cultivation of insight (*vipaśyanābhāvanā*) is prescribed for such tranquillity.
- (ii) A person is in possession of insight but not of tranquility: the cultivation of tranquility (*śamathabhāvanā*) is prescribed for insight.
- (iii) A person is not in possession of either tranquility or of insight: the simultaneous cultivation of both is prescribed to remove the torpor and the excitement of the mind of such a person.
- (iv) A person is in possession of both tranquility and insight: the progress of the person who has both tranquility and insight at the same time is simultaneous.

CAD.2.4.5.e.

THE THREE FACULTIES (*TRĪNĪNDRIYĀNI*)

What are the three faculties (*trīṇīndriyāni*)? They are:

- (i) the faculty of the mind “I will understand what (the truth) I do not understand” (*anājñātāmājñāsyāmīndriya*),
- (ii) the faculty of perfect knowledge of the Truth (*āññendriya*) and
- (iii) the faculty of the conviction “I have understood the Truth (*ānñātāvīndriya*).”³³⁸

³³⁸ Cf. Vbh, p. 124. *Tattha katamañ anaññātaññassāmītindriyam?* Yā tesam dhammānam aññātānam adīṭhānam appattānam aviditānam asacchikatānam sacchikiriyāya paññāpajānanā... amoho dhammadicayo sammādīṭhi dhammadicayasambhojanigo, maggaṅgam maggapariyāpannam: idam vuccati anaññātaññassāmītindriyam.

Tattha katamañ aññindriyam? Yā tesam dhammānam ñātānam diṭṭhānam ... sacchikatānam sacchikiriyāya paññā pajānanā ... amoho dhammadicayo sammādīṭhi ... idam vuccatiaññindriyam.

Tattha katamañ aññātāvīndriyam? Yā tesam aññātāvīnam dhammānam aññā paññā pajānanā ... amoho dhammadicayo sammādīṭhi ... idam vuccati aññātāvīndriyam.

See also Dhs v. 296, 364, 558; D III, p. 219; Kośa, chap. II, pp. 116-7.

(i) What is the faculty of the mind “I will understand what (the truth) I do not understand”? It is the faculty practiced in the path of application (*prayogamārga*) and in the first fifteen moments of mind (*cittakṣāṇa*) in the path of insight (*darśanamārga*).³³⁹

(ii) What is the faculty of perfect knowledge of the Truth? It is the faculty practiced in the entire path of learning (*śaikṣamārga*) beyond the fifteenth moment of mind in the path of insight.³⁴⁰

(iii) What is the faculty of the conviction “I have understood the Truth”? It is the faculty practiced in the path of no-more learning (*aśaikṣamārga*).³⁴¹

In the path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*) of those who are on the stage of the first absorption (*prathamadhyānabhūmi*), even the wholesome roots belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara kuśalamūla*) serve the meditation (*bhāvanā*) because they have obtained mastery over them. Just as the wholesome roots belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures are useful in meditation in the case of those who are on the stage of the first absorption, so the wholesome roots of the lower stages (*adhabhūmika kuśalamūla*) are useful in meditation in the path of cultivation of those who are on the higher levels (*ūrdhvabhūmika*) because they have obtained mastery over the wholesome roots of the lower levels.

CAD.2.5.

THE PATH OF CONCLUSION (*NIṢTHĀMĀRGĀ*).

5. What is the Path of conclusion, the Path of no-more-learning (*niṣṭhāmārga*)?

It is the diamond-like meditative stabilization (*vajropamasamādhi*) because it

- calms all disturbances (*sarvadauṣṭhulya*),
- abandons all fetters (*sarvasamyoga*) and
- brings liberation from all fetters (*sarvavismayoga*);³⁴²

after that, there is

- the activity of the fundamental transformation of the base (*nirantarāśrayaprvṛtti*),³⁴³
- the knowledge of the exhaustion of the defilements (*kṣayajñāna*),
- the knowledge of the non-appearance of the abandoned defilements (*anutpādajñāna*) and

³³⁹ The fifteen moments of mind in the path of insight are from *duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣānti* to *mārge’nvayajñānakṣānti*. See above and also Kośa, chap. VI, p. 191.

³⁴⁰ The sixteenth moment of mind in the path of insight is *mārge’nvayajñāna*. See above and also Kośa, chap. VI, p. 192.

³⁴¹ This means that *ājñātāvīndriya*, the faculty (of the conviction ‘I have understood the Truth) belongs to the arhant.

³⁴² *Vismayoga* is ‘disunion’, liberation from *kāmā* (sense pleasures), from *bhava* (existence and becoming), from *dīṭhi* (views and opinions) and from *avijjā* (ignorance). See D III, p. 230.

³⁴³ *Āśraya* is defined as *āśrayaparāvṛtti*.

- the ten qualities of the disciple who is beyond training (*daśa-aśaikṣadharma*).³⁴⁴

What are the ten qualities of the disciple who is beyond training? They are the eight factors of the Noble Path from the right view of the beyond-training disciple (*aśaikṣasya samyagdṛṣṭi*) up to the right concentration of the beyond-training disciple (*aśaikṣasya samyaksamādhi*), together with the right deliverance of the beyond-training disciple (*aśaikṣasya samyagvimukti*) and the right knowledge of the beyond-training disciple (*aśaikṣasya samyagjñāna*).³⁴⁵ These are called the path of conclusion (*niṣṭhāmārga*).

What is disturbance (*dauṣṭhulya*)? It is the disturbance caused by:

- 1) expression (word) (*abhilāpadauṣṭhulya*) that is omnipresent (*sarvatraga*),
- 2) sensation (*veditadauṣṭhulya*),
- 3) the defilements (*kleśadauṣṭhulya*),
- 4) actions (*karmadauṣṭhulya*),
- 5) the results of actions (*vipākadauṣṭhulya*),
- 6) the obstruction of the defilements (*kleśāvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 7) the obstruction of actions (*karmāvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 8) the obstruction of results of actions (*vipākāvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 9) the hindrances (*nīvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 10) investigation (*vitarkadauṣṭhulya*),
- 11) food (*āhāradauṣṭhulya*),
- 12) sexual union (*maithunadauṣṭhulya*),
- 13) dreams (*svapnadauṣṭhulya*),
- 14) illnesses (*vyādhidauṣṭhulya*),
- 15) old age (*jarādauṣṭhulya*),
- 16) death (*maraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 17) fatigue (*pariśramadauṣṭhulya*),
- 18) solidity (*dṛḍhadauṣṭhulya*),

³⁴⁴ All these terms – *vajropamasamādhi*, *dauṣṭhulya*, *saṃyoga*, *visaṃyoga*, *āśrayapravṛtti*, *kṣayajñāna*, *anutpādajñāna*, *daśa-aśaikṣadharma* – are explained below.

³⁴⁵ See also Kośa, chap. VI, p.295.

- 19) gluttony³⁴⁶ (*audārikadauṣṭhulya*),
- 20) the average (*madhyadauṣṭhulya*),
- 21) smallness (*sūksmadauṣṭhulya*),
- 22) the obstructions to concentration (*samāpattyāvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*),
- 23) the obstructions to the knowable (*jñeyāvaraṇadauṣṭhulya*).

What is fetter (*samyoga*)? When disturbance accumulates, this is known as acquisition of the fetter (*samyogalābha*).

What is liberation of the fetter (*visamyoga*)? When the disturbance is repulsed, this is known as acquisition of the liberation of the fetter (*visamyogalābha*).

What is the diamond-like meditative stabilization (*vajropamasamādhi*)? It is the concentration comprising the path of application (*prayogamārga*) or the immediate path (*ānantaryamārga*) on the occasion of the abandonment of the fetters (*samyojana*) in a person after his entry into the path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*).³⁴⁷ The inclusion of the path of application shows that henceforth this concentration cannot be hidden by the obstacles (*āvaraṇa*) and that it can overcome all the obstacles. The inclusion of the immediate path indicates the immediate appearance of the knowledge of the exhaustion of the defilements (*kṣayajñāna*) and of the knowledge of the non-appearance of the abandoned defilements (*anutpādajñāna*). This concentration (*samadhi*) is continuous (*nirantara*), firm (*dṛḍha*), of one taste (*ekarasa*) and spreads (*vyāpin*). In order to illustrate this meaning, the Blessed One has said: ‘It is like a great rock, intact, without any fissure, solid, compact, which cannot be shaken by the winds blowing from the ten directions.’³⁴⁸

What is the activity of the fundamental transformation (*niranatarāśraya-pravṛtti*)? It consists of the three types of activity of transformation in a person who has obtained the Path of no-more learning (*aśaikṣamārgalābhīn*). These three are the basic transformation of the mind (*cittāśrayapravṛtti*), the basic transformation of the path (*mārgāśrayapravṛtti*) and the basic transformation of disturbance (*dauṣṭhulyāśrayapravṛtti*).

What is the knowledge of exhaustion (*kṣayajñāna*)? It is the knowledge obtained by the exhaustion of the cause (*hetu*) or that which has exhaustion as its object.³⁴⁹

What is the knowledge of non-appearance (*anutpādajñāna*)? It is the knowledge obtained by abandoning the result (*phala*) or that which has non-appearance of the result as its object.³⁵⁰

³⁴⁶ Rahula gives ‘grosseur, fatness’.

³⁴⁷ For *bhāvanāmārga*, *prayogamārga* and *ānantaryamārga*, see above.

³⁴⁸ Cf. A III, p. 378. ... seto pabbato acciddo asusiro ekaghano; atha puaratthimāya ce'pi disāya āgaccheyya bhusā vātavuṭṭhi, n'eve naṃ samkampeyya na sampakampeyya na sampavedhey...

³⁴⁹ This is the knowledge of the fact that the cause has been destroyed, i.e., that there will be no more karma because the defilements have been destroyed.

The ten qualities of the no-more-learning disciple (*daśa-aśaikṣadharma*) should be understood as consisting of

- (1) the body of morality (virtue) (*śīlaskandha*),
- (2) the body of mental discipline (*samādhiskandha*),³⁵¹
- (3) the body of wisdom (*prajñāskandha*),
- (4) the body of deliverance (*vimuktiskandha*) and
- (5) the body of the seeing of the knowledge of deliverance (*vimuktijñānarśanaskandha*) of the no-more-learning disciple (*aśaikṣa*).³⁵²

CAD.3.

THE FOUR GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TRUTH OF THE PATH

Also, there are four types of characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*) of the Truth of the Path:

- (i) characteristic of the path (*mārgalakṣaṇa*),
 - (ii) characteristic of method (*nyāyalakṣaṇa*),
 - (iii) characteristic of practice (*pratipad lakṣaṇa*) and
 - (iv) characteristic of emancipation (*nairyāṇilakṣaṇa*).
- (i) **Why does the path (*mārga*) have the characteristic of path?** Because it seeks out the true nature of things (*tattvārthatparimārgaṇa*).³⁵³
- (ii) **Why does it have the characteristic of method?** Because it counteracts the defilements (*kleśapratipakṣa*).
- (iii) **Why does it have the characteristic of practice?** Because it produces absence of errors of mind (*citta-aviparyāsa*).
- (iv) **Why does it have the characteristic of emancipation?** Because it is the vehicle leading to the permanent state (*nityapadayāna*).

³⁵⁰ This is the knowledge of the fact that the results will no longer appear in the future, i.e., that there will be no future birth.

³⁵¹ Here *samādhi*, as one of the *triśikhās* – *śīla*, *samādhi*, *prajñā* – comprises not just mental stabilization, but also *samyagvyāyamā* (right effort) and *samyaksmṛti* (right attentiveness). Thus the translation ‘mental discipline’ to cover the three aspects.

³⁵² Here:
śīlaskandha = samyagvāch + samyak-karmānta + samyagājīva
samādhiskandha = samyagvyāyāma + samyaksmṛti + samyaksamādhi
prajñāskandha = samyagdrṣṭi + samyaksamkalpa

Thus the eight factors of the Noble Path are included in *śīla*, *samādhi* and *prajñā* (*triśikṣā*). See M I, p. 301.

³⁵³ The word *mārga*, which usually means ‘path’, also has the sense of ‘to seek’, from the root *mārg*, ‘to seek’.

THE 16 GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS

The sixteen aspects (*śoḍaśākāra*) of the four Truths³⁵⁴ are

- (i) mundane (*laukika*) and
- (ii) supramundane (*lokottara*).

What is the difference between the mundane and the supramundane? It is

- (1) the difference between the unwholesome entry (*akuśalapraveśa*) and the wholesome entry (*kuśalapraveśa*) into the knowable (*jñeyā*);
- (2) the difference in nature between those that have obstacles (*sāvaraṇa*) and those that do not have obstacles (*nirāvaraṇa*);
- (3) the difference in nature between those who have false discrimination (*savikalpa*) and those who do not discriminate (*nirvikalpa*).

Why are there sixteen mundane aspects (*laukikākāra*) such as impermanence, suffering, etc., in respect to the Truths?

- Because of the absence of understanding of suchness (*tathatā*),
- because of the defilements and their latent residues (*kleśānuśaya*) and
- because of the erroneous details of verbal expressions (*abhilāpaprapañca*).

The supramundane aspects should be understood as being opposite to these worldly aspects.

Whoever is in the presence of the supramundane aspects sees the meaning of impermanence (*anityārtha*) and experiences it directly, but not by means of the erroneous details of verbal expression. Just as with the aspects of impermanence, so should one understand the other aspects accordingly.

³⁵⁴ The sixteen aspects of the Four Truths:

with respect to *duḥkhasatya*: *anitya* (impermanence), *duḥkha* (suffering), *śūnya* (emptiness) and *anātma* (non-self);

with respect to *samudayasatya*: *hetu* (cause), *samudaya* (appearance), *prabhava* (source) and *pratyaya* (condition);

with respect to *nirodhasatya*: *nirodha* (cessation), *śānta* (peace), *prañīta* (excellence) and *nihṣarana* (exit);

with respect to *mārgasatya*: *mārga* (path, seeking), *nyāya* (method), *pratipad* (practice and *nairyāṇika* (leading to emancipation).

See Kośa, ch. VI, p. 163; ch. VII, p. 30 foll.

CB. **CHAPTER TWO ASCERTAINMENT OF THE DHARMA (DHARMAVINIŚCAYA)**

CBA. **THE 12 MEMBERS OF THE DOCTRINE**

What is ascertainment of the Dharma (*dharmavinīścaya*)?

The noble teaching is the twelve-membered (divisions) (*dvādaśāṅga*) doctrine.

What are the twelve members or divisions?

1. Discourses (*sūtra*),
2. verse narrations (*geya*),
3. prophecies (*vyākaraṇa*),
4. verse summaries (*gāthā*),
5. formal discourses (*udāna*),
6. guidelines following specific incidents (*nidāna*),
7. heroic acts (*avadāna*),
8. historical accounts (*itivṛttaka*),
9. birth stories (*jātaka*),
10. lengthy complex sūtras (*vaipulya*),
11. miraculous acts (*adhibutadharma*) and
12. topics of specific knowledge (*upadeśa*).³⁵⁵

1. What are the discourses (*sūtra*)? They are prose expositions explaining a point in mind. Seeing ten advantages, the Tathagata preached, explaining the Dharma in this way:

- (1) He established and taught easily;
- (2) the listener also learns easily;
- (3) out of respect for the doctrine, he quickly acquires the accumulations necessary for enlightenment (*bodhisambhāra*);
- (4) he quickly penetrates the Dharma;
- (5) he obtains serene joy based on conviction (*avetyaprasāda*) with regard to the Buddha,
- (6) with regard to his teaching, (*dharma*) and

³⁵⁵ In the Pāli sources, there are only nine members (divisions) of the *Dhamma*: (1) *suttam*, (2) *geyyam*, (3) *veyyākaraṇam*, (4) *gāthā*, (5) *udānaṃ*, (6) *itivuttakam*, (7) *jātakam*, (8) *abhitadhammaṃ*, (9) *vedallam*. (M I, p. 133; A II, pp. 103, 178; III, pp. 86, 177). *Nidāna*, *avadāna* and *upadeśa* are not mentioned in this list. *Vedalla* may be identified with *vaipulya* as the latter term is explained above in this text.

- (7) with regard to the Community (*sangha*);
- (8) he experiences supreme bliss in this very life (*paramadrṣṭadharmaśukhavihāra*);
- (9) he pleases the minds of the wise ones by means of exegetical discussions ; and
- (10) he is recognized to be wise (learned, *pañdita*).

2. What is verse narration (geya)? It is that which is recited in stanzas in the middle or at the end of the discourses (*sūtra*); or a concept not indicated in the discourse and which is explained in stanzas. Therefore it is called narration in verse.

3. What are the prophecies (vyākaraṇa)? They are the explanations of the various present existences of the noble disciples (*āryaśrāvaka*) in relation to their distant past in various places. Or they are the clarifications of a point indicated in the discourse, because it is the accessible explanation of an abstruse point (*abhisamdhī*).³⁵⁶

4. What are the verse summaries (gāthā)? They are taught in the discourses in metric feet. The stanzas may have three, four, five or six feet.

5. What are the formal speeches (udāna)? They are sometimes spoken in the discourses by the Buddha with a joyous heart (*āttamanaska*).

6. What are the guidelines following specific incidents (nidāna)? They are declarations made by the Buddha when he is questioned. Or they are the declarations of a rule (precept, *śikṣā*) with its cause. Therefore they are called guidelines.

7. What are the heroic acts (avadāna)? They are explanations with parables (examples, *drṣṭānta*) given in the talk.

8. What are the historical accounts (itivṛttaka)? They relate the previous existences of the noble disciples.³⁵⁷

9. What are the birth stories of the Buddha (jātaka)? They tell about the previous lives of the Bodhisattva, contained in the canon relating to the Bodhisattva's career.

10. What are the long complex sūtras (vaipulya)? They consist of the explanations contained in the bodhisattva canon (*bodhisattvapiṭaka*). That which is called *vaipulya* is also called *vaidalya* or *vaitulya*.

³⁵⁶ MA II, p. 106 defines *veyyākaraṇa* (*vyākaraṇa*) differently: *Sakalaṁ pi Abhidhammapiṭikam, niggāthakam suttam, yañ c'aññam pi aṭṭhahi aṅgehi asaṅgahītam Buddhavacanam, tam veyyākaraṇan ti veditabbam.* ‘The entire Abhidhammapiṭaka, the suttas without *gāthā*, and all other words of the Buddha not included in the other eight divisions should be considered as prophecies (*veyyākaraṇa*).’

³⁵⁷ MA II, p. 106 defines *itivṛttaka* differently: ‘*Vuttam idam bhagavatā* ti ādinayappavattā dasuttarasatasuttantā *itivuttakan* ti veditabbā. ‘The one hundred and ten suttas that begin with the phrase ‘This was said by the Blessed One’ should be understood as *Itivṛttaka*.’ This refers definitively to the Pali text *Itivṛttaka*, the fourth book of the *Kuddhakaniṭkāya*.

- **Why are they called *vaipulya*?** Because they are the basis of the well-being and happiness of all beings and because it is the supreme and profound teaching.
- **Why are they called *vaidalya*?** Because they crush (*vidalana*) all the obstacles (*sarvāvaraṇa*).³⁵⁸
- **Why are they called *vaitulya*?** Because of the absence of comparison (*tulanābhāva*) with analogies (*upamāna*).

11. What are the miraculous acts (*adbhutadharma*)? They are the teachings about the extremely wonderful and extraordinary things in the careers of the disciples, bodhisattvas and the Thatāgata.

12. What are the topics of specific knowledge (*upadeśa*)? They are the exact, precise and subtle explanations of the characteristics of everything (*sarvadharmalakṣaṇa*).

These twelve members (*anga*) into which the noble teachings are divided, such as the discourses (*sūtra*), are included in the threefold Canon (*tripiṭaka*).³⁵⁹

CBB.

THE THREE CANONS AND THE TWO CANONS & THE 12 MEMBERS

What are these three canons? They are

- (i) the Canon of the Sūtras (*sūtrapiṭaka*),
- (ii) the Canon of the Discipline (*vinayapiṭaka*) and
- (iii) the Canon of the Higher Teachings (*abhidharmapiṭaka*).

They are again divided into **two**:

- (1) the Canon of the Disciples (*Śrāvakapiṭaka*) and
- (2) the Canon of the Bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvapiṭaka*).

Sūtra, geya, vyākaraṇa, gāthā and *udāna* are included in the sūtra canon section belonging to the Canon of the Disciples.

³⁵⁸ According to this definition, the *vedalla* in nine divisions (*navaṅga*) in the Pali sources may be considered as synonymous with *vaipulya* and *vaitulya*. But the three words, *vaipulya*, *vaidalya* and *vaitulya* refer to the *Bodhisattvapiṭaka* whereas the word *vedalla*, according to MA II, p. 106, refers to suttas such as *Cullavedalla*, *Mahāvedalla*, *Sammādiṭṭhi*, *Sakkappañha*, *Samkhārabhājaniya*, *Mahāpuṇṇama*, which concern knowledge and joy (*vedañ ca tuṭṭhiñ ca*).

³⁵⁹ *Tripiṭaka* ‘Threefold Canon’. One of the meanings of the word *piṭaka* is ‘basket’ or ‘box’. But to translate *piṭaka* as ‘basket’, as is usually the case when this word refers to the Collection of the Buddha’s Teachings, is to go too far in the direction of the literal meaning which is totally inappropriate. *Piṭaka* simply means the Corpus of Sacred Scriptures, sometimes not only of Buddhism but also of any religion whatsoever. Thus it means ‘Canon’, as is seen in the expression *mā piṭakasampadānena* (in the *Kālāmasutta*, A I, p. 189). Here *piṭakasampadāna* does not mean ‘the basket tradition’, but the ‘the Canonical tradition’.

Nidāna, avadāna, itivṛttaka and *jātaka* are included in the Canon of the Discipline with the *Parivāra*³⁶⁰ belonging to the two forms of the Canon.³⁶¹

Vaipulya and *adbhutadharma* are included in the *Sūtrapiṭaka* belonging to the Canon of the Bodhisattvas.

Upadeśa is included in the Canon of the Higher Teachings of the Disciples such as the Bodhisattvas.

CBC.

THE REASONS WHY THE TATHĀGATA ESTABLISHED THE THREE CANONS

Why did the Tathagata establish the threefold canon?

- The Canon of the Sūtras was established in order to counteract the minor defilement (*upakleśa*) of doubt (*vicikitsā*).
- The Canon of the Discipline was established in order to counteract the minor defilement of attachment to the two extremes (*antadvayānuyoga*).³⁶²
- The Canon of the Higher Teachings was established in order to counteract the minor defilement of attachment to one's own opinions (*svayamdrṣṭiparāmarśa*).

Furthermore,

- the Canon of the Sūtras was established to make known the three disciplines (*śikṣātraya*).³⁶³
- The Canon of the Discipline was established to fulfill the discipline of higher virtue (*adhiśīla*) and higher mental development (*adhicitta*).
- The Canon of the Higher Teachings was postulated in order to accomplish higher wisdom (*adhiprajñā*).

Furthermore,

- the Canon of the Sūtras was established in order to reveal properly the meaning of the teachings.
- The Canon of the Discipline was established in order to clarify the meaning (*sākṣātkriyā*) of the teachings.
- The Canon of the Higher Teachings was established to serve as the basis for the blissful dwelling (*sukhavihāra*) of the sages in the enjoyment of the doctrine by means of exegetical study (*sāṃkathyaviniścaya*).

³⁶⁰ The *Parivāra* is the fifth and last text of the *Vinayapitaka*. It is like an appendix or a resumé of the other parts of the Vinaya.

³⁶¹ I.e., the Canon of the Disciples and the Canon of the Bodhisattvas.

³⁶² The two extremes are attachment to the sense pleasures (*kāmasukhaliṅkānuyoga*) and attachment to asceticism (*ātmakilamathānuyoga*).

³⁶³ I.e., *śīla* (virtue), *saṃādhi* (mental training) and *prajñā* (wisdom).

THE THREEFOLD CANON AND THE FIELD OF THE MIND AND MENTAL ACTIVITIES

This doctrine consisting of the Threefold Canon, of what is it the field (*gocara*)?

It is the field of the mind and mental activities (*cittacaitasika*) comprising (1) study (*śrutamaya*), (2) reflection (*cintāmaya*) and (3) mental cultivation (*bhāvanāmaya*).

It is said in the sūtra: ‘Mind and mental activities have (i) their objects (*ālambana*), (ii) their aspects (*ākāra*), (iii) their basis (*āśraya*) and (iv) are mutually linked (*samprayoga*).³⁶⁴

- (i) **What are their objects in this doctrine?** The discourses, etc. (*sūtrādikam*).
- (ii) **What are their aspects?** The meanings associated with the aggregates (*skandha*), etc.
- (iii) **What is their basis?** External information (*paravijñāpti*), memory (*smṛti*) and the latent traces (*vāsanā*).
- (iv) **What is their mutual relationship?** The shared acquiring of the object by means of their mutual association.

THE FOURFOLD CLASSIFICATION OF OBJECTS WITH RESPECT TO THE DOCTRINE

(1) **What is the classification of objects with respect to the Doctrine?** Briefly, it is fourfold:

- (i) the universally pervading object (*vyāpyālambana*),
- (ii) the object in view of the purification of the nature (*carita-viśodhanālambana*),
- (iii) the object in view of skillfulness (*kauśalyālambana*) and
- (iv) the object in view of purification of the defilements (*kleśaviśodhanālambana*).

(i) **The univerally pervading object** is in turn fourfold:

- 1) the reflected upon conceptualized object (*savikalpapratibimba*),³⁶⁵
- 2) the nonconceptual reflected upon object (*nirvikalpapratibimba*),
- 3) the limit of the substance (*vastuparyanta*) and
- 4) the accomplishing of duty (*kāryaparinispatti*).

I) **What is the conceptualized reflected upon object?** It is the field of concentration (tranquility) and insight (*śamathavipaśyanāviṣaya*) resulting from attentiveness with respect to determination (*adhimuktimanaskāra*).

³⁶⁴ The original of this citation has not yet been found.

³⁶⁵ Definition from Monier-Williams

- 2) **What is the nonconceptualized reflected upon object?** It is the field of concentration (tranquility) and insight resulting from attentiveness with respect to the true nature (*tattvamanaskāra*).
- 3) **What is the limit of the substance as object?** It is
 - (A) the state of natural cessation (*kṣayabhāvikatā*) and
 - (B) the state of the true nature (*yathāvadbhāvikatā*) of everything.
 - (A) **What is the state of natural cessation?** It consists of the aggregates (*skandha*), elements (*dhātu*) and spheres (*āyatana*).
 - (B) **What is the state of true nature?** It consists of the four Noble Truths, their sixteen aspects (*śoḍāśākāra*), suchness (*tathatā*), the impermanence (*anitya*) of all conditioned things (*samskāra*), the suffering (*duḥkha*) of all conditioned things, the absence of self (*anātma*) of everything, peaceful nirvāṇa, emptiness (*śūnya*), wishlessness (*apraṇihita*) and signlessness (*animitta*).³⁶⁶
- 4) **What is the accomplishing of duty as object?** It is the fundamental transformation of the basis (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*) which is inconceivable (*acintya*).

How many of the sixteen aspects of the four Noble Truths are included in emptiness (*śūnya*)? Two. How many of them are included in the wishlessness (*apraṇihita*)? Six. How many of them are included in the signlessness (*animitta*)? Eight.³⁶⁷

(ii) The object in view of the purification of nature is fivefold:

- (1) For those whose character is dominated by lust (*bhūyorāgacarita*), the object is the impurity of the body (*aśubha*).
- (2) For those whose character is dominated by hatred (*bhūyodveṣacarita*), the object is the development of compassion (*karuṇabhāvanā*).
- (3) For those whose character is dominated by ignorance (*bhūyomohacarita*), the object is meditation on conditioned production (*pratīyasamutpāda*) which concerns the conditioned nature (*idam pratyayatā*).
- (4) For those whose character is dominated by vanity and pride (*madamānacarita*), the object is analysis of the elements (*dhātuprabheda*).
- (5) For those whose character is dominated by distraction (*vitarkacarita*),³⁶⁸ the object is attention to the breath (*ānāpānasmṛti*).³⁶⁹

³⁶⁶ Śūnya, *apraṇihita* and *animitta* refer to the *saṃadhis* known by these terms.

³⁶⁷ According to the Kośa, ch. VIII, pp. 184-186, two aspects are included in *śūnya*, ten in *apraṇihita* and four in *animitta*.

(iii) **What is skillfulness as object?** It is

- (1) skillfulness concerning the aggregates (*skandha*),
- (2) skillfulness concerning the elements (*dhātu*),
- (3) skillfulness concerning the spheres (*āyatana*),
- (4) skillfulness concerning conditioned production (*pratītyasamutpada*) and
- (5) skillfulness concerning that which is possible and that which is impossible (*sthānāsthānakauśalya*).

What is obtained by means of skillfulness concerning that which is possible and that which is impossible? One obtains the same thing as skillfulness concerning conditioned production.

What is the difference between skillfulness concerning that which is possible and that which is impossible and skillfulness concerning conditioned production? The knowledge that things (*dharma*) follow from things and that their appearance neither lacks causes nor is due to irregular causes is skillfulness concerning conditioned production. The knowledge that the appearance of sensation is in accordance with the play of cause and effect is skillfulness concerning that which is possible and that which is impossible.

(iv) **What is purification of the defilements as object?** It is

- (1) the coarseness (*audārikatā*) of those who are in the lower realms (*adhobhūmika*),
- (2) the calmness (fineness) (*śantatā*) of those who are in the higher realms (*ūrdhvabhūmika*),
- (3) suchness (*tathatā*) and
- (4) the four Noble Truths.

This is the purification of the defilements as object.

CBF.

THE FOUR REASONS FOR EXAMINING THINGS

For how many reasons (*yukti*) are things examined when one wishes to examine them? For four reasons:

- (i) dependence (*apeksāyukti*),
- (ii) cause and effect (*kāryakāraṇayukti*),

³⁶⁸ Here *vitarka* does not mean ‘reasoning’.

³⁶⁹ According to Vsm there are mainly six types of natures: *ragacarita*, *dosa-*, *moha-*, *saddhā-* *buddhi-* and *vitakkacarita*. But by mixing these, some teachers arrive at fourteen types, and thus it is possible to add many other types. But there are only six main types. Some add also three other types: *tañhacarita*, *mānacarita* and *diṭṭhicarita*. But *tañha* and *māna* may be included in *rāga*, and *diṭṭhi* in *moha*. The Vsm says that *rāgacarita* is like *saddācarita*, *dosacarita* like *buddhigarita* and *mohacarita* like *vittakkacarita*. For details, see Vsm, p. 101 foll.

- (iii) accomplishing of attestation of experience (*sākṣātkriyāśādhanayukti*) and
- (iv) essential nature (*dharmatāyukti*).

(i) What is the reason of dependence? It is the fact that the appearance of conditioned things (*samskāra*) depends on conditions (*pratyaya*).

(ii) What is the reason of cause and effect? It is the fact that things that have different characteristics have distinct causes and effects.

(iii) What is the reason of the accomplishingt of attestation of realization? It is the fact that the teaching (*upadeśa*) concerning a thing to be established (*sādhyārtha*), e.g., the accomplishing of experience by means of the senses, is not contrary to authority (*pramāṇa*).

(iv) What is the reason of essential nature? It is the complete development of the essential nature (*dharmatāpariniśpatti*) the self-characteristics and shared characteristics of which last for an infinite time (*anādikālika*). This is the examination of things.

CBG.

THE FOUR INVESTIGATIONS (PARYEṢĀNA) OF THINGS

How many investigations of things (*paryeṣanā*) are there?

There are four investigations:

- (i) investigation of names (*nāmaparyeṣanā*),
- (ii) investigation of substances (*vastuparyeṣanā*),
- (iii) investigation of the designation of the self-nature (*svabhāvaprajñaptiprayeṣanā*) and
- (iv) investigation of the designation of particularities (*viṣeṣaprajñaptiparyeṣanā*).

(i) What is the investigation of names? It is the judgment (conclusion) that the self-characteristics (*svalakṣaṇa*) of groups of names (*nāmakāya*), phrases (*padakāya*) and letters (*vyañjanakāya*) of things (*dharma*) are not absolute (*apariniśpanna*).

(ii) What is the investigation of substances? It is the judgment (conclusion) that the characteristics of the aggregates (*skandha*), elements (*dhātu*) and spheres (*āyatana*) are not absolute.

(iii) What is the investigation of the designation of self-nature? It is the judgment (conclusion) that, in regard to the relation between name (*abhidhāna*) and the thing named (*abhidheya*), the self-nature is only a designation (*prajñaptimātra*) insofar as it is a linguistic sign (*vyavahāranimitta*).

(iv) What is the investigation of the designation of particularities? It is the judgment (conclusion) that, in regard to the relation between name and the thing named, particularities are merely designations insofar as they are linguistic signs.

This is the development of investigations concerning things.

CBH.

FOUR CORRECT KNOWLEDGES OF THINGS

How many correct knowledges (*yathābhūtaparijñāna*) of things (*dharma*) are there?

There are four:

- (i) correct knowledge sought by means of names (*nāmaparyeṣita*),
- (ii) correct knowledge sought by means of substances (*vastuparyeṣita*),
- (iii) correct knowledge sought by means of the designation of self-nature (*svabhāvaprajñaptiparyeṣita*) and
- (iv) correct knowledge sought by means of the designation of particularities (*viśeṣaprajñaptiparyeṣita*).

(i) What is correct knowledge sought by means of names? It is the correct knowledge that cannot be attained by means of names (*nāmānupalabdhijñāna*).

(ii) What is correct knowledge sought by means of substances? It is the correct knowledge that cannot be attained by means of the characteristics of substances (*vastulakṣaṇānupalabdhijñāna*).

(iii) What is the correct knowledge sought by means of the designation of self-nature? It is the correct knowledge that cannot be attained by means of the self-nature of substances (*dravyasvabhāvānupalabdhijñāna*).

(iv) What is the correct knowledge sought by means of the designation of particularities? It is the correct knowledge that cannot be attained by means of the particularities of substances (*dravyaviśeṣānupalabdhijñāna*).

CBI.

THE FIVE STAGES OF UNION (*YOGABHŪMI*)

What are the stages of union (*yogabhūmi*) of an individual engaged in meditative stabilization (*samādhi*), depending on the doctrine (*dharma*)?

They are fivefold:

- (i) assistance (*ādhāra*),
- (ii) application (*ādhāna*),
- (iii) mirror (*ādarśa*),
- (iv) lamp (*āloka*) and
- (v) basis (*āśraya*).

(i) What is assistance? It is learning (*bāhuśrūtya*) about things such as the state of heat (*uṣmagata*) and the noble Truths (*āryasatya*) in a person who has acquired the accumulations necessary for awakening (*bodhisambhāra*).

(ii) What is application? It is the deep attentiveness (*yoniśomanaskāra*) that has the above-mentioned learning as object.

(iii) What is the mirror? It is the meditative stabilization with signs (*sanimitta-samādhi*) that has learning as object.

(iv) What is the lamp? It is the knowledge that cannot be attained by means of what is grasped (*grāhya*) and by the one who grasps (*grāhaka*). In reference to this, the Blessed Buddha has rightly said: The bodhisattva, in the state of concentration (*samāhita*), sees that images (*pratibimba*) are merely thoughts (*citta*, mind). Expelling (*vyāvartya*) the notion of objects (*arthasamjñā* or *viśayasamjñā*), seeing only his own mind (*svasanjñām upadharayan*), and having thus established mind-in-itself, he understands the absence of what is grasped (*grāhyābhāva*) and also the absence of the one who grasps (*grāhakabhāva*), and then he experiences (*sprśet*, touches) the knowledge that cannot be attained (*nopalambha*) by means of *grāhya* and *grāhaka*.³⁷⁰

(v) What is the basis (*āśraya*)? It is the fundamental transformation of the basis (*āśrayaparāvrtti*).³⁷¹

CBJ.

HOW ONE BECOMES PROFICIENT

How does one become proficient in the doctrine (*dharmakuśala*)? By means of great learning (*bahuśrutatā*).³⁷²

How does one become proficient in meaning (*arthakuśala*)? By means of knowledge of the characteristics (*lakṣaṇajñāna*) of the higher teachings (*abhidharma*) and the higher discipline (*abhivinaya*).³⁷³

How does one become proficient in letters (*vyañjanakuśala*)? By means of knowledge of the well-explained letter (*suniruktavyañjanajñatā*).

How does one become proficient in explanation (philology) (*niruktikuśala*)? By means of the knowledge of current usage (*anuvyahāra*), without being attached to regional explanations (expressions) (*janapadanirukti*)³⁷⁴ such as ‘me’ or ‘mine’ (*ātmātmīya*).³⁷⁵

³⁷⁰ Cf. these two verses in Siddhi, p. 581.

³⁷¹ This means that by the abandonment of all the disturbances (*dauṣṭhulya*), the basis (*āśraya*) becomes calm and pure.

³⁷² *Bahuśruta* literally means ‘having heard much’, because in ancient times knowledge was acquired by means of listening to the teacher..

³⁷³ The two terms *abhidhamma* and *abhivinaya* are also found together in the Pali Nikayas, e.g. D III, p. 267 M I, p. 472. Whereas *abhidhamma* is well known, what *abhivinaya* means is not clear. MA III, p. 185 explains it simply as the *Vinayapiṭaka*. But according to the context of the passage in D III, p. 267, one could assume that *abhivinaya* refers to ‘refined conduct’ (*piyasamudācāra*).

³⁷⁴ Cf. M III, p. 237: *janapadaniruttiyā ca anabhiniveso*.

³⁷⁵ The three terms *arthakuśala* (proficient in the meaning), *vyañjanakuśala* (proficient in the letter, in language) and *niruktikuśala* (proficient in explanation or philology) refer to the problem of correct understanding of the Buddha’s

How does one become proficient in the conjunction of past and future (*pūrvāntāparāntānusandhikuśala*)? By means of understanding (*udgrahaṇa*) with regard to the past and by means of deliverance (*niḥsaraṇa*) with regard to the future.

How does one become a person dwelling in the teachings (*dharmaṁhārin*)? One does not become a person dwelling in the teachings solely by the practice of listening (learning) and of reflecting (*śrutacintāprayoga*) without resorting to meditation (mental development) (*bhāvanām anāgamyā*). Neither does one become a person dwelling in the teachings solely by the practice of meditation (*bhāvanāprayoga*) without resorting to learning and reflection (*śrutacintām anāgamyā*). It is by resorting to both, by living according to both, that one becomes a person dwelling in the teachings. That which consists of listening (learning) (*śrutamaya*) should be understood by means of study, recitation and preaching (*udgrahāyasyādhyāyadeśanā*).³⁷⁶ That which consists of meditation (*bhāvanāmaya*) should be understood by means of the practice of meditative stabilization (*samādhiprayoga*) and of dissatisfaction (*asantuṣṭi*).

The practice of meditative stabilization should be understood by means of constant and careful practice (*sātatyasatkrtyaprayoga*) and non-erroneous practice (*aviparītaprayoga*).

Dissatisfaction should be understood by means of practice leading to higher calm (*uttaraśamatha*) not yet enjoyed (*anāsvādita*).³⁷⁷

CBK.

ON THE MEANING OF VAIPULYA

Why is the *Vaipulya* (Development, Extension) called the Canon of the perfections (*pāramitāpiṭaka*) of the bodhisattvas? Because it sets forth the number of the perfections (*pāramitāsaṃkhyānirdeśa*), their characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*), their order (*krama*), their explanations (*nirukti*), their development (*bhāvanā*), their divisions (*prabheda*), their grouping (*saṃgraha*), their opposites (*vipakṣa*), the praises of their virtues (*gunavarṇana*), and also their common ascertainment (*anyonyaviniścaya*).

teaching. The word *arthakuśala* means that one should understand the spirit or the meaning (*artha*) of the teaching without being too influenced by the language or letter (*vyañjana*). The term *vyañjanakuśala* means that, although the language may be of secondary importance, one must be proficient in it in order that one may learn the Dharma expressed in that language. What is essential is the spirit not the letter; however the letter is also important. The term *niruktikuśala* indicates that one should not become blindly attached to one's national or regional language or to one's dialect (*janapadanirukti*), and that one should not get lost in terms such as 'me' or 'mine' which are of current and popular usage.

³⁷⁶ Here the Chinese version adds: 'That which consists of reflecting (*cintāmaya*) should be understood by means of reflecting on the meaning (*arthacintā*). ' This sentence could naturally be inserted here.

³⁷⁷ *Santuṣṭi*, 'contentment, satisfaction' is a virtue when associated with material conditions. A disciple should be content with no matter what kind of clothing (*chīvara*), food (*pindapāta*), lodging (*sayanāsana*) and medical care (*glānapratyayabhaiṣajya*) that he receives. It is a highly praised quality. But in relation to the higher spiritual experience, *santuṣṭi* is not a good quality. If a disciple is satisfied with what he has attained spiritually, he no longer exerts himself, and there would be no further progress for him. Therefore, in relation to spiritual progress, *asantuṣṭi*, 'dissatisfaction' is considered to be a virtue because it incites the disciple to attain ever higher spiritual states.

Why is the *Vaipulya* designated as excellent (*audārya*) and profound (*gāmbhīrya*)? Because of its knowledge of all aspects (*sarvākārajñatā*), its excellence and its depth (*udāragambhīratā*).

Why is it that some beings (*ekatyāḥ satvāḥ*) do not like (*nādhimucyante*) the excellence and depth of the *Vaipulya* and are afraid of it (*utrasanti*)? Because of their separation from the true nature of the Dharma (*dharmatāviyuktatā*), because of their lack of development of wholesome roots (*anavaropitakuśalamūlatā*), and because of the influence of bad friends (*pāpamitraparigraha*).

Why is it that some beings, although they like the *Vaipulya*, do not exit from it (*na niryānti*)? Because of their fixation on the attachment to their own view (*svayaṃdrṣṭiparāmarśasthāpita*) and because of their attachment to the meaning of its letters (*yathārutārthābhiniveśa*).³⁷⁸ For this reason, the Blessed One said in the discourse (*dharmaṇaryāya*) called ‘The Great Mirror of the Doctrine’ (*Mahādharmaṇadarśa*): Twenty-eight wrong views (*asaddrṣṭi*) arise in the mind of the bodhisattva who examines the teachings (*dharmaṇa* *vicinvataḥ*) superficially (*ayoniśo*) according to its letter (*yathāruta*).

CBK.1.

THE 28 WRONG VIEWS

What are the twenty-eight wrong views?

- (1) The idea of signs (*nimittadrṣṭi*),³⁷⁹
- (2) the idea of refutation of the designation (*prajñaptyapavādadṛṣṭi*),
- (3) the idea of refutation of the imagination (*parikalpāpavādadṛṣṭi*),
- (4) the idea of refutation of reality (*tattvāpavādadṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁰
- (5) the idea of grasping (*parigrahadṛṣṭi*),
- (6) the idea of transformation (*parinatadrṣṭi*),³⁸¹
- (7) the idea of irreproachability (*anavadyatādṛṣṭi*),
- (8) the idea of exit (*nihsaraṇadrṣṭi*),³⁸²

³⁷⁸ This part, which is missing in the original Sanskrit, occurs in both the Chinese and the Tibetan versions, and is also found in the *Bhāṣya*.

³⁷⁹ *Nimittadrṣṭi* is to grasp at superficial signs and characteristics without understanding the profound meaning of the teaching. For example, the *Mahāyanasūtra* says: *niḥsavbhāvāḥ sarvadharmāḥ anutpannāḥ aniruddhāḥ ādiśāntāḥ prakrtinirvṛtāḥ*. When one hears that, one is unable to understand, one agrees with the words, one becomes attached to the words. One produces *abhiniveśa* ‘attachment’. One says *niḥsavbhāvāḥ sarvadharmāḥ* etc., but one is attached to the superficial signs and characteristics.

³⁸⁰ Numbers (2), (3) and (4) are calumny of the Dharma. It is as a result of these three wrong views that the Dharma is distorted.

³⁸¹ Numbers (5) and (6): as a result of these two *drṣṭis* one is dependent on partial reasonings and one distorts the meaning of the sūtras to establish one’s own opinion.

- (9) the idea of contempt (*avajñādrṣṭi*),
 - (10) the idea of anger (*prakopadrṣṭi*),³⁸³
 - (11) the idea of misunderstanding (*viparītadrṣṭi*),
 - (12) the idea of production (*prasavadṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁴
 - (13) the idea of not allowing the proper reasonings of others (*anabhyupagamadrṣṭi*),
 - (14) the idea of resorting to cheating (*kusṛtidṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁵
 - (15) the idea of respect (*satkāradṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁶
 - (16) the idea of intense illusion (*drdhamūḍhatādrṣṭi*),³⁸⁷
 - (17) the fundamental idea (*mūladṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁸
 - (18) the idea of seeing and wrong seeing (*drṣṭāvadṛṣṭadṛṣṭi*),³⁸⁹
 - (19) the idea of repudiating the practice (*prayoganirākaranaḍṛṣṭi*),³⁹⁰
 - (20) the idea which does not lead to emancipation (*anairyāṇikadrṣṭi*),³⁹¹
-

³⁸² Number (7), *anavadyatādrṣṭi*: is to think that one's own path or practice is perfect; number (8), *niḥsaranadrṣṭi*, is to think that there is safety by this way. If one rests on these two views, there is the tendency to good and evil.

³⁸³ Numbers (9) and (10): The bodhisattva considers his own opinion as best and scorns those of others because of *avajñādrṣṭi*, and he becomes angry with those who do not agree with him because of *prakopadrṣṭi*.

³⁸⁴ Numbers 11 and 12: The bodhisattva wrongly interprets teachings such as *śūnyatā*, *animitta*, *apraṇihita* because of *viparītadrṣṭi*, and he thinks that he can develop the virtues in this way (*prasavadṛṣṭi*).

³⁸⁵ Numbers (13) and (14): It is because of *anabhyupagamadrṣṭi* that a bodhisattva is attached to his own opinion and does not admit his error even when it is pointed out to him, and it is because of *kusṛtidṛṣṭi*, number 14, that he puts forth wrong arguments and reasonings to prove his opinion.

³⁸⁶ A bodhisattva may think with pride that his way of practicing the Dharma is true respect and offering to the Buddha and that others should follow his example. This is false pride (*abhimāna*).

³⁸⁷ This is to think 'This alone is the truth and the rest is false' (*idam eva saccam mogham aññam*). This is to hold to one's own opinion even when the truth is explained.

³⁸⁸ This is the coarseness of the traces (*vāsanā audārikatā*). All sixteen ideas just mentioned arise from this one, number (17).

³⁸⁹ In order to show the defects and bad consequences of these seventeen opinions, Vasubandhu also mentions several other *drṣṭis*. In fact, the following ten *drṣṭis* are produced by the first seventeen.

Number (18), *drṣṭāvadṛṣṭi adrṣṭi* is produced by number (1) *nimittadrṣṭi*. Number (18) appears from non-comprehension of teachings such as *niḥsvabhāvāḥ sarvadharmāḥ*, etc., and it produces an unrelenting attachment (*dṛḍhābhiniveśa*) to superficial signs and to the characteristics of dharmas.

³⁹⁰ This wrong view is caused by numbers (2), (3) and (4). Whoever grasps this view wrongly criticizes the nature of dharmas (*dharmasvabhāva*) and develops the notion that effort or energy (*vīrya*) is useless.

- (21) the idea of accumulating obstructions (*āvaranopacayadrṣṭi*),³⁹²
- (22) the idea of producing demerit (*apunyaprasavadrṣṭi*),³⁹³
- (23) the idea of absence of result (*vaiphalyadrṣṭi*),³⁹⁴
- (24) the idea of the censurable (*nigrāhyadrṣṭi*),³⁹⁵
- (25) the idea of slander (*abhyākhyānadṛṣṭi*),³⁹⁶
- (26) the idea of the ineffable (*akathyadrṣṭi*),³⁹⁷
- (27) the idea of grandeur (*mahādrṣṭi*),³⁹⁸ and
- (28) the idea of superior pride (*abhimānadṛṣṭi*).³⁹⁹

CBK.2.

THE PROFOUND MEANING OF ‘ALL THINGS LACK SELF-NATURE’

It is said in the *Vaipulya* that all things (*sarvadharmāḥ*) lack self-nature (*niḥsvabhāvāḥ*). What is the profound meaning (*abhisamdhī*) here?

All things lack self-nature due to their nonexistence in themselves (*svayam abhāvatā*), due to the nonexistence of their own self (*svenātmanā bhāvatā*), because they are not based in self-nature (*sve bhāve navasthita*), and because they are without real characteristics like the objects grasped by fools (*bālagrahavaccā’ lakṣaṇatām upādāya*).⁴⁰⁰

³⁹¹ As a result of numbers (5) and (6) *bhāvanā*, practice, cannot produce the result (*phala*), and as a result, one has the wrong opinion (number 20) that the *mārga* (Path) is *anairyāṇika* (does not lead to emancipation).

³⁹² As a result of numbers (7) and (8) the wrongs that one commits are not truly eliminated. Thus the obstructions accumulate (*āvarṇopacaya*).

³⁹³ As a result of numbers (9) and (10) scorn and anger, one follows a wrong path, a bad *brahmacarya*, which causes much harm and produces demerit (*apunyaprasava*).

³⁹⁴ As a result of numbers (11) and (12) one cannot obtain good results and consequently one develops the wrong idea that there is no result (*vaiphalya*).

³⁹⁵ The idea of censuring arises because a bodhisattva does not want to accept another's reasoning (number 13) and resorts to trickery (number 14).

³⁹⁶ This is the result of number (15), (*satkāradṛṣṭti*).

³⁹⁷ This idea arises because the bodhisattva grasps some idea and thinks: ‘This alone is the Truth; the rest is wrong’, (number 16).

³⁹⁸ This one is linked with number (17), *mūladṛṣṭi*.

³⁹⁹ All the 27 *dṛṣṭis* mentioned above produce the last wrong view, *abhimānadṛṣṭi*. Of these 28 wrong views or opinions of a Bodhisattva, the first 17 produce the following ten, i.e., 18 to 27, and these 27 all together contribute to cause the last one, number (28).

⁴⁰⁰ The commentary explains this expression: ‘Fools (*bāla*) who have not seen the truths, by being based on the traces (*vāsanā*), on language (*vyavahāra*) and on empty discursiveness (*prapañca*), wrongly seize the dharmas which are

Furthermore, all things lack self-nature as a result of the absence of the self-nature of characteristics (*lakṣaṇaniḥsvabhāvatā*) with respect to the imaginary nature (*parikalpite svabhāve*), as a result of the absence of nature of arising (*utpattiniḥsvabhātatā*) with respect to the relative nature (*paratantre*), and as a result of the absence of nature in the ultimate sense (*paramārthaniḥsvabhāva*) with respect to the absolute nature (*pariniśpanne*).

CBK.3.

THE PROFOUND MEANING OF ‘ALL THINGS ARE UNBORN, ETC.’

What is the profound meaning (*abhisamṛdhi*) of: All things are (1) unborn (*anutpanna*), (2) unceasing (*aniruddha*), (3) peaceful from the beginning (*ādiśanta*), (4) completely extinguished by nature (*prakṛtiparinirvṛta*)?

- (1) Since they have no self-nature (*niḥsvabhāva*), they are unborn (*anutpanna*);
- (2) since they are unborn, they are unceasing (*aniruddha*);
- (3) since they are neither born nor do they cease, they are peaceful from the beginning (*ādiśanta*);
- (4) since they are peaceful from the beginning, they are completely extinguished by nature (*prakṛtiparinirvṛta*).

CBK.4.

FOUR INTENTIONS

Furthermore, there are four intentions (*abhiprāya*) by means of which the intention of the Tathāgata in the *Vaipulya* should be followed (*anugantavya*):

- (i) equality (*samatā 'bhiprāya*),
- (ii) different times (*kālāntarābhiprāya*),
- (iii) different meanings (*arthāntarābhiprāya*) and
- (iv) the tendency of the individual (*pudgalāśayābhiprāya*).

CBK.5.

FOUR PROFOUND MEANINGS

There are four profound meanings (*abhisamṛdhi*) by means of which the profound meaning of the Tathagata in the *Vaipulya* should be followed:

1. the profound meaning that calls forth penetration (understanding) (*avatāraṇābhisaṁdhi*),
2. the profound meaning of the characteristics (*lakṣaṇasamṛdhi*),
3. the profound meaning of the antidotes (*pratipakṣābhisaṁdhi*) and

lacking self-nature (*svabhāva*) and characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*). It is due to this self-nature grasped in a way that is also wrong that it is said that dharmas are *niḥsvabhāva*.¹

-
4. the profound meaning of the transformation (*parināmanābhisaṃdhī*).⁴⁰¹

CBK.6.

FIVE CRITERIA FOR CORRECTLY UNDERSTANDING THE BODHISATTVA

How can one correctly understand (*pratyavagantavya*) the bodhisattva who is skilled in absorption on the teaching (*dharmaśamādhikuśala*) of the *Vaipulya*?

By virtue of five reasons:

- (i) Each moment he (i.e., the bodhisattva) dissipates (*drāvyati*, lit. dissolves) the basis of all disturbances (*sarvadauṣṭhulyāśraya*).
- (ii) He obtains the joy of devotion to the Truth (*dharmaṛāmarati*), lacking perception of diversity (*nānātvasaṃjñāvigata*).
- (iii) He understands the infinite splendor of the Truth (*aparamāṇam dharmāvabhāsam*) that has limitless aspects (*aparicchinnakāra*).
- (iv) His non-discriminated signs (*avikalpitāni nimittāni*), linked with purification (*viśuddhabhāgīyāni*), are active (*samudācarnati*).
- (v) He acquires further and further what is necessary for the accomplishment and perfection of the Body of Truth (*dharmakāyapariṇūpariniṣpatti*).

CBK.7.

FIVE KINDS OF MENTAL CULTIVATION

It is pointed out that the results coming from five kinds of mental cultivation (*bhāvanā*) are five fold. The five kinds of mental cultivation are:

- (i) Mixed mental development (*sambhinnabhāvanā*),
- (ii) mental development without signs (*animittabhāvanā*),
- (iii) spontaneous mental development (*anābhogabhāvanā*),
- (iv) purified mental development (*uttaptabhāvanā*),⁴⁰² and
- (v) revolution-like mental development in the appropriate order (*yathā kramam*).⁴⁰³

⁴⁰¹ For details, see Saṅgraha, pp. 129-132, 224-228.

⁴⁰² *Uttapta*, lit. ‘burned, heated’. Hence ‘purified’ by fire.

⁴⁰³ This paragraph is missing in the Chinese and Tibetan translations. But the Bhāṣya testifies as to the existence of this passage in the original Sanskrit by commenting on it as follows: *Tad etat pañcavidhāyā bhāvanāyāḥ phalam pañcavidhaṇīnirvartata iti sandarśitam. Pañcavidhā bhāvanā katamā? praśrabdhinimittabhāvnā, sambhinnabhāvanā, animittabhāvā, anābhogabhāvanā, parinivṛttinimittabhāvanā cha.* (Cited by Pradhan). In the passage of the Bhāṣya, *praśrabdhinimittabhāvanā* is used in place of *uttapatabhāvanā* and *parinivṛttinimittabhāvanā* in place of *parivṛttinibhāvanā*.

THE REASON FOR VENERATING THE DOCTRINE OF THE VAIPULYA

Why should the doctrine of the *Vaipulya* (*vaipulyadharma*) be venerated (*pūjya*) with incense, garlands, etc (*dhūpamālyādibhiḥ*), and not the doctrine of the disciples (*śrāvakadharma*)? Because it (*vaipulyadharma*) is the support of the well-being and happiness of all beings (*sarvasattvahitasukhādhīṣṭhāna*).

The Second Compendium entitled
Ascertainment of the Doctrine in the Compendium of the Super-Doctrine
is herein completed.

Kośa, IV, 248; VI, 119, 192, 228-9, 288, 300; VII, 23, 62, 64-5; VIII, 192; Sūtrālaṅkāra (XVI, 16), p. 102; Siddhi, pp. 597, 606, 629, treat the various aspects of *bhāvanā*, but they do not speak of the five kinds of *bhāvanā* mentioned here.

It is clear that the five kinds of *bhāvanā* refer to the five qualities of the Bodhisattva competent in the concentration on the doctrine of the Vaipulya (*vaipulye dharmasamādikusalo bodhisattvah*) mentioned in the preceding paragraph. Thus:

- 1) *Sambhinnabhāvanā* dissipates the basis of all disturbances (*sarvadausṭhulyāśrayam drāvayati*);
- 2) *animittabhāvanā* produces the joy of devotion to the Truth, free of perception of diversity (*nānātvasaṁjñāvigatāṁ dharmārāmaratim*);
- 3) *anābhogabhāvanā* produces the infinite splendor of the Truth which has limitless aspects (*aparicchinnākāram apramāṇam dharmāvavbhāsam*);
- 4) *utaptabhbāvanā* activates the signs without discrimination that are linked with purification (*viśuddhabhbāgīyāni avikalpitāni nimittāni*);
- 5) *parivṛttinibhbāvanā* acquires the necessities for accomplishment and perfection of the dharmakāya (*dharmakāyapariṇūripariṇiṣpattaye hetumayaparigraham*).

cc. **CHAPTER THREE ASCERTAINMENT OF ACQUISITIONS (PRĀPTIVINIŚCAYA)**

What is the ascertainment of acquisitions (prāptiviniścaya)?

In brief, it is twofold: it should be understood

- (1) by the definition of individuals (*pudgalavyavasthāna*) [First Section] and
- (2) by the definition of the understanding of the Truth (*abhisamayavyavasthāna*) [Second Section].

cca. **FIRST SECTION: DEFINITION OF INDIVIDUALS (PUDGALAVYAVASTHĀNA)**

cca.1. **SEVENFOLD CLASSIFICATION OF INDIVIDUALS**

What is the definition of individuals?

In brief, it is sevenfold: classification according to:

1. their character (*caritaprabheda*),
2. their deliverance (*niryāṇaprabheda*),
3. their receptacle or support (*ādhāraprabheda*),⁴⁰⁴
4. their application (*prayogaprabheda*),
5. their fruit (result) (*phalaprabheda*),
6. their domain (*dhātuprabheda*),
7. their career (*caryāprabheda*).

1. What is the classification according to their character (*caritaprabheda*)?

It is sevenfold:

- (i) dominated by desire (*rāgacarita*),
- (ii) dominated by hatred (*dveṣacarita*),
- (iii) dominated by ignorance (*mohacarita*),
- (iv) dominated by pride (*mānacarita*),
- (v) dominated by distraction (*vitarkacarita*),⁴⁰⁵
- (vi) normal character (balanced) (*samabhāgacarita*) and
- (vii) slightly passionate character (*mandarajaskacarita*).

2. What is classification according to their deliverance (*niryāṇaprabheda*)?

⁴⁰⁴ Rahula translates *ādhāra* as ‘receptacle’. Monier-Williams gives ‘support’, ‘substrate’ for *ādhāra*

⁴⁰⁵ *Vitarka* here does not mean ‘reasoning’.

It is threefold:

- (i) that of the Vehicle of the Disciples (*śrāvakayānika*),
- (ii) that of the Vehicle of the Individual Buddhas (*pratyekabuddhayānika*) and
- (iii) that of the Great Vehicle (*mahāyānika*).

3. What is classification according to their receptacle or support (*ādhāraprabheda*)? It is threefold:

- (i) one who has not yet acquired the accumulations (*asambhṛtasambhāra*),
- (ii) one who has and has not acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtāsambhṛtasambhāra*) and
- (iii) one who has already acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtasambhāra*).

4. What is classification according to their application (*prayogaprabheda*)?

It is twofold:

- (i) one who follows faith (*śraddhānusārin*) and
- (ii) one who follows the Doctrine (*dharmaṇusārin*).

5. What is the classification according to their fruit or result (*phalaprabheda*)?

It is of twenty-seven types:

- (1) the one who is devoted to faith (*śraddhādhi-mukta*),⁴⁰⁶
- (2) the one who has arrived at the view (*drṣṭiprāpta*),
- (3) the one who has experienced directly (*kāyasākṣi*),
- (4) the one who is liberated by wisdom (*prajñāvimukta*),
- (5) the one who is liberated in two ways (*ubhayatobhāgavimukta*),
- (6) the one who progresses towards the fruit of stream-entry (*srotaāpattiphala-pratipanna*),
- (7) the one who has entered into the stream (*srotaāpanna*),
- (8) the one who progresses towards the fruit of the once-returner (*sakrdāgāmiphala-pratipanna*),
- (9) the once-returner (*sakrdāgāmin*),
- (10) the one who progresses towards the fruit of the non-returner (*anāgāmiphala-pratipanna*),
- (11) the non-returner (*anāgāmin*),
- (12) the one who progresses towards the fruit of arhathood (*arhattvaphala-pratipanna*),
- (13) the arhat (*arhan*),

⁴⁰⁶ These 27 types will be explained below, p. [].

- (14) the one who will be reborn no more than seven times (*saptakṛtbhavaparama*),
- (15) the one who is destined to be reborn in many families (*kulaṃkula*),
- (16) the one who has but one interval (*ekavīcika*),
- (17) the one who attains parinirvāṇa in the intermediate state (*antarāparinirvāyin*),
- (18) the one who, being born, attains nirvāṇa (*upapadyaparinirvāyin*),
- (19) the one who attains nirvāṇa without effort (fabrication) (*anabhisamksāraparinirvāyin*),
- (20) the one who attains nirvāṇa with effort (*sābhisaṃskāraparinirvāyin*),
- (21) the one who swims upstream (*ūrdhvamṣrotsa*),
- (22) the arhat of deteriorating nature (*parihāṇadharma arhan*),
- (23) the arhat of volitional nature (*cetanādharma arhan*),
- (24) the arhat of protected nature (*anurakṣaṇādharma arhan*),
- (25) the arhat of stable and unshakeable nature (*sthitākampya arhan*),
- (26) the arhat of penetrating nature (*prativedhadharma arhan*) and
- (27) the arhat of unchanging nature (*akopyadharma arhan*).

6. What is classification according to their domain (*dhātuprabheda*)?

It consists of (i) the ordinary person (*prthagjana*), (ii) the one who is in the course of training (*śaikṣa*) and (iii) the one who is beyond training (*aśaikṣa*), all three within the realm of desire (*kāmadhātu*). Just as the realm of desire is threefold, so also are the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) and the formless realm (*ārūpyadhātu*) threefold. The bodhisattva abides in the realms of desire and form. The Individual Buddha (*pratyekabuddha*) abides in the realm of desire. The domain of the Tathāgata is inconceivable (*acintya*).

7. What is the classification according to their career (*caryāprabheda*)?

In brief, it is fivefold:

- (i) the bodhisattva whose career is directed by strong inclination (*adhimukticāriḥbodhisattva*),
- (ii) the bodhisattva whose career is directed by strong resolve (*adhyāśayacāriḥbodhisattva*),⁴⁰⁷
- (iii) the bodhisattva whose career is endowed with signs (*sanimittacāriḥbodhisattva*),
- (iv) the bodhisattva whose career is without signs (*animittacāriḥbodhisattva*) and
- (v) the bodhisattva whose career is without fabrications (*anabhisamksāracāriḥbodhisattva*).⁴⁰⁸

⁴⁰⁷ The *Bodhisattvabhūmi*, p. 313, defines *adhyāśaya* as follows: *śraddhāpūrvo dharmavicayapūrvakaś ca buddhadharmaśu yo'dhimokṣah pratyavagamo niścayo bodhisattvasya, so'dhyāśaya ityucyate.* ‘Strong inclination, deep understanding, strong conviction of a bodhisattva, preceded by faith and investigation of the doctrine, in respect to the teaching of the Buddha: this is called *adhyāśaya*.’

CCA.2.

THREE PERSONS IN RELATION TO THEIR CHARACTER

1) What is the person whose character is dominated by (i) desire (*rāgacarita*)? It is the person in whom desire is intense and widespread (*tīvrāyatarāga*). It is the same for persons whose characters are dominated by (ii) hatred (*dveṣa*), (iii) ignorance (*moha*), (iv) pride (*māna*) or (v) distraction (*vitarka*).

2) What is the person whose character is normal or balanced (*samabhāgacarita*)?

It is the one in whom the defilements are normal, balanced, natural (*prakṛtisthakleśa*).

3) What is the person whose character is slightly passionate (*mandarajaskacarita*)?

It is the one whose defilements are naturally tiny (*tanutarakleśa*).

CCA.3.

THREE PERSONS IN RELATION TO THE VEHICLES

1) What is the person belonging to the Vehicle of the Disciples (*śrāvakayānika*)?

It is a person who, having or not having attained the absorptions (*saṃpanno vā aśaṃpanno vā*), dwelling in the Doctrine of the Disciples (*śrāvakadharmaṭāvihārin*), having weak faculties by nature (*mṛdvindriya*), pursuing his own liberation (*svavimuktipraṇihita*), having the intention of liberating himself (*vimuktāśya*) by means of cultivating detachment (*vairāgyabhāvanā*), relying on the Canon of the Disciples (*śrāvakapiṭaka*), practicing the major and minor virtues (*dharmānu-dharmachārin*), by means of the development of exertion (*vīryabhāvanā*), puts an end to suffering.

2) What is the person belonging to the Vehicle of the Individual Buddhas (*pratyekabuddhayānika*)?

It is a person who, having or not having attained the absorptions, dwelling in the Doctrine of the Individual Buddhas (*pratyekabuddhadharmaṭāvihārin*), having medium faculties (*madhyendriya*) by nature, pursuing his own liberation, having the intention of liberating himself by means of the development of detachment, having the intention of attaining enlightenment (*adhigatabodhyāśaya*) by cultivating experience by himself, depending on the Canon of the Disciples, practicing the major and minor virtues by means of developing exertion, having previously produced or not having previously produced the qualities leading to penetration (*nirvedhabhāgīya*), having previously obtained or not having previously obtained a fruit, born at a time when there is no Buddha in the world (*abuddhaloka* or *abuddhabhava*),⁴⁰⁹ facing up alone to the Noble Path by inner volition (*adhyātmacetanā*) alone, dwelling alone (*ekavīhārin*) like the horn of a rhinoceros (*khaḍgaviṣāṇakalpa*)⁴¹⁰ or like a lone conqueror (*pratyekajina*) living in a group (*vargacārin*),⁴¹¹ puts an end to suffering.⁴¹²

⁴⁰⁸ These five terms referring to the various stages of the *bodhisattvabhūmis* will be explained below.

⁴⁰⁹ A Pratyekabuddha appears in the world only when there is no Buddha, i.e., Samyaksambuddha, “Perfectly Enlightened One”. A Buddha and a Pratyekabuddha never appear in the same period.

⁴¹⁰ Cf. *eko care khaggavisāṇakappo* (*Kaggavisāṇa-sutta*, Sn, p. 6, vv, 35-75). *Khadgavisāṇakalpa* is usually translated as ‘like the rhinoceros’ (Kośa, III, p. 194). But *khaḍga* or *khaḍgin* means ‘rhinoceros’, *viṣāṇa* means ‘horn’, and *kalpa* means ‘like’. Thus *khaggavisāṇakalpa* should mean “like the horn of a rhinoceros.” Indeed, SnA, p. 65, explains the expression clearly in this sense: *khaggavisāṇm nāma khaggamigasingām’khaggavisāṇa* means the horn of the animal

3) What is a person belonging to the Great Vehicle (*mahāyānika*)?

It is a person who, having attained or not having attained the absorptions, dwelling in the Doctrine of the Bodhisattva (*bodhisattvadharmatāvihārin*), having sharp faculties (*tīkṣṇendriya*) by nature, assiduous in pursuing in the liberation of all beings (*sarvasattvavimokṣa*), having the intention of attaining non-established nirvāṇa (*apratiṣṭhitānirvāṇāśaya*), relying on the Canon of the Bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvapiṭaka*), practicing the major and minor virtues by cultivating exertion, ripens beings (*sattvān paripācayati*), cultivates the pure land of the Buddhas (*śuddām buddhabhūmiṁ bhāvayati*), receives the prophecy (*vyākaraṇa*)⁴¹³ and attains complete enlightenment (*samyaksambodhi*).

CCA.4.

THREE PERSONS IN RELATION TO THE ACQUISITION OF THE ACCUMULATIONS

1) What is a person who has not acquired the accumulations (*asambhṛtasambhāra*)?

It is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, who has weak dispositions (*mṛḍumātra*), is dedicated to pure faith (*śuddhaśraddhādhimukta*), has weak qualities leading to deliverance (*mṛḍumātramokṣabhbāgīya*), and whose period of rebirths is indefinite (*aniyatajanmakālīka*).⁴¹⁴

2) What is a person who has and has not acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtāsambhṛtasambhāra*)?

It is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, has medium dispositions (*madhyamātra*), is dedicated to pure faith, has medium qualities leading to deliverance (*madhyamātramokṣabhbāgīya*) and whose period of rebirths is definite (*niyatajanmakālīka*).⁴¹⁵

3) What is the person who has acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtasambhāra*)?

It is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, has superior dispositions (*adhimātra*), is dedicated to pure faith, has superior qualities leading to deliverance (*adhimātramokṣabhbāgīya*), and whose number of rebirths is limited to this one lifetime (*tajjanmakālīka*).⁴¹⁶

called *khagga* (i.e., rhinoceros'). As the Asian rhinoceros has but one single horn, a person dwelling all alone may be compared to the horn of this animal. But the term *khadgaviṣāṇa* may also be considered as a compound *bahuvrīhi* meaning 'he who has one horn like a sword', an expression close to *khadgin* 'he who has a sword (i.e., a horn like a sword).' In this case, *khadgaviṣāṇakalpa* could be translated as 'like the rhinoceros'.

⁴¹¹ There are two classes of Pratyekabuddha: *Khadgaviṣāṇakalpas* living alone and *Vargacārins* living as a group. The Paccekkabuddhas mentioned in the *Isigili-sutta* (M III, 68 and foll., are *Vargacārins* whereas the *Khaggavisāṇa-sutta* (Sn, p. 6 and foll.) describe the Pratyekabuddhas who are *Khadgaviṣāṇakalpas*.

⁴¹² The descriptions of pacceka-buddha in the Pali sources are very similar. For details, see SnA I, 47, 51, 58, 63; *Puggalapaññātti*, p. 14; Jāt, IV, 341.

⁴¹³ *Vyākaraṇa*: a prophecy pronounced by a Buddha announcing that a certain person (a bodhisattva) will become a Buddha some day.

⁴¹⁴ This is an ordinary person (*prthagjana*).

⁴¹⁵ This is an *ārya* who is a *śaikṣa* (in the course of training).

Moreover,

- 1) a person who has not acquired the accumulations (*asambhṛtasambhāra*) is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, who has weak acceptance of the profound reflection on the doctrines (*mṛdumātradharmanidhyānakṣānti*) concerning the Truths, who has weak qualities leading to penetration (*mṛdumātranirvedhabhāgīya*) and whose period of rebirths is indefinite.
- 2) A person who has and has not acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtāsambhṛtasambhāra*) is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, who has medium acceptance of the profound reflection on the doctrines concerning the Truths, who has medium qualities leading to penetration, and whose period of rebirths is definite.
- 3) A person who has acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtasambhāra*) is a person who is dependent on the Doctrine governed by the Truth, who has intense acceptance of the profound reflection on the doctrines concerning the Truths, who has intense qualities leading to penetration and whose number of rebirths is limited to this one lifetime.

CCA.5.

PERSONS IN RELATION TO QUALITIES LEADING TO PENETRATION AND TO DELIVERANCE

The three categories of qualities leading to penetration, except for the higher worldly qualities (*laukikāgradharma*), are instantaneous (*kṣaṇika*) and not continuous (*aprābandhika*) as a result of the very nature of the higher worldly qualities. The person whose period of rebirths is limited to this one lifetime (*tajjanmakālika*), by attaining the clear understanding of the Truth (*abhisamaya*), loses (*parihīyate*) the weak, medium and intense qualities leading to deliverance and penetration, and this results from the loss of the conduct (*samudācāraparihāṇi*) and not from the loss of the latent traces (*vāsanāparihāṇi*).

CCA.6.

THE PERSONS WHO FOLLOW FAITH AND THE DOCTRINE

What is a person who follows faith (*śraddhānusārī*)?

It is one who, having acquired the accumulations (*sambhṛtasambhāra*) and having weak faculties (*mṛdvindriya*), applies himself (*prayujyate*) to understanding the Truth (*satyābhīsamayāya*) by remembering the instructions given by others (*paropadeśa*).⁴¹⁷

⁴¹⁶ This refers to the arhat.

⁴¹⁷ Cf. the definition of *saddhānusārī* in M I, p. 479: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo saddhānusārī? Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikamma rūpe āruppā te na kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c'assa disvā āsavā aparikkhīnā honti, Tathāgate c'assa saddhāmattam hoti pemamattam, api c'assa ime dhamma honti, seyyathīdam: saddhindriyam, viryidriyam, satindriyam, samādhindriyam, paññindriyam. Ayaṁ vuccati bhikkhave puggalo saddhānusārī.*

What, O monks, is a person who follows faith? There is, O monks, a certain person who does not experience in himself the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm, and who has not destroyed his impurities after having seen by means of his wisdom, and who has only faith in and affection for the Tathagata, but who has these

What is a person who follows the Doctrine (*dhammānusārīn*)? It is the one who, having acquired the accumulations and having sharp faculties (*tīkṣṇendriya*), applies himself to understanding the Truth by himself, by remembering the doctrine⁴¹⁸ governed by the Truth (*satyādhipateya dharma*).⁴¹⁹

CCA.7.

THE 27 KINDS OF INDIVIDUALS CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THEIR RESULT

1) What is a person devoted to faith (*śraddhādhimukta*)?

A person who follows faith (*śraddhānusārin*) is called *śraddhādhimukta* at the moment he obtains the fruit (*phalakāle*).⁴²⁰

qualities, namely, the faculties of faith, exertion, attentiveness, concentration and wisdom. That one, O monks, is called a person who follows faith.'

Cf. also the description in Vsm, p. 659: *Yo hi aniccato manasikaronto adhimokhabahulo saddhindriyam paṭilabhati, so sotāpattimaggakkhaṇe saddhānusārī hoti.* 'If a person, full of devotion, reflecting on impermanence, obtains the faculty of faith, that person is called *saddhānusārī* at the moment of entering the Path of *sotāpatti*'

⁴¹⁸ This explanation agrees with the definition of *dhammānusārī* in MA III, p. 190: *dhammam anussaratīti dhammānusārī.* *Dhammānusārī* means 'remembering the doctrine.'

⁴¹⁹ Cf. the definition of *dhammānusārī* in M I, p. 479: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo dhammānusārī?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikkamma rūpe āruppā te na kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c'assa disvā āsavā aparikkhīnā honti. Tathāgatappaveditā c'assa dhammā paññāya mattaso nijjhāṇī khamanti, api c'assa ime dhammā honti, seyyathīdaṃ: saddhindriyam, viriyindriyam, satindriyam, samādhindriyam paññindriyam. Ayaṃ vuccati bhikkhave puggalo dhammānusārī.*

'O monks, what is a person who follows the doctrine? There is, O monks, a certain person who does not experience in himself the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm, and who has not destroyed his impurities after having seen with his wisdom, who, by means of his wisdom, partially accepts the profound reflection on the doctrines explained by the Tathāgata, but who possesses these qualities, namely, the faculties of faith, energy, attentiveness, concentration and wisdom. He, O monks, is called a person who follows the Doctrine.'

Cf. also the description of this person in Vsm, p. 659: *Yo pana anattato manasikaronto vedabahulo paññindriyam paṭilabhati, so sotāpattimaggakkhaṇe dhammānusārī hoti.* 'If a person, full of knowledge, reflecting on the absence of self, attains the faculty of wisdom, that person is called *dhammānusārī* at the moment of entering the path of *sotāpatti*'

The *Cūlagopātaka-sutta* (M I, p. 226) compares *saddhānusārī* and *dhammānusārī* to a new-born calf that needs the help of its mother to cross the river. Such are these two persons who are at the beginning of the path of *sotāpatti* (*paṭhamamaggasamaigino*, MA II, p. 267).

The five qualities (*indriya*) – *saddhā, viriya, sati, samādhi, paññā* – are more developed in the *dhammānusārī* than in the *saddhānusārī*. To the degree that these five faculties are developed, one becomes successively *sotāpanna, sakadāgāmī, anāgāmī* and *arahant*. (S V, p. 200).

⁴²⁰ In the Pali sources this person is called *saddhāvimutta* 'liberated by means of faith'. Vsm, p. 659 agrees with the definition in our text when it says that the *saddhānusārī* is called *saddhāvimutta* in the other seven stages, i.e., *sotāpattiphala*, etc. (*sesu sattasu ṭhānesu*).

2) What is a person who has arrived at seeing (*dr̄ṣṭiprāpta*)?

A person who follows the doctrine (*dharmaṇusārī*) is called *dr̄ṣṭiprāpta* at the moment when he obtains the fruit (*phalakāle*).⁴²¹

3) What is a person who has directly experienced (*kāyasākṣin*)?

It is a person in the course of training (*śaikṣa*) who experiences the eight deliverances (*aṣṭavimokṣa*).⁴²²

Cf. the definition of *saddhāvimutta* in M I, p. 478: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo saddhāvimutto?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikamma rūpe āruppā te na kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c’assa disvā ekacce āsavā parikhīṇā honti, Tathāgate c’assa saddhā niviṭṭhā hotimūlajātā patiṭṭhitā. Ayaṁ vuccati bhikkhave puggalo saddhāvimutto.*

‘O monks, what is a person who is liberated by means of faith? There is, O monks, a certain person who does not experience in himself the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm, and who, having seen by means of his wisdom, has destroyed some of his impurities, and whose faith in the Tathāgata is steady, rooted, established. That one, O monks, is called a person who is liberated by faith.’

⁴²¹ Vsm, p. 659, says that a person who was *dhammānusārī* at the moment of entering the *sotāpattimagga* becomes *diṭṭhipatta* in the other six stages, i.e., *sotāpattiphalā* up to *arahattamagga*, but he is *paññāvimutta* when he attains *arahattaphala*.

Cf. the definition of *diṭṭhipatta* in M I, p. 478: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo diṭṭhipatto?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikamma rūpe āruppā te na kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c’assa disvā ekacce āsavā parikkhīṇā honti, Tathāgatappaveditā c’assa dhammā paññāya vodiṭṭhā honti vocaritā. Ayaṁ vuccati bhikkhave puggalo diṭṭhipatto.*

‘O monks, what is a person who has arrived at insight (vision)? There is, O monks, a certain person who has not experienced in himself the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm, and who, having seen by means of his wisdom, has destroyed some of his impurities, and who has seen and understood the doctrines explained by the Tathāgata. That one, O monks, is called a person who has arrived at insight (vision).’

⁴²² *Aṣṭavimokṣa*: (1) As long as one remains in the form realm, one sees visible forms (*rūpi rūpāni passati*), (2) liberated from the perception of visible forms in oneself, one perceives visible forms externally (*ajjhattā arūpasāññī bahiddhā rūpāni passati*), (3) experiencing what is pleasant, one is filled with devotion (*subhaniveva adhimutto hoti*), (4) the sphere of infinite space (*ākāsaṇāñcāyatana*), (5) the sphere of infinite consciousness (*viññānaṇāñcāyatana*), (6) the sphere of nothingness (*ākiñcaññāñcāyatana*), (7) the sphere of neither-perception-nor-nonperception (*nevasaṇñāñāsaṇñāñcāyatana*), and (8) the cessation of perceptions and sensations (*saññāvedayitanirodha*). For details, see D III, pp. 261-262; A IV, 306; Vbh, p. 342; Kośa, VIII, p. 203.

Cf. the definition of *kāyasakkhi* in M I, p. 478: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo kāyasakkhi?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikamma rūpe āruppā te kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c’assa disvā ekacce āsavā parikhīṇā honti. Ayaṁ vuccati bhikkhave puggalo kāyasakkhi.*

‘O monks, what is a person who has directly experienced? There is, O monks, a certain person who experiences in his own body the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form and who, having seen by means of his wisdom, has destroyed some of his impurities. He, O monks, is called a person who has directly experienced.’

See also A IV, p. 451.

4) What is a person liberated by means of wisdom (*prajñāvimukta*)?

It is a person who has destroyed his impurities (*kṣīṇāsrava*, i.e., an arhat), but who does not experience the eight deliverances (*aṣṭavimokṣa*).⁴²³

5) What is a person liberated by both means (*ubhayatobhāgavimukta*)?

It is a person who has destroyed his impurities (*kṣīṇāsrava*, i.e., an arhat) and who experiences the eight deliverances (*aṣṭavimokṣa*).⁴²⁴

6) What is a person progressing towards the fruit of stream-entry (*srotāpatti-phala-pratipannaka*)?

It is a person who is in the fifteen moments of mind (*cittakṣaya*) leading to penetration (*nirvedhabhāgīya*) and belonging to the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*).⁴²⁵

See also the definition in Vsm, p. 659: *Yo pana dukkhatō manasikaronto passaddibahula samādhindriyam paṭilabhati, so sabbattha kāyasakkhī nāma hoti.* ‘If a person, fully relaxed, reflecting on suffering, attains the faculty of concentration, he is everywhere called *kāyasakkhī*.’

In A I, p. 118-120, there is an interesting discussion between Sāriputta, Saviṭṭha and Mahā-Koṭṭita as to which is the best of the three persons – *saddhāvimutta* (= śraddhādhimukta), *dīṭhipattā* (= drṣṭiprāpta) and *kāyasakkhī* (= *kāyasākṣin*). Saviṭṭha favors the *saddhāvimutta* because this person has highly developed the faculty of faith (*saddhādhriya*); Mahā-Koṭṭita thinks that the *kāyasakkhī* is best because he has highly developed the faculty of concentration (*saṃādhindriya*); Sāriputta considers the *dīṭhipattā* the best because he has highly developed the faculty of wisdom (*paññādhriya*). As their opinions differ, they go to the Buddha and ask for his judgment. The Buddha says that it is not possible to decide that any one is better than the others because any one of them can be progressing to the state of arhat (*arahattāyapaṭipanno*) and any one of them can be *sakadāgamī* or *anāgāmī*.

According to the Kośa, VI, p. 223, an *anāgañin* who is in possession of *saṃjñāvēdayitanirodha* is a *kāyasākṣin*.

⁴²³ This definition is corroborated by that of *paññāvimutta* in M I, p. 477: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo paññāvimutto?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikkamma rūpe āruppā te kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c'assa disvā āsavā parikkhīṇā honti. Ayam vuccati bhikkhave puggalo paññāvimoto.*

‘O monks, what is a person liberated by means of wisdom? There is, O monks, a certain person who does not experience in his own body the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm and who, having seen by means of his wisdom, has destroyed his impurities. He, O monks, is called a person liberated by means of wisdom.’

The state of *prajñāvimukta* is attained by development of *vidarśanā* ‘insight’ (A I, p. 61).

According to Vsm, p.659, when the *dīṭhipattā* becomes arhat, he is called *paññāvimutta*. Cf. Kośa, VI, pp. 274, 276.

⁴²⁴ D II, p. 71, clearly confirms this definition. See also A IV, p. 453. Cf. the definition of *ubhatobhāgavimutta* in M I, p. 477: *Katamo ca bhikkhave puggalo ubhatobhāgavimutto?* *Idha bhikkhave ekacco puggalo ye te santā vimokkhā atikkamma rūpe āruppā te kāyena phassitvā viharati, paññāya c'assa disvā āsavā parikkhīṇā honti. Ayam vuccati bhikkhave puggalo ubhatobhāgavimutto.* ‘O monks, what is a person liberated by both means? There is, O monks, a certain person who experiences with his own body the calm deliverances of the formless realm that are beyond the form realm and who, having seen by means of his wisdom, has destroyed his impurities. That person, O monks, is called a person liberated by both means.’

See also Kośa, II, p. 205; VI, pp. 273, 275; Vsm, p. 659.

7) What is a stream-enterer (*srotāpanna*)?

It is a person who is in the sixteenth moment of mind (*cittakṣaṇa*) belonging to the Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*).⁴²⁶

The Path of seeing (*darśanamārga*) is the entry into the certainty of perfection (*samyaktvaniyāmāvakrānti*).⁴²⁷ It is also the clear understanding of the Truth (*dharmaṁbhismaya*). By entering into the certainty of perfection (*samyaktvaniyāmām avakrāman*), a person who is not free of desire for the sense-pleasures (*kameśvavītarāga*) becomes a stream-enterer (*srotāpanna*). By entering into the certainty of perfection, a person who, to a great extent, is free from desire for the sense pleasures, becomes a once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmin*). By entering into the certainty of perfection, a person who is free from desire for the sense pleasures becomes a non-returner (*anāgāmin*).

If one becomes a stream-enterer (*srotāpanna*) by abandoning the defilements (*kleśa*) that must be abandoned by means of insight (*darana*), why is it said that one becomes a stream-enterer by abandoning the three fetters (*samyojana*)?⁴²⁸ Because the three fetters include the principal elements (*pradhāna-samgraha*).⁴²⁹

Why are they the principal elements?

- (i) Because the fetters are the cause of non-departure (*anuccalanakāraṇa*);⁴³⁰
- (ii) because, although one may have started on the way (*uccalita*), they are the cause of false emancipation (*mithyāniryānakāraṇa*);⁴³¹

⁴²⁵ The fifteen moments of mind (*cittakṣaṇa*) mentioned here are of *duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣanti* (acquiescence to the knowledge of the doctrine on suffering) up to *mārge'nvayajñānakṣanti* (acquiescence to the consecutive knowledge of the Path). For details, see above, p. [].

⁴²⁶ The sixteenth mind moment mentioned here is the *mārge'nvayajñāna* (subsequent knowledge of the Path). See also Kośa, VI, p. 192. For details on *sotāpanna*, see D I, 156; III, 107, 132, 227; A II, 89; S II, 68; III, 203, 225; V, 193; Vsm, 6, 709.

⁴²⁷ *Samyakta* (Pali *sammatta*) is the abandonment of the defilements (*kleśa*), the state of perfection which is *nirvāṇa*. *Samyaktvaniyāmāvakrānti* (Pali *sammattaniyāma-okkanti*) is the entry into the Path that leads definitively to perfection, *nirvāṇa*. A III, p. 442, says that a person who enters into the certainty of perfection (*sammattaniyāmām okkamamāno*) will obtain the fruits (*phala*) of *sotāpatti*, *sakadāgamāmi*, *anāgāmi* and *arahant*.

For details, see S, III, p. 225; A, III, pp. 442-443; D, III, p. 217; Kośa, III, p. 137; Vsm, p. 611.

⁴²⁸ The three fetters: *satkāyadr̥ṣṭi* (the idea of a self), *vicikitsā* (doubt), *śīlavrataparāmarśa* (attachment to rites and rituals).

⁴²⁹ Because these three fetters are the principal obstacles.

⁴³⁰ Because they tie beings to *samsāra* and prevent them from making a step towards emancipation.

⁴³¹ Even if one makes a step towards emancipation, one could take a bad path (*mithyāmārga*) leading to a false emancipation as a result of *śīlavrataparāmarśa* (attachment to rites, ceremonialism and external observances) and of *vichikitsa* (doubt in regard to the right path).

- (iii) because they are the cause of imperfect emancipation (*samyag aniryānakāraṇa*);⁴³²
- (iv) because they are the cause of perversion of the knowable (*jñeyavipratipatti*), perversion of the views (*dṛṣṭivipratipatti*), perversion of the antidotes (*pratipakṣavipratipatti*).

8) What is a person progressing towards the fruit of a once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmiphalapratipannaka*)?

It is a person who, in the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*), is in the process of abandoning the five categories of defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacarānām pañcaprakārānām kānām*).⁴³³

9) What is a once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmin*)?

It is a person who, on the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*), is in the process of abandoning the sixth category of defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacarasya ṣaṣṭhasya kleśaprakārasya*).⁴³⁴

10) What is a person progressing towards the fruit of non-returner (*anāgāmiphalapratipannaka*)?

It is a person who, in the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*), is in the process of abandoning the seventh and eighth categories of defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmācavarānām saptamāṣṭamānām kleśaprakārānām*).⁴³⁵

11) What is a non-returner (*anāgāmin*)?

It is a person who, in the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*), is in the process of abandoning the ninth category of defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacarasya navamasya kleśaprakārasya*).⁴³⁶

If one becomes a non-returner (*anāgāmin*) by abandoning all the defilements belonging to the realm of the sense pleasures that must be abandoned by the path of cultivation (*bhāvanā*), why is

⁴³² As a result of the false idea of a self (*satkāyadrṣṭi*), of doubt in regard to the right path (*vichikitsa*) and of attachment to rites, rituals, etc. (*śīlavrataparāmarśa*), one could attain something that is not perfect emancipation. Thus it is necessary to rid oneself of these three bad principal elements in order to enter the stream leading to perfect emancipation.

⁴³³ The five categories of defilements: *adhimātra-adhimātra* (intense-intense), *adhimātra-madhyā* (intense-medium), *adhimāramrdu* (intense-weak), *madhyā-adhimātra* (medium-intense), *madhyā-madhyā* (medium-medium). See above, p. [] in note

⁴³⁴ The sixth category of defilements: *madhyā-mrdu* (medium-weak). For details on the *sakadāgāmī*, see D I, 156, 229; III, 107; M I, p.34; S III, p. 168; A I, pp. 120, 232; II, pp. 89, 134; III, 384; IV, 292, 380; V, 138; Vsm, p. 710.

⁴³⁵ The seventh and eighth categories of defilements: *mrdu-adhimātra* (weak-intense) and *mrdu-madhyā* (weak-medium).

⁴³⁶ The ninth category of defilements: *mrdu-mrdu* (weak-weak). For details concerning the *anāgāmī*, see D I, p. 156; II, 92; III, 107; M II, 146; A I 64; II, 134, 163; S III, 168; Vsm, pp. 677, 708, 710.

it said that one becomes a non-returner by abandoning the five lower fetters (*avarabhāgīyasamyojana*)?⁴³⁷ Because the fetters include the principal elements (*pradhānasamgraha*).

Why are they the principal elements? As a result of the lower destiny (*gatyavara*) and the lower realm (*dhātvavara*).⁴³⁸

12) What is a person progressing towards the fruit of arhat (*arhattvaphalapratipannaka*)?

It is a person who is in the process of abandoning the eight categories of defilements as far as the limit of existence (*yāvad bhāvāgrikāñām aśāprakarāñām kleśāñām*).⁴³⁹

13) What is an arhat?

It is a person who is in the process of abandoning the ninth category of defilements belonging to the limit of existence (*bhāvāgrikasya navamasya kleśaprakārasya*).⁴⁴⁰

If one becomes an arhat by abandoning all the defilements belonging to the three realms (*traidhātukāvacarāñām sarvakleśāñām*),⁴⁴¹ why is it said that one becomes an arhat by abandoning the higher fetters (*ūrdhvabhāgīya*)?⁴⁴² Because the fetters include the principal elements (*pradhānasamgraha*).

Why are they the principal elements? As a result of attachment to the higher realm (*ūrdhvopādāna*) and non-abandonment of the higher realm (*ūrdhvāparītyāga*).⁴⁴³

14) What is the person who will be reborn no more than seven times (*saptakṛtbhavaparama*)?

⁴³⁷ The five lower fetters: 1. *satkāyadr̥ṣṭi* (idea of a self), 2. *vicikitsa* (doubt), 3. *śīlavrataparāmarśa* (attachment to rites and rituals); 4. *kāmarāga* (desire for the sense pleasures), 5. *vyāpāda* or *pratigha* (enmity or hatred)

⁴³⁸ The five lower fetters (*avarabhāgīyasamyojana*) tie beings to the lower realm, i.e., *kāmadhātu*, the realm of the sense pleasures, and leads them to a lower destiny (*gatyavara*), i.e., a rebirth in the *kāmadhātu*, which includes the animal and hungry ghost (preta) worlds and the hells (*naraka*). This is the principal element of the *avarabhāgīyasamyojana*.

⁴³⁹ The eight categories of defilements: 1. *adhimātra-adhimātra*, 2. *adhimātra-madhyā*, 3. *adhimātra-mṛdu*, 4. *madhyā-adhimātra*, 5. *madhyā-madhyā*, 6. *madhyā-mṛdu*, 7. *mṛdu-adhimātra*, 8. *mṛdu-madhyā*. See above, p. [].

⁴⁴⁰ The ninth category of defilements: *mṛdu-mṛdu*. See above, p. .

Concerning the arhat, see also S IV, pp. 151, 252; Vsm, pp. 6, 14, 97, 164, 442, 708.

⁴⁴¹ Pradhan's reading (p.90) *traidhātukāñām kāmāvacarāñām sarvakleśāñām* is clearly wrong, because *traidhātuka* consists of not only *kāmāvacara* but also *rūpāvacara* and *ārūpyāvacara*. Gokhale correctly reads: *traidhātukāvacarāñām sarvakleśāñām*.

⁴⁴² The five higher fetters: *rūparāga* (desire for the form realm); *ārūpyarāga* (desire for the formless realm); *māna* (pride); *auddhatya* (excitement) and *avidyā* (ignorance).

⁴⁴³ Because of the higher fetters (*ūrdhvabhāgīyasamyojana*), beings are tied to the higher realms (*ūrdhvopādāna*), i.e., tied to the form realm (*rūpadhātu*) and the formless realm (*ārūpyadhātu*), and they do not abandon attachment to these higher realms (*ūrdhvāparītyāga*). This is the major element of the *ūrdhvabhāgīyasamyojanas*.

It is one who, being a stream-enterer (*srotaāpanna*), comes to the end of suffering (*duḥkhasyāntam*) after having wandered through the existences (*bhavān*), sometimes among the gods, sometimes among men (*devamanuṣyesu*), up to seven times.⁴⁴⁴

15) What is a person who is destined to be reborn in many families (*kulaṃkula*)?

It is a person who comes to the end of suffering after having wandered from family to family amongst the gods or men.⁴⁴⁵

16) What is a person who has only one interval (*ekavīcika*)?⁴⁴⁶

It is a once-returner (*sakrdāgāmin*) who comes to the end of suffering by dwelling only amongst the gods (*deveshevva*).⁴⁴⁷

17) What is a person who attains parinirvāṇa in the intermediate state (*antarāparinirvāyin*)?

It is a person who, when the fetters of rebirth have been destroyed (*upapattisamyojane prahīne*) but the fetters of continuity (to advance) have not yet been destroyed (*abhinirvṛttisamyojane aprahīne*), while advancing towards the intermediate existence (*antarābhavam abhinirvartayan*), faces up to the Path (*mārgam sammukhīkṛya*) and puts an end to suffering; or who, having advanced into the intermediate existence (*abhinirvṛtto vā antarābhavē*), while reflecting on going to the existence of a rebirth (*upapattibhavagamanāya cetayan*), faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering; or who, having reflected and having started towards the existence of a rebirth (*abhisañcetayitvā vā upapattibhavam abhisamprasthitah*), without, however, arriving at the existence of a rebirth (*anāgāmyopapattibhavam*), faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering.⁴⁴⁸

⁴⁴⁴ Almost the same definition of *sattakkhattuparama* in A I, pp. 233, 235; IV, 381: *so tiṇṇam saṃyojanānam parikkhaya sattakkhattuparamo hoti, sattakkhattuparamam deve ca mānuse ca saṃdhāvitvā saṃsaritvā dukkhassantam karoti*. See also Pug, p. 15. Vsm, p. 709, says that a *sattakkhattuparama* has weak faculties (*mudinriya*) and that his insight is slow (*mandā vipassanā*). See also Kośa, pp. 200, 206.

⁴⁴⁵ In the Pali texts, *kolaṃkola*. The Pāli sources specify that a *kolaṃkola*, who is a *sotāpanna*, is reborn only two or three times before putting an end to suffering: *tiṇṇam saṃyojanānam parikkhayā kolaṃkolo hoti, dve vā tīni vā kulāni samdhāvitvā saṃsaritvā dukkhassantam karoti*. A, I, p. 233; IV, 381; Pug, p. 16. According to Vsm, p. 709, a *kolaṃkola* has medium faculties (*majjhimindriya*) and medium insight (*majjhimā vipassanā*). See also Kośa, VI, p. 206.

⁴⁴⁶ In the Pali texts, *ekabījī*, lit. ‘having only one seed(?)’

⁴⁴⁷ In the Pali texts, an *ekabījī* is a *sotāpanna* who will put an end to suffering by being born as a man, not as a god: *tiṇṇam saṃyojanānam parikkhayā ekabījī hoti, ekaṃ maṇusakam bhavaṇi nibbattitvā dukkhassantam karoti*. A I, p. 233; IV, 380; Pug, p. 16. Kośa (VI, 208-209) recognizes the *ekavīchika* as *sakrdāgāmin*. According to Vsm, p. 709, an *ekabījī* has sharp faculties (*tikkhindriya*) and sharp insight (*tikkhā vipassanā*).

⁴⁴⁸ Vsm, p. 710, defines the *antarāparinibbāyi* quite differently: *antarāparinibbāyīti yattha katthaci suddhāvāsabhave uppajjivitvā āyuvemajjhā appatvā va parinibbāyati*. ‘*Antarāparinibbāyī*’ designates a person who, born in some *suddhāvāsabhava* (pure land), before even having come to the middle of his life-span, attains *parinirvāṇa*. See also Puggala, p. 16. For details concerning the *antarāparinirvāyin*, see Kośa VI, p. 210; A II, pp. 133-134.

18) What is a person who, having been born, attains parinirvāṇa (*upapadyaparinirvāyin*)?⁴⁴⁹

It is a person who, while the two kinds of fetters have not been destroyed (*ubhayasamyojane aprahīne*),⁴⁵⁰ faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering⁴⁵¹ as soon as he is born in the form realm (*rūpadhātāvupapannamātra eva*).

19) What is a person who attains parinirvāṇa without effort (*anabhisaṃskāraparinirvāyin*)?⁴⁵²

It is a person who, having been born, faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering without effort.⁴⁵³

20) What is a person who attains parinirvāṇa with effort (*abhisamkāraparinirvāyin*)?⁴⁵⁴

It is a person who, having been born, faces up to the Path and, with effort, puts an end to suffering.⁴⁵⁵

21) What is a person who swims upstream (*ūrdhvamsrotas*)?

It is a person who, having been born, arrives at the realm of Akaniṣṭha by passing through the different form realms (*rūpāvacara*) and, there faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering. Furthermore, it is a

⁴⁴⁹ Gokhale's edition omits the question and answer concerning the *upapadyaparinirvāyin*, evidently by mistake.

⁴⁵⁰ The two kinds of fetters are the *upapattisamyojana* and the *abhinirvṛttisamyojana* mentioned in the preceding paragraph.

⁴⁵¹ According to Vsm, p. 710, the *upapaccaparinibbāyi* (= *upapadyaparinirvāyin*) is a person who attains parinirvāṇa having gone beyond the middle of his life-span (*āyuvemajjhāñ atikkamitvā parinibbāyati*). For details, see Kośa VI, 211; A I, p. 233; IV, 380; S V, pp. 70, 201; Pug, p. 16.

⁴⁵² In the Pali sources: *asamkhāraparinibbāyi*.

⁴⁵³ According to Vsm, p. 710, the *asamkhāraparinibbāyi* (= *upapadyaparinirvāyin*) is a person who attains the higher path without effort (*asamkhārena appayogena uparimaggam nibbatteti*). See also Pug, p. 17.

⁴⁵⁴ In the Pali sources: *sasamkhāraparinibbāyi*.

⁴⁵⁵ According to Vsm, p. 710, the *sasamkhāraparinibbāyi* is a person who attains the higher path (*uparimagga*) with effort (*sasamkhārena sappayogena*). See also Pug, p. 17.

A II, p. 155 says that a *sasamkhāraparinibbāyi* or an *asamkhāraparinibbāyi* can attain parinibbāna even in this very life or after death. A *sasamkhāraparinibbāyi* cultivates the ideas of the impurity of the body (*asubhānupassī kāye*) and of nourishment (*āhāre paṭikkūlasaññī*), of detachment from the entire world (*sabbaloke ananbhīratasaññī*) and of the impermanence of all states and conditioned things (*sabbasamkhāresu aniccasaññī*), and the thought of death is very present in him (*maranasaññā supatīṭhitā*). If the five faculties – *saddhā, viriya, sati, sammadhi, paññā* – are highly developed (*adhimatta*) in him, he attains parinirvāṇa in this very life with effort. But if his faculties are weak (*mudu*), he attains parinirvāṇa with effort after death.

An *asamkhāraparinibbāyi* also can attain parinirvāṇa in this very life or after death. An *asamkhāraparinibbāyi* cultivates the four *jhānas*. If his five faculties are highly developed, he attains parinirvāṇa in this very life effortlessly. But if they are weak, he attains it without effort, after death.

For further details, see Kośa VI, pp. 211-212.

person who, having risen to the peak of existence (*bhavāgra*), faces up to the Path and puts an end to suffering.⁴⁵⁶

Moreover, the fourth absorption (*dhyāna*), cultivated in a mixed way, is of five types:

- (i) weakly cultivated (*mrdu-paribhāvita*),
- (ii) moderately cultivated (*madhyaparibhāvita*),
- (iii) strongly cultivated (*adhimātraparibhāvita*),
- (iv) very strongly cultivated (*adhimātra-adhimātraparibhāvita*) and
- (v) moderately strongly cultivated (*madhya-adhimātrāparibhāvita*).

By means of these five types of the fourth *dhyāna*, one is born in the five pure realms (*śuddāvāsa*).⁴⁵⁷

22) What is an arhat of deteriorating nature (*parihāṇadharma arhan*)?

It is a person who, having by nature weak faculties (*mṛdvinriyaprakrtika*), distracted (*vikṣipta*) or not, reflecting (*cetayitvā*) or not, falls from his state of bliss in this life (*drṣṭadharmasukhavihāra*).⁴⁵⁸

23) What is an arhat of voluntary nature (*cetanādharma arhan*)?

It is a person who, having weak faculties by nature, distracted or not, falls from his state of bliss in this life if he is non-reflective, but does not fall if he is reflective.⁴⁵⁹

24) What is an arhat of protective nature (*anurakṣaṇādharma arhan*)?

It is a person who, having weak faculties by nature, falls from his state of bliss in this life if he is distracted, but does not fall if he is not distracted.⁴⁶⁰

25) What is a stable and unshakeable arhat (*sthitākampya arhan*)?

⁴⁵⁶ Vsm, p. 710 also defines the *uddhamsota akaniṭṭthagāmī* as a person who rises to the highest existence and there attains *parinirvāṇa*. For details see Pug p. 17; Kośa VI, p. 212. Also D III, p. 237; S V, pp. 70, 201, 205, 237, 285, 314, 378; A I, 233; II, 134; IV, 14, 73, 146, 380; V, 120.

⁴⁵⁷ Five *śuddhāvāsas*: Avṛha, Atapa, Sudṛṣa, Sudarśana and Akaniṣṭha.

Numbers (17)-(21), i.e., *antarāparinirvāyin*, *upapadyaparinirvāyin*, *anabhisamkāraparinirvāyin*, *abhisamkāraparinirvāyin* and *ūrdhvamsrotas* are all *anāgāmin*. D III, p. 237; Kośa VI, p. 210.

⁴⁵⁸ Pug, p. 11, mentions a person of deteriorating nature (*puggalo parihāṇadhammo*) and says that a person who has realized the *rūpasamāpatti* and the *arūpasamāpatti* may fall from these states by some carelessness, but he is not called arhat. S I, p. 120 tells that the Thera Godhika realized the *sāmādhika cetovimutti* six times and fell each time, but when he realized it the seventh time, he committed suicide so as not to fall that time.

The question of the fall of an arhat and the recovery of his state is discussed in Kośa IV, p. 119; V, 117; VI, 253.

⁴⁵⁹ Cf. *cetanābhabbo* in Pug, p. 12.

⁴⁶⁰ Cf. *anurakkhaṇābhabbo*, Pug, p. 12. See also Kośa VI, p. 253.

It is a person who, having weak faculties by nature, distracted or not, does not fall away from his state of bliss in this life, and does not develop his faculties.⁴⁶¹

26) What is an arhat of penetrating nature (*prativedhanādharma arhan*)?

It is a person who, having weak faculties by nature, distracted or not, does not fall from his state of bliss in this life, but develops his faculties.⁴⁶²

27) What is an arhat of unchanging nature (*akopyadharma arhan*)?

It is a person who, having keen faculties by nature (*tīkṣṇendriyaprakṛtika*), distracted or not, does not fall from his state of bliss in this life.⁴⁶³

CCA.8.

THREE PERSONS IN THE REALM OF SENSE PLEASURES

1) What is an ordinary person in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara pṛthagjana*)?

It is one who, born in the realm of the sense pleasures, has not acquired the noble quality (*āryadharma*).

2) What is a person in the course of training in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara śaikṣa*)?

It is one who, born in the realm of the sense pleasures, has acquired the noble quality (*āryadharma*) but still has some of his fetters (*samyojana*).

3) What is a person beyond training in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara aśaikṣa*)?

It is one who, born in the realm of the sense pleasures, has acquired the noble quality (*āryadharma*) and does not have any fetters (*samyojana*).

Similar to the three persons in the realm of the sense pleasures are the three persons in the form realm (*rūpāvacara*).

CCA.9.

THE BODHISATTVA, INDIVIDUAL BUDDHA AND TATHĀGATA IN THE REALM OF SENSE PLEASURES

1) What is a bodhisattva in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmāvacara*) and in the form realm (*rūpāvacara*)?

It is a person who, born in the realm of the sense pleasures or in the form realm and endowed with absorption (*dhyāna*) separate from the formless realm (*ārūpyadhātuvyavakarṣita*), dwells in the bliss of the absorptions.

2) What is an individual buddha (*pratyekabuddha*) in the realm of the sense pleasures?

⁴⁶¹ See Kośa VI, p. 253.

⁴⁶² Ibid., p. 254.

⁴⁶³ Cf. Pug, p.11: *akuppadhammo*. See also Kośa, VI, p. 254.

It is a person who, born in the realm of the sense pleasures, has acquired by himself the enlightenment of an individual buddha (*pratyekabuddha bodhi*) at a time when there is no Buddha in the world.

3) What is an inconceivable (*acintya*) Tathāgata?

It is a person who, in the realm of the sense pleasures, manifests the entire career of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvacaryā*), the career of the Buddha (*buddhacaryā*), the great career (*mahācaryā*), from his stay in Tuṣita heaven as far as the mahāparinirvāṇa.

CCA.10.

FIVE BODHISATTVAS WHO PRACTICE THEIR CAREER

1) What is the bodhisattva who practices the career of devotion (*adhimukticārī bodhisattva*)?

It is a person (bodhisattva) who dwells in the stage⁴⁶⁴ of the career of devotion (*adhimukticaryābhūmi*)⁴⁶⁵ and is endowed with the weak, medium or intense acquiescence (*kṣānti*) of a bodhisattva.

2) What is the bodhisattva who practices the career of determination (*adhyāśayacārī bodhisattva*)?

It is a bodhisattva who abides in the ten stages (*daśasu bhūmiṣu*).⁴⁶⁶

3) What is the bodhisattva who practices the career endowed with signs (*sanimittacārī bodhisattva*)?

It is a bodhisattva who abides in the stages (*bhūmi*) called Joyful (*pramuditā*),⁴⁶⁷ Immaculate (*vimalā*),⁴⁶⁸ Illuminating (*prabhākari*),⁴⁶⁹ Radiant (*arcīṣmatī*),⁴⁷⁰ Difficult to Overcome (*sudurjayā*),⁴⁷¹ and Face-to-Face (*abhimukhi*).⁴⁷²

⁴⁶⁴ The term *bhūmi*, in contexts such as *bodhisattvabhūmi*, is usually translated as ‘land’ or ‘ground’ or ‘level’ (French, ‘terre’) which is one of the early meanings. But ‘stage’ (French ‘étape’), a derived meaning of the term *bhūmi*, is more appropriate here.

⁴⁶⁵ This is the preparatory stage of a bodhisattva.

⁴⁶⁶ These ten stages (*bhūmi*) will be mentioned in the following paragraphs. See also Sūtrālaṅkāra, XX-XXI, 32-38.

⁴⁶⁷ This is the first bodhisattva bhūmi, called *pramuditā* or *mūditā* because at this stage the bodhisattva experiences great joy on seeing that enlightenment is close (*bodhim āsannam*) and the possibility of serving other sentient beings (*sattvārthasya sādhanam*). Sūtrālaṅkāra, XX-XXI, 32.

⁴⁶⁸ This is the second bodhisattva bhūmi, called *vimalā* because at this stage the bodhisattva becomes pure by freeing himself from the stain of immorality (*dauhśilyamala*) and from the stain of his attention being directed to the other vehicles (*anyayānamanaskāramala*). Ibid., XX-XXI, 33.

⁴⁶⁹ This is the third bodhisattva bhūmi, called *prabhākari* because at this stage the bodhisattva sheds the great light of Dharma (*dharmaśabha*) on other beings as a result of his seeking limitless dharmas by his power of *saṃādhi* (*saṃādhibalenāpramāṇadharmaṇyeśadharanāt*). Ibid., XX-XXI, 33.

⁴⁷⁰ This is the fourth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *arcīṣmatī* because at this stage the *bodhisattvadharmas* begin to shine since the *kleśavaraṇa* and the *jñeyavaraṇa* are destroyed. Ibid., XX-XXI, 34.

4) What is the bodhisattva who practices the career without signs (*animittacārī bodhisattva*)?

It is a bodhisattva who dwells in the stage Going Afar (*dūraṅgamā*).⁴⁷³

5) What is the bodhisattva who practices the career without constructions (*anabhisamśāracārī bodhisattva*)?

It is a bodhisattva who abides in the stages Immoveable (*acalā*),⁴⁷⁴ Good Intellect (*sādhumatī*),⁴⁷⁵ and Rain of Dharma (*dharmameghā*).⁴⁷⁶

CCA.11.

TWO KINDS OF STREAM-ENTERER

Furthermore, the individual mentioned above, who is a stream-enterer (*srotuāpanna*), is of two types,

- (1) the first attaining liberation (*kramanairiyāñika*) gradually and
 - (2) the second attaining liberation all at once (*sakṛṇnairiyāñika*).
- (1) The one who attains liberation gradually is mentioned above.
 - (2) The one who attains liberation all at once is a person who, having attained understanding of the Truth (*satyābhisamaya*) and depending on absorption (*saṃpatti*), abandons all the defilements by means of the supramundane Path (*lokottaramārga*). It is said that he has two fruits:
 - (i) the fruit of the stream-enterer (*srotāpattiphala*) and
 - (ii) the fruit of arhathood (*arhattvaphala*).

This person attains complete knowledge (*ājñā*, state of arhat) in this very life, often at the moment of death. If he does not attain it, it is because of his aspiration (*pranidhāna*). Then, by means of this vow, taking birth only in the realm of the sense pleasures (*kāmadhātu*), he will become a *pratyekabuddha* at the time when there will no longer be a Buddha in the world.

⁴⁷¹ This is the fifth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *sudurjayā* or *durjayā* because at this stage the bodhisattva conquers suffering (*duḥkham jīyate*). He is then engaged in the ripening of beings (*sattvānām paripākāḥ*) whilst protecting his mind (*svacittasya rakṣaṇā*). Ibid., XX-XXI, 35.

⁴⁷² This is the sixth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *abhimukhī* because at this stage the bodhisattva, by means of *prajñāpāramitā*, faces up to saṃsāra and *nirvāṇa* without being established in either. Ibid., XX-XXI, 36.

⁴⁷³ This is the seventh bodhisattva bhūmi called *dūraṅgamā* because at this stage the bodhisattva reaches the end of the practice (*prayogaparyantagamana*) by the single Path (*ekāyanapātha*). Ibid., XX-XXI, 37.

⁴⁷⁴ This is the eighth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *achalā* because at this stage the bodhisattva is unshaken by either the perception of signs (*nimittasamjñā*) or the perception of effort aimed at the signless (*animittābhogaśamjñā*). Ibid., XX-XXI, 37.

⁴⁷⁵ This is the ninth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *sādhumatī* because at this stage intellectual analysis becomes predominant (*pratisaṃvidmateḥ pradhānatvāt*).

⁴⁷⁶ This is the tenth bodhisattva bhūmi, called *dharmameghā* because at this stage the bodhisattva makes the Dharma rain down on beings like rain from the sky. Ibid., XX-XXI, 38.

ccb.

SECOND SECTION: DEFINITION OF CLEAR UNDERSTANDING (*ABHISAMAYAVYAVASTHĀNA*)

ccb.1.

TEN KINDS OF CLEAR UNDERSTANDING (*ABHISAMAYA*)

What is the definition of clear understanding (*abhisamaya*)?

In brief, there are ten kinds:

1. clear understanding of the Doctrine (*dharma**bb**hisamaya*),
2. clear understandning of the meaning (*arthāsamaya*),
3. clear understanding of the true state (*tattvāsamaya*),
4. subsequent clear undertnading (*pr̄sthābisamaya*),
5. clear understnading of the Jewels (*ratnāsamaya*),
6. clear understanding of the ceasing of transitoriness (*asamcārābhīsamaya*),
7. final clear understanding (*niṣṭhābhīsamaya*),
8. clear understanding of the disciples (*śrāvakābhīsamaya*),
9. clear understanding of the individual buddhas (*pratyekabuddhābhīsamaya*),
10. clear understanding of the bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvābhīsamaya*).

1. What is clear understanding of the Doctrine (*dharmabb**hisamaya*)?**

It is the attainment of intense joy (*adhimātraprasāda*), devotion and conduct in keeping with strong conviction, thanks to the Doctrine governed by the Truth (*satyādhipateyadharma*).

2. What is clear understanding of the meaning (*arthābhīsamaya*)?

It is the attainment of strong acquiescence (acceptance) of the Doctrine governed by the Truth. This acquiescence (acceptance) belongs to the stage of penetration because it is manifested by the three forms of profound attentiveness (*yoniśomanaskāra*). These three forms are: intense-weak (*adhimātramṛdu*), intense-medium (*adhimātra-madhyā*) and intense-intense (*adhimātra-adhimātra*).

3. What is clear understanding of reality (*tattvābhīsamaya*)?

It is that which attains the Noble Path (*āryamārga*) at the sixteenth moment of mind of the Path of seeing (*darśanamārgacittakṣaṇa*).⁴⁷⁷

⁴⁷⁷ For the sixteen mind-moments of the path of direct seeing, see above..

Moreover, in the Path of seeing, the knowledges (= *jñānāni*) appear marking the end of the seeing of the Truths, definitions concerning the Truths, etc. In the Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*), clear understanding attains the conventional knowledges (*saṃvṛtijñāna*) of the Truths, but does not actualize them. Clear understanding makes them present in the Path of cultivation by the power of the conventional knowledges bearing on the Truths.

4. What is subsequent clear understanding (*prsthābhīsamaya*)?

It is the entire Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmārga*).⁴⁷⁸

5. What is clear understanding of the Jewels (*ratnābhīsamaya*)?

It is complete faith (*avetyaprasāda*) in the Buddha, his teaching (*dharma*) and the community of his disciples (*saṃgha*).

6. What is clear understanding of the cessation of transitoriness (*asamcārābhīsamaya*)?

It is the cessation (*kṣaya*, extinction) of birth in the hell realm (*naraka*), among animals (*tiryak*), among the hungry ghosts (*preta*) and in a bad destiny into which one falls head-first, in the person who has followed the precepts (*śikṣa*), because he has attained control (*saṃvara*). Actions (*karma*) and the results of actions (*vipāka*) leading to a bad destiny (*durgati*) no longer function in him.

7. What is the final clear understanding (*niṣṭhābhīsamaya*)?

It is identical with the final Path (*niṣṭhāmārga*) described in the Truth of the Path (*mārgasatya*).⁴⁷⁹

8. What is the clear understanding of the disciples (*śrāvakābhīsamaya*)?

It consists of the seven kinds of clear understanding mentioned above.⁴⁸⁰ It is called the realization of the disciples because they attain their realization by the help of the words of others (*paratoghoṣa*).

9. What is the clear understanding of the individual buddhas?

(*pratyekabuddhābhīsamaya*)? It consists of the seven kinds of clear understanding mentioned above. It is called the clear understanding of the individual buddhas because they attain their clear understanding without the help of words (*paratoghoṣa*).

10. What is the clear understanding of the bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvābhīsamaya*)?

It is the acquiescence (acceptance) (*kṣānti*) of practice, but not by intuitive perception (*sākṣātkryā*), of the seven kinds of clear understanding mentioned above. Entry into the certainty of perfection (*samyaktvānyāmāvkrānti*) by the bodhisattva takes place on the Joyful stage (*pramuditā*).⁴⁸¹ This should be understood as the clear understanding of the bodhisattvas.

⁴⁷⁸ For *bhāvanāmārga* see above.

⁴⁷⁹ See above p.

⁴⁸⁰ I.e., numbers 1 to 7 of this list.

⁴⁸¹ For *pramuditā* see above.

CCB.2.

THE ELEVEN DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF THE DISCIPLES AND THAT OF THE BODHISATTVAS

What are the differences between the clear understanding of the disciples and that of the bodhisattvas?

In brief, there are eleven differences: the differences of

- (1) object (*ālambanaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸²
- (2) support (*upastambhaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸³
- (3) penetration (*prativedhaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁴
- (4) attitude (*abhyupagamaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁵
- (5) outcome (deliverance) (*niryāṇaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁶
- (6) acquisition (*parigrahaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁷
- (7) firmness, steadiness (*vyavasthānaviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁸
- (8) entourage (*parivāraviśeṣa*),⁴⁸⁹
- (9) higher birth (*abhijanmaviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁰
- (10) birth (*janmaviśeṣa*),⁴⁹¹
- (11) result (*phalaviśeṣa*).⁴⁹²

(11) The differences in result is in turn tenfold:

⁴⁸² The object (*ālambana*) of a bodhisattva is the realization of the Mahāyāna (*mahāyānābhīṣamaya*) whereas that of a Disciple is the realization of the Four Noble Truths (*caturāryasatyābhīṣamaya*).

⁴⁸³ A bodhisattva must acquire the *sambhāras* (accumulations) over a very long period of many *asamkhyakalpas*, whereas the period of *sambhāra* for a disciple is much shorter..

⁴⁸⁴ A bodhisattva penetrates (realizes) *pudgalanairātmya* and *dharmanairātmya* whereas a disciple realizes only *pudgalanairātmya*.

⁴⁸⁵ The purpose of a bodhisattva is to bring well-being to all beings as well as to himself. The purpose of a disciple is only his own well-being. The aim of a bodhisattva is *parārtha* whereas that of a disciple is *svārtha*.

⁴⁸⁶ A bodhisattva comes to *nirvāṇa* by means of the ten *bhūmis*. A disciple does not go through them.

⁴⁸⁷ A bodhisattva is in *apratīṣṭhitānirvāṇa*; a disciple is in *nirupadhiṣeṣānirvāṇa*.

⁴⁸⁸ A bodhisattva cultivates the pure lands of the Buddhas (*yisuddhabuddhakṣetra*), a disciple does not.

⁴⁸⁹ A bodhisattva converts all beings into his entourage, a disciple has no such entourage.

⁴⁹⁰ A bodhisattva belongs to the family of the Buddhas and is in the lineage of the Buddhas whereas a disciple is not.

⁴⁹¹ A bodhisattva is born into the great assembly of the Tathāgatas, but not a śrāvaka

⁴⁹² The result of a bodhisattva is *samyaksambodhi* whereas that of a disciple is *śrāvakabodhi*.

The following paragraph enumerates the ten qualities of *samyaksambodhi*.

- (i) transformation of the base (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*),⁴⁹³
- (ii) fullness of the virtues (*guṇasaṁvṛddhiviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁴
- (iii) five aspects (*pañcākāraviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁵
- (iv) the three bodies (*trikāyaviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁶
- (v) nirvāṇa (*nirvāṇaviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁷
- (vi) acquiring combined knowledge and power (*miśropamiśrajñānaśaktilabha*),⁴⁹⁸
- (vii) purification of obstacles (*āvaraṇaviśodhanaviśeṣa*),⁴⁹⁹
- (viii) accomplishment of combined actions (*miśropamiśrakarmakriyāviheṣa*),⁵⁰⁰
- (ix) means allowing the manifestation of perfect enlightenment and nirvāṇa (*abhisambidhinirvāṇasandarśanopāyaviśeṣa*),⁵⁰¹
- (x) protection by means of the five kinds of aid (*pañcākāraparitrāṇaviśeṣa*).⁵⁰²

CCB.3.

THE CLEAR UNDERSTANDINGS AND THE SPECIAL QUALITIES

In which clear understandings (*abhisamaya*) are the special qualities (*vaiśeṣikaguṇa*), such as the ‘limitless ones’ (*apramāṇa*)⁵⁰³ included?

⁴⁹³ *Āśrayaparāvṛtti* is the transformation of the *ālayavijñāna*.

⁴⁹⁴ The fullness of innumerable qualities such as the *balas*, *vaiśāradyas*, *āveṇikadharma*s, etc.

⁴⁹⁵ 1) *viśuddhiviśeṣa*: all the *vāsanās* have been cut; 2) *pariśodanaviśeṣa*: he cultivates perfectly all the *buddhakṣetras*; 3) *kāyaviśeṣa*: the *dharma* has been accomplished; 4) *sambhogaviśeṣa*: he is always present in the great bodhisattva assemblies delighting in *dharmarati*; 5) *karmaviśeṣa*: he accomplishes all kinds of supernatural creations and does the work of a Buddha (*buddhakṛtya*) in innumerable universes.

⁴⁹⁶ He demonstrates the three bodies (*kāya*): *svabhāva* (= *dharma*), *sambhoga* and *nirmāṇa*.

⁴⁹⁷ A disciple, once in the *nirupadhiśeṣanirvāṇadhātu*, becomes inactive, whereas a bodhisattva who is there retains all the qualities of a bodhisattva and continues to work for the well-being of all beings.

⁴⁹⁸ Because a bodhisattva has obtained the extremely pure *dharmadhātu*, he can depend on *sarvākārajñāna* (omniscience) and on the powers of each and every Buddha.

⁴⁹⁹ A bodhisattva destroys the *kleśāvaraṇas* and *jñeyāvaraṇas* whereas the disciple destroys only the *kleśāvaraṇas*.

⁵⁰⁰ A bodhisattva directs the activities of all beings with the help of the powers of all the Buddhas.

⁵⁰¹ A bodhisattva manifests *abhisambodhi* and ripens beings and delivers them.

⁵⁰² Five kinds of aid for the salvation of others: 1) When the Buddha enters a town or village, all the blind people recover their sight, etc. 2) To help beings abandon *mithyādrṣṭi* (wrong views) and obtain *samyakdrṣṭi* (right view). 3) To save beings from bad destinies (*durgati*). 4) To help beings abandon *saṃsāra* and attain the state of arhat. 5) To protect the bodhisattvas from the Hīnayāna (*yānaparitrāṇa*).

⁵⁰³ *Apramāṇa* is equivalent to *brahmavihāra*. This term and others mentioned in this paragraph are explained below.

They should be understood as being included in the subsequent clear understanding (*prsthābhismaya*) and in the final clear understanding (*niṣṭhābhismaya*).

CCB.3.1.

THE 19 SPECIAL QUALITIES

Which qualities are included among the special qualities?

- (i) The limitless ones (*apramāṇa*),
- (ii) the deliverances (*vimokṣa*),
- (iii) the spheres of dominance (*abhibhvāyatana*),
- (iv) the spheres of totality (*kṛtsnāyatana*),
- (v) absence of battle (struggle) (*araṇa*),
- (vi) knowledge aspiration (*pranidhijñāna*),
- (vii) analytical knowledge (*pratisaṃvid*),
- (viii) superior knowledge (*abhijñā*),
- (ix) the minor characteristics and marks (*lakṣaṇānuvyañjana*),
- (x) purities (*pariśuddhi*),
- (xi) the powers (*bala*),
- (xii) fearlessness (*vaiśāradya*),
- (xiii) application of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*),
- (xiv) the things which need no protection (*arakṣya*),
- (xv) the absence of confusion (*asampramoṣa*),
- (xvi) the destruction of the imprints (*vāsanāsamudghāta*),
- (xvii) great compassion (*mahākarunā*),
- (xviii) the qualities specific to the Buddha (*āveṇikabuddhadharma*),
- (xix) the knowledge of all aspects (*sarvākārajñānatā*) – and other such qualities mentioned in the sūtras.

(i) What are the limitless ones (*apramāṇa*)? There are four.

- (1) What is universal love (*maitrī*, lit. friendliness)?** It is the meditative stabilization (*saṃādhi*) and wisdom (*prajñā*), and the mind and associated mental activities (*tatsamprayukta cittacaitasika*) based on the absorption (*dhyāna*) that abides in the thought: ‘May beings dwell in happiness (*sukha*)!’
- (2) What is compassion (*karuṇā*)?** It is the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – based on the absorption that abides in the thought: ‘May beings be free of suffering (*duḥkha*)!’

(3) **What is sympathetic joy (*muditā*)?** It is the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – based on the absorption that abides in the thought: ‘May beings not be separated from happiness!’

(4) **What is equanimity (*upekṣa*)?** It is the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – based on the absorption that abides in the thought: ‘May beings obtain well-being (*hita*)!’

(ii) **What are the deliverances (*vimokṣa*)?** There are eight.

(1) **How does one view visible forms when one has the notion of internal visible forms?** With the help of absorption (*dhyāna*), by not suppressing or fixating the notion of internal visible forms, one views internal and external visible forms. Meditative stabilization (*samādhi*) and wisdom and the mind and associated mental activities (*tatsamprayukta cittacaitasika dharma*) in this state aim at deliverance from the obstacles to mental creation (*nirmāṇa*).

(2) **How does one view external visible forms (*bahirdhā rūpāṇi*) when one does not have the notion of internal visible forms (*adhyātmam arūpasamjñī*)?** With the help of absorption, one views external visible forms by suppressing the notion of external forms or by fixating the notion of the absence of internal visible forms. Meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before.

(3) **How does one abide in experiencing the pleasant deliverance (*śubhavimokṣa*) in one's body (*kāya*)?** With the help of absorption, one obtains within oneself the notion of interdependence, of the mutual relation and identity of the essential nature of pleasant visible forms and unpleasant visible forms (*śubhāśubharūpa*). Meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – aim at deliverance from mental creation of the pleasant and the unpleasant and from the obstacles of the impurities (*saṃkleśāvaraṇa*).

(4) **What is deliverance by the sphere of infinite space (*ākāśānantyāyatana*)?** It is deliverance by the sphere of infinite space in conformity with deliverance.

In the same way one should understand the deliverances by

(5) **the sphere of consciousness (*vijñānāntyāyatana*),**

(6) **the sphere of nothingness (*ākiñcanyāyatana*) and**

(7) **the sphere of neither-perception-nor-nonperception (*naivasamjñānāsaṃjñāyatana*).** They aim at calm deliverance (*śānta vimokṣa*) and deliverance from the obstacles of attachment.

(8) **What is deliverance by the cessation of perception and sensation (*saṃjñāvedayitanirodha*)?** It is the state similar to the emancipation obtained in the calm resting deliverance by the help of deliverance by the sphere of neither-perception-nor-nonperception, and is the cessation of the mind and mental activities in this state. Its aim is deliverance from the obstacles to the cessation of perception and sensation.

(iii) **What are the spheres of dominance (*abhibhvāyatana*)?** There are eight spheres of dominance.⁵⁰⁴

The first four are established by two deliverances (*vimokṣa*).⁵⁰⁵ The last four are established by one deliverance.⁵⁰⁶ In the deliverances, one is attentive to the object (*ālambana*), but in the spheres of dominance one dominates the object because it is subjugated (*vaśavartana*). In referring to animate and inanimate objects, forms (*rūpa*) are called limited (*parīta*) and unlimited (*apramāṇa*). In referring to pleasant (*śubha*) and unpleasant (*aśubha*), forms are called beautiful (*suvarṇa*) and ugly (*durvarṇa*). In referring to human (*mānuṣya*) and divine (*divya*) objects, forms are called lower (*hīna*) and higher (*pranīta*). The spheres of dominance are thus named because they dominate (overcome) the object.

(iv) **What are the spheres of totality (*kṛtsnāyatana*)?** There are ten.⁵⁰⁷ They are called spheres of totality because they encompass the object in its totality. The meditative stabilization and wisdom and the mind and mental activities associated with them in the accomplishment of abiding in the sphere of totality are called the sphere of totality.

Why is there a determination of objects such as earth (*prthivi*) in the spheres of totality? Because throughout these spheres of totality one can see the forms that constitute their bases (*āśraya*) and those that are derived from them (*āśrita*),⁵⁰⁸ for with them one encompasses their totality. The rest is the same as has been said for the deliverances. By means of the spheres of totality one achieves accomplishment of the deliverances.

⁵⁰⁴ The eight spheres of dominance are: (1) Having the notion of visible internal forms (*ajjattam rūpasāññī*), one sees a limited number of external forms (*parittāni bahiddhā rūpāni*) that are beautiful or ugly (*suvaṇṇadubbaṇṇāni*), but one has the notion: Overcoming (surmounting, *abhibhuyya*) them, I know and I see (*jānāmi passāmi*).” This is the first sphere of dominion. (2) In the same way, one sees an unlimited number of visible external forms (*appamāṇāni bahiddhā rūpāni*), and one has the same notion mentioned before. (3) Having the notion of the formless within oneself (*ajjhattam arūpasāññī*), one sees a limited number of visible external forms that are beautiful or ugly, and one has the same notion as mentioned above. (4) In the same way, one sees an unlimited number of external visible forms and one has the same notions as mentioned above. (5) Having the notion of the formless within oneself, one sees colors, blue (*nīlāni*), ... (6) yellow (*pītāni*), ... (7) red (*lohitāni*), ... and (8) white (*odātāni*), and one has the same notion as mentioned above.

See D II, p. 110 and foll.; III, 260 and foll.; M, II, p. 13 and foll.

⁵⁰⁵ I.e., The first four *abhibhvāyatanas* mentioned above are included in the two *vimokṣas*: 1) *rūpī rūpāñī paśyati* and 2) *adhyātmam arūpasāññī bahirdhā rūpāñipaśyati*.

⁵⁰⁶ I.e., the third *vimokṣa*: *śubham vimokṣam kāyena sākṣātkṛtvopasampadya viharati* (or *subhantveva adhimutta hoti*).

⁵⁰⁷ The ten *kṛtsnāyatanas* (Pali *kasiṇāyatana*), are: 1) *paṭhavikasiṇa* (earth), 2) *āpo* (water), 3) *tejo-* (fire), 4) *vāyo-* (air), 5) *nīla-* (blue), 6) *pīta-* (yellow), 7. *lohitā-* (red), 8) *odāta-* (white), 9) *ākāsa-* (space) and 10) *viññāna-* (consciousness). M II, pp. 14-15; A I, p. 41; D III, p. 268. The same list in Kośa, VIII, p. 214. But in Vsm, p. 110, the ninth *kasiṇa* is *āloka* (light) and the tenth is *paricchinnākāsa* (limited space)

⁵⁰⁸ The *āśraya* is the *kṛtsnamandala*, such as a disk of earth or a color blue, red, etc.; and the *āśrita* is the external world represented by the *āśraya*.

(v) **What is absence of battle (*araṇa*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom and the mind and associated mental activities in the accomplishment of the abiding in which, by the help of absorption (*dhyāna*), one is protected from the appearance of the defilements.⁵⁰⁹

(vi) **What is knowledge resulting from aspiration (*prañidhijñāna*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the knowledge resulting from aspiration.⁵¹⁰

(vii) **What is analytical knowledge (*pratisamvid*)?**⁵¹¹ There are four kinds of analytical knowledges.

(1) **What is analytical knowledge concerning the doctrine (*dharma-pratisamvid*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the unhindered knowledge of all the forms of the doctrine.

(2) **What is analytical knowledge concerning the meaning (*arthapratisamvid*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the unhindered knowledge concerning characteristic and intention.

(3) **What is analytical knowledge concerning explanation (*niruktipratisamvid*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the unhindered knowledge concerning the use of regional languages and interpretation of the teachings.⁵¹²

(4) **What is analytical knowledge concerning the keenness of mind (*pratibhāna-pratisamvid*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the unhindered knowledge concerning different teachings.

(viii) **What is superior knowledge (*abhi�ñā*)?** There are the six kinds of superior knowledge.

(1) **What is the superior knowledge of the supernatural powers (*rddhyabhi�ñā*)?** It consists of meditative stabilization and wisdom and the associated mind and mental activities in the accomplishment of the various supernatural manifestations⁵¹³ with the aid of absorption.

⁵⁰⁹ For details on *araṇa* and *saraṇa*, see Kośa, IV, pp. 121-123; VII, pp. 85=87. Cf. also M III, p. 230 (*Arṇavibhaṅgasutta*) where *araṇa* is explained as *adukkho anupaghāto anupāyāso aparīlāho sammāpatṭipadā*.

⁵¹⁰ For details concerning *prañidhijñāna*, see Kośa, VII, pp. 88-89

⁵¹¹ Pali, *patisambhidā*.

⁵¹² The *Arṇavibhaṅga-sutta* (M III, p. 234) explains the error of attachment to regional expressions (*janapadaniruttiyā abhiniveso*) and the over-emphasis given to designation (*samaññāya atisāro*). A bowl is called by different names in different regions, such as, pāti, patta, vitta, sarāva, dhāropama, poṇa, pisīla. One must not be attached to any particular term and say: ‘This is the only correct word and all the others are wrong.’ One should understand the things mentioned by different words and designations used by people in different areas.

⁵¹³ The various supernatural manifestations (*vicitrarddhivikurvita* or *anekavihita iddhividha*), such as one person appearing as many, walking through a wall or mountain without obstacle as though through air, diving into the earth as

- (2) **What is the supernatural knowledge of the divine ear (*divyaśrotābhijñā*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment of the hearing of various sounds with the aid of absorption.⁵¹⁴
 - (3) **What is the supernatural knowledge concerning the thoughts of others (*cetahparyāyābhijñā*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the aid of absorption, of penetration into the thoughts of other persons.
 - (4) **What is the supernatural knowledge of the memory of previous existences (*pūrvanivāsānusmṛtyabhijñā*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the aid of absorption, of remembering previous careers (lives).⁵¹⁵
 - (5) **What is the supernatural knowledge of death and birth (*cyutupapādābhijñā*)?**⁵¹⁶ It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of seeing the deaths and births of beings.
 - (6) **What is the supernatural knowledge of the extinction of the impurities (*āsravakṣayābhijñā*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the knowledge of extinction of the impurities.⁵¹⁷
 - (ix) **What are the minor characteristics and marks (*lakṣaṇānuvyañjana*)?** They consist of the meditative stabilization and wisdom and the mind and associated mental activities and the results produced in accomplishing, with the help of absorption, the brilliant appearances endowed with the minor characteristics and marks.
 - (x) **What are the purities (*pariśuddhi*)?** There are four.
- (1) **What is purity of the base (*āśrayapariśuddhi*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and the wisdom and the mind and associated mental activites in accomplishing, with the help of absorption, the abandoning of a situation at will when one takes up any new base whatsoever.

if into water, walking on water as if on earth, flying through the air like a bird, touching the moon or the sun with one's hand, etc. M I, p. 34; A I, p. 255.

⁵¹⁴ Hearing various near and far human and divine sounds. M I, p. 35; A I, p. 255.

⁵¹⁵ Remembering not only one or two lifetimes, but many millions, with details of names, places, situations, etc. M I, p. 35; A I, p. 255.

⁵¹⁶ The power to see how beings die and are reborn in good or bad states according to their good or bad actions. M I, p. 35; A I, p. 256. Also called *divyacakṣu*, Pali *dibbacakkhu*, 'divine eye'.

⁵¹⁷ For details of the six *abhijñās*, see also Kośa VII, p. 98.

- (2) **What is purity of object (*ālambanapariśuddhi*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the knowledge of the creation and transformation of any object whatsoever.
- (3) **What is purity of mind (*cittapariśuddhi*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishing, with the help of absorption, of control of entry into meditative stabilization (*saṃādhimukha*) at will.
- (4) **What is purity of knowledge (*jñānapariśuddhi*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishing, with the help of absorption, of the preservation of access into magical spells (*dhāraṇīmukha*) at will.¹¹⁷
- (xi) **What are the powers (*bala*)?** There are the ten powers of the Tathāgata.
- (1) **What is the power of the knowledge of what is possible and what is impossible (*sthānāsthānajñānabala*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom and the mind and associated mental activities in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the knowledge of everything that is possible and everything that is impossible.
- (2) **What is the power of the knowledge of the individual inheritance of the results of actions (*karmasvakajñānabala*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment, with the help of absorption, of the knowledge of the individual inheritance of the results of actions of every kind.
- (3-10) **The other powers**⁵¹⁸ should be understood in an analogous way.

¹¹⁷ Pañchavim., p. 212, defines *dhāraṇīmukha* as *akṣaranayasamatākṣaramukham akṣarapraveśah*, ‘the equilibrium of the order (method) of the letters, the mouth (face) of the letters, the entry of the letters’. ‘A’ (*akāra*) is the entry into all dharmas because there is no first beginning (*ādhyantuppanna*); ‘Pa’ (*pakāra*) is the entry into all dharmas because it shows the *paramārtha*, etc.

⁵¹⁸ The other powers are:

- (c) *Sarvatragāminīpratipajñānabala* (Pali *sabbatthagāminīpaṭipadāññabala*): the power of the knowledge of the different practices leading to the various destinies.
- (d) *Anekadhātunānādhātujñānabala* (*anekadhdātunānādhātulokañānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the different dispositions and formations of different beings.
- (e) *Nānādhimuktijñānabala* (*nānādhimuttikatāñānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the different aspirations of beings.
- (f) *Indriyaparāparyajñānabala* (*indriyaparopariyattañānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the different degrees of development of the faculties (*śraddhā*, etc.), characters, inclinations, capacities, etc., of beings.
- (g) *Dhyānavimokṣasamādhisamāpattiñānabala* (*jhānavimokkhasamādhi-samāpattiñānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the absorptions, deliverances, meditative stabilizations and attainments.
- (h) *Pūrvanivāsajñānabala* (*pubbenivāsanussatiñānabala*): the power of the knowledge of previous existences.

(xii) **What is fearlessness (*vaiśaradya*)?** There are four kinds.

- (1) **What is fearlessness concerning full enlightenment (*abhisambodhvaiśāradya*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom and the mind and associated mental activities in the accomplishment of establishing for oneself, with the help of absorption, the assertion of complete awakening in respect to all knowable things.
- (2) **What is fearlessness concerning the extinction of the impurities (*āsravakṣayavaiśāradya*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in accomplishing, with the help of absorption, of the establishment for oneself of the assertion of the extinction of all the impurities.
- (3) **What is fearlessness concerning harmful things (*antarāyikadharmavaiśāradya*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment of the establishment for others of the assertion of all the harmful things,⁵¹⁹ with the help of absorption.
- (4) **What is fearlessness concerning the path that leads to emancipation (*nairyāṇikapratipadavaiśāradya*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishing of the establishment, for others, of the assertion of the entire doctrine of the path leading to emancipation, with the help of absorption.⁵²⁰

(xiii) **What is the application of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*)?** There are the three kinds of application of mindfulness.⁵²¹ It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in

(i) *Chyutypapādajñānabala* (*cutūpapādañānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the deaths and births of beings according to their actions.

(j) *Āsravakṣayajñānabala* (*āsavakkhayajñānabala*): the power of the knowledge of the extinction of the impurities.

For details on the ten powers, see Vbh, pp. 335-344; M I, pp. 69-71; A V, pp. 33-36; Kośa VII, pp. 69-71.

⁵¹⁹ This means that the Buddha declared that if a certain thing, a certain action, will be dangerous or harmful to the person who commits it, nobody can refute it.

⁵²⁰ The three kinds of mindful equanimity are:

(1) The Buddha remains in equanimity with complete attentiveness, free of displeasure or impatience, when his disciples do not accept and do not follow his teaching.

⁵²¹ (2) He remains in equanimity with complete attentiveness, free of joy, satisfaction, displeasure or impatience, when some of his disciples do not accept and do not follow his teaching while others do so. (3) He remains in equanimity with complete attentiveness free of joy, satisfaction, displeasure or impatience, when some of his disciples do accept and follow his teachings while others do not. See Kośa, VII, p. 76; Sūtrālaṅkāra, XX, 53.

M III, p. 221, explains these three *smṛtyupasthānas* (*satipaṭṭhāna*) a little differently:

(1). When his disciples accept and follow his teaching, the Buddha is happy, but remains in complete attentiveness (*sato sampajāno*), free of any moral excitement (*anavassuto*).

(2) When his disciples do not accept and do not follow his teaching, he is unhappy, but remains in complete attentiveness, free of any moral excitement.

accomplishing the cessation of all kinds of defilements (feelings) by attracting (gaining) to himself (the Buddha) multitudes of disciples (*gaṇaparikarṣaṇa*).

(xiv) **What are the things which need no protection (*arakṣya* or *arakṣa*)?** There are three.⁵²² They consist of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in accomplishing at will the gift of advice and admonition in attracting to himself multitudes of disciples.

(xv) **What is absence of confusion (*asampramoṣa*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment of the exact narration of everything that has been said and done.

(xvi) **What is destruction of the traces (*vāsanāsamudghāta*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishment by the Omniscient One of the cessation within himself (*sarvajñā*) of the latent traces of conduct belonging to those who are not omniscient.⁵²³

(xvii) **What is great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*)?** It consists of the meditative stability and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishing of the abiding in the compassion that has as its object every kind of continual suffering.⁵²⁴

(xviii) **What are the qualities special to the Buddha (*āvenīkabuddhadharma*)?** There are eighteen qualities special to the Buddha.⁵²⁵ They consist of the meditative stability and wisdom – the rest as before – (a) in the accomplishment of the purity of the physical, verbal and mental actions which are not shared with others; (b) in the accomplishment of complete attainment of the well-founded and fruitful faculties of the Tathāgata; (c) in the accomplishment of the conduct of activities that are not shared with others; and (d) in the accomplishment of the abiding in the knowledge that is not shared with others.

(xix) **What is the knowledge of all aspects (*sarvākārajñatā*)?** It consists of the meditative stabilization and wisdom – the rest as before – in the accomplishing of all aspects concerning the aggregates (*skandha*), the elements (*dhātu*) and the spheres (*āyatana*).

(3) When some of his disciples accept and follow his teaching whereas some do not, he is neither happy nor unhappy, but remains in complete attentiveness, in equanimity (*upekkhako*).

⁵²² The three things that have no need of protection are: 1. the physical conduct (*kāyasamācāra*), 2. the verbal conduct (*vachīsamācāra*) and 3. the mental conduct (*manosamācāra*) of the Buddha, which are pure (*pariśuddha*) and in which there is nothing bad or wrong that must be hidden. D III, p. 217.

⁵²³ All beings retain latent traces (*vāsanā*) of their behaviors, habits and previous actions. The Buddha alone is completely free of them.

⁵²⁴ For details on Mahākaruṇā see Kośa VII, p. 27.

⁵²⁵ The eighteen *āvenīkabuddhadharmas* are: 10 *balas* (powers), 4 *vaiśāradyas* (complete self-confidences), 3 *smṛtyupasthānas* (mindful equanimities) and *mahākaruṇā* (Great Compassion). See Kośa VII, p. 66.

THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF THE 19 SPECIAL QUALITIES

What is the accomplishment of these qualities?

By means of the four pure absorptions (*pariśuddha dhyāna*), an adept of another religion (*anyatīrthīya*), a disciple (*śrāvaka*) or a bodhisattva can realize the four immeasurables (*apramāṇa = brahmavihāra*) as well as the five forms of superior knowledge (*abhijñā*).⁵²⁶ As for the other qualities, a disciple, a bodhisattva or the Tathāgata realizes them by means of the fourth absorption to the highest degree (*prāntakoṭika caturtha dhyāna*). **Why is that?** Because, by means of the absorption, one obtains attentiveness and practice repeated according to the establishing of the Doctrine.

These qualities are twofold:

- (a) those which are present in his own actions (*svakāritrapratyupasthāna*) and
 - (b) those which belong to the abode (*vaihārika*).
- (a) Those which are present in his own actions should be understood as being obtained after the supramundane state (*lokottaraprṣṭhalabha*) and as having the nature of conventional knowledge (*saṃvṛtijñānasvabhāva*).
 - (b) Those which belong to the abode should be understood as having the nature of supramundane knowledge (*lokottarajñānasvabhāva*).
- (i) **What is done by means of the immeasurables (*apramāṇa*)?** One rejects conflict (*vipakṣa*), gathers the accumulation of merit (*puṇyasambhāra*) as a result of compassionate behavior (*anukampāvihāra*), and one does not weary (*ne parikhidyate*) of ripening beings (*sattvaparipāka*).
 - (ii) **What is done by means of the deliverances (*vimokṣa*)?** One accomplishes supernatural creations (*nirmāṇakarma*), one is not stained as a result of a beautiful creation (*śubhanirmāṇa*),⁵²⁷ one is not

⁵²⁶ The first five *abhijñās* in the list of the six *abhijñās*.

⁵²⁷ *Śubhanirnmāṇe na saṃkliṣyate* ‘one is not stained because of a beautiful creation’.

A *prthagjana* who has temporarily suppressed his passions and who is in possession of some supernatural powers (*rddhi*) can be stained or troubled by his own supernatural creations (*nirmāṇakarma*), and his passions which were suppressed can reappear. A certain *prthagjana* monk from Ceylon had the illusion that he was an arhat because he had suppressed his passions for a long time and because he possessed certain supernatural powers. But another monk, Dhammadinna, who was a true arhat, knew this state of affairs and wished to disillusion his friend. So he asked him to create a beautiful female figure and to gaze at her for a long time. When the monk did so, the long suppressed passions reawoke in him due to his own creation and he understood that he was not an arhat. Thus one can become stained by one’s own pleasant supernatural creations (*śubhnirmāṇa*).

One can also become frightened by one’s own supernatural creations. Another *prthagjana* monk, also from Ceylon, possessing some *rddhis*, had the illusion that he was an arhat because he had suppressed his passions for a long time. But the same Dhammadinna mentioned above put him to the proof by asking him to create an elephant approaching in a menacing manner. The monk created such an elephant, but when he saw it, he was afraid of his own creation and got up to run away.

attached to the calm deliverances (*sānta vimokṣa*), and one dwells in the noble supremely calm abode (*paramapraśānta āryavihāra*) as a result of devotion (*adhimucyanatā*).

- (iii) **What is done by means of the spheres of dominance (*abhibhvāyatana*)?** One keeps in one's control the objects of the three deliverances⁵²⁸ because the object is dominated in the spheres of dominance.
- (iv) **What is done by means of the spheres of totality (*kṛtsnāyatana*)?** One prepares (?) the objects of the deliverances (*vimokṣālambana*) because the spheres of totality encompass totality (*kṛtsnaspharaṇa*).
- (v) **What is done by means of absence of battle (*araṇa*)?** One becomes worthy of faith (*ādeyavacana*, lit., ‘he whose word can be believed’).
- (vi) **What is done by means of knowledge resulting from resolve (*pranidhijñāna*)?** One explains past, future and present (*bhutabhavyavartamānaṃ vyākaroti*) and one becomes very respected in the world.⁵²⁹
- (vii) **What is done by means of analytical knowledge (*pratisaṁvid*)?** One satisfies the minds of people by instruction (preaching) (*deśanā*).⁵³⁰
- (viii) **What is done by means of superior knowledge (*abhijñā*)?** One converts beings to the Teaching (*śāsana*) by means of physical and verbal actions and by means of reading their thoughts (*cittādeśanā*), and having understood their characters, their comings and goings (*āgati gati*) in samsāra, one duly encourages beings to direct themselves toward release (*niḥsarana*).
- (ix) **What is done by means of the characteristics and minor marks (*lakṣaṇānuvyāñjana*)?** One causes conviction (*sampratyaya*) in beings with regard to the state of the Great Man (*mahāpuruṣatva*) by simple direct seeing (*darśanamātrakeṇa*), and one makes it pleasing to the minds of those who see (*cittānyabhiprasādayati*).
- (x) **What is done by means of the purities (*pariśuddhi*)?** Having deliberated well (*saṁcintya*), one takes birth in existence (*bhavopapatti*). If one so wishes, one can remain there for a kalpa or for part of a kalpa, or one can abandon the vital principle (*āyuḥsamākāra*). One becomes master of the doctrine (*dharmaśavartin*) and master of meditative stability (*saṁdhivāśavartin*), and one holds the Good Law (*saddharmaṃ sandhārayati*).
- (xi) **What is done by means of the powers (*bala*)?** Rejecting the theories of absence of cause and irregular causes (*ahetuviśamahetuvāda*) and the theory according to which one suffers the results of actions which one has not committed (*akṛtābhyaṅgamavāda*), one teaches the path of right progress

These two stories appear in MA, I (PTS), pp.184, 185. See also *History of Buddhism in Ceylon* by Walpola Rahula, pp. 221, 222.

⁵²⁸ The first three deliverances in the list of eight *vimokṣas*. See above, p. [].

⁵²⁹ The Chinese version adds: ‘because all the people in distant (lands) honor him’.

⁵³⁰ The Chinese version adds: ‘because one breaks the net of all doubts’.

(*samyag abhyudayamārga*). Penetrating the minds and characters of other beings (*sattvacittacaritāni anupraviśya*), their ability to receive the teachings (*deśanābhājanatā*), their intentions (*āśaya*), their latent residues (*anuśaya*), their objects (*ālambana*), their spiritual accumulations (*sambhāra*), their capacity (*bhavyatā*) and their release (*niḥsaraṇa*), one duly teaches the supreme path (*niḥśreyasa mārga*). One subjugates all evil (*sarvamāra*).⁵³¹ Everywhere people question and being questioned, one replies.

- (xii) **What is done by means of fearlessness (*vaiśāradya*)?** One establishes completely one's position as master (*śāstṛtva*) in the assembly (*parṣadi*) and one conquers the heretics (*anyatīrthya*) who contradict (*chodaka*).
- (xiii) **What is done by means of application of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthāna*)?** Not being stained (*asamkliṣṭa*), one attracts to oneself multitudes of disciples (*gaṇam parikarṣati*).
- (xiv) **What is done by means of the things that need not be protected (*arakṣa*)?** One constantly exhorts and instructs multitudes of disciples.
- (xv) **What is done by means of absence of confusion (*asammoṣadharmatā*)?** One does not neglect the duties of the Buddha (*buddhakṛtya*).
- (xvi) **What is done by means of destruction of the latent traces (*vāsanāsamudghāta*)?** Not being stained (*niḥkleśa*), one shows no actions or gestures (*ceṣṭā*) that have the appearance of the defilements (*kleśapratirūpa*).
- (xvii) **What is done by means of the great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*)?** One watches over the world six times day and night.
- (xviii) **What is done by means of the qualities special to the Buddhas (*āveṇikabuddhadharma*)?** One influences all the disciples (*śravaka*) and Individual Buddhas (*pratyekabuddha*) by the purity of one's physical, verbal and mental actions, by one's attainment (*prāpti*) of the qualities, by one's conduct (*ācāra*) and by one's way of life (*vihāra*).
- (xix) **What is done by means of the knowledge of all the aspects (*sarvākārajñatā*)?** One destroys (lit. cuts) all the doubts of all beings and for a long period of time one establishes the eye (view) of the Doctrine (*dharmanetra*), by means of which unripe beings are ripened and ripened beings are liberated.

CCB.5.

MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS CONCERNING THE PROGRESS OF A BODHISATTVA

The person who goes higher and higher (*uttarottaram*), obtaining a higher path (*viśiṣṭamārga*) among these ten clear understandings (*abhisamaya*),⁵³² abandons the preceding lower path (*hīnamārga*) and thus he

⁵³¹ The word *māra*, lit. ‘death’, is used to indicate all the *kleśas* ‘defilements’, the influences and forces opposed to the spiritual life.

realizes abandonment in series (*samkalanaprahāṇa*). A disciple (*śravaka*) in the nirvāṇa without residue (*nirupadhiśeṣe nirvāṇadhātu*) abandons the entire Path by means of complete suppression and falling away (*saṃvasargavihāni*), but a bodhisattva does not abandon it. That is why bodhisattvas are called those whose wholesome roots are inexhaustible (*akṣayakuśalamūla*) and whose virtues are inexhaustible (*akṣayaguṇa*).

Why are certain subjects established as indeterminate (inexplicable) (*avyākṛtavastu*)?⁵³³

Because these are questions posed because of the erroneous thinking (*ayoniśah paripraśnatām upādāya*).

(Why are these questions asked because of erroneous thinking)? Because of the abandonment of the mind with regard to cause and effect, defilement and purification (*hetuphalasamkleśavyavadānacintāparivarjanatām upādāya*).

Why does a bodhisattva who has entered into the commitment of a bodhisattva (*bodhisattvanyāsāvkrānta*)⁵³⁴ not become a stream-enterer (*srotāpanna*)?

Because the stream is imperfect with regard to practice of the Path (*pratipattyapariniṣpanna*).

Why does he not become a once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmin*)? Because after having considered it well, he has accepted an unlimited number of rebirths.

Why does he not become a non-returner (*anāgāmin*)? Because, after having sojourned in the absorptions (*dhyāna*), he takes rebirth in the realm of the sense-pleasures (*kāmadhātu*).

Having attained the Truths by clear understanding (*abhisamaya*), the bodhisattva cultivates the path counteracting the obstacles to the knowables (*jñeyāvaraṇaparipakṣamārga*) by means of the ten-stage (*daśabhūmi*) Path of cultivation (*bhāvanāmarga*); but he does not cultivate the path counteracting the obstacles of the defilements (*kleśāvaraṇapratipakṣamārga*). However, having attained enlightenment (*bodhi*), he abandons the obstacles of the defilements and the obstacles to the knowables at one and the same time, and he becomes an arhat, a Tathāgata. Although the bodhisattva does not abandon all the

⁵³³ This refers to the well-known questions to which the Buddha refused to respond: 1. Is the universe eternal (*sassato loko*), or 2. is it not eternal (*asassato*)? 3. Is the universe finite (*antavā*), or 4. is it infinite (*anantavā*)? 5. Is the soul the same as the body (*tām jīvam tām sarīram*), or 6. is the soul one thing and the body another (*aññam jīvam aññam sarīram*)? 7. Does the Tathāgata exist after death (*hoti tathāgato param maranā*)? 8. Does he not exist after death (*na hoti tathāgato param marana*)? 9. Does he both exist and not exist after death (*hoti ca na ca hoti*)? 10. Is he both nonexistent and not nonexistent (*neva hoti na na nahotि*)? M I pp. 426, 484; S IV, p. 393.

But Kośa (V, pp. 43, 48) mentions fourteen *avyākṛtavastu*: 1. the universe is eternal, 2. not eternal, 3. eternal and noneternal, 4. neither eternal nor noneternal, 5. the universe is finite, 6. infinite, 7. finite and noninfinite, 8. neither finite nor noninfinite, 9. the Tathāgata exists after death, 10. does not exist after death, 11. exists and does not exist after death, 12. neither exists nor does not exist after death, 13. the soul is the same as the body, 14. the soul is one thing and the body another.

⁵³⁴ Pradhan (p. 101) reads: *bodhim anavadyām avakrāntah* ‘who has entered into the immaculate bodhi’. The reading of Gokhale, which is adopted here, seems more correct.

defilements, he suppresses them in the way that one suppresses poison by incantation and by medicine (*mantrauṣadha*), he makes no defilement or error and he abandons the defilements in all the stages (*bhūmi*) like an arhat.

CCB.6.

SKILL IN MEDITATION

Furthermore, the bodhisattva is skilled in meditation (*bhāvanākuśala*) in regard to

- (1) the knowables (*jñeyā*),
- (2) means (*upāya*),
- (3) unreal imagination (*abhūtavikalpa*), and
- (4) nonconceptuality (*nirvikalpa*),

and he develops (lit., ‘heats up’) his faculties (*indriya*) from time to time.

(1) What is the knowable (*jñeyā*)? In brief, it is six-fold:

- (i) illusion (error) (*bhrānti*),
- (ii) ground of illusion (*bhrāntyāśraya*),
- (iii) ground of absence of illusion (*abhrāntyāśraya*),
- (iv) illusion and absence of illusion (*bhrāntyabhrānti*),
- (v) absence of illusion (*abhrānti*) and
- (vi) natural result of the absence of illusion (*abhrāntiniṣyanda*).

(2) What is skill in means (*upāyakauśalya*)? In brief, it is fourfold:

- (i) skill in the maturation (development) of beings (*sattvaparipāka*),
- (ii) skill in accomplishing the qualities of the Buddha (*buddhadharmaparipūraṇa*),
- (iii) skill in rapidly achieving higher knowledge (*ksiprābhijñā*) and
- (iv) skill in the non-interruption of the Path (*mārgānupaccheda*).⁵³⁵

⁵³⁵ But Bodhibhūmi, p. 261, says that the *upāyakauśalya* of the bodhisattvas consists of twelve kinds: six refer to the acquisition of the qualities of the Buddha (*buddhadharmasamudāgama*), six refer to the maturation of beings (*sattvaparipaāka*).

The six referring to the qualities of the Buddha are: 1. compassionate interest for all beings (*sarvasattveṣu karuṇāshagatā apekṣā*), 2. exact knowledge of all conditioned things (*sarvasamkāreṣu yathābhūtaparijñānam*), 3. ardent desire for supreme complete enlightenment (*anuttarasamyaksambodhijñāne sprhā*), 4. non-abandoning of samsāra (*samsāraaparityāga*) because of compassion for all beings, 5. immaculate transmigration in samsāra (*asamkliṣṭasamsārasaṃṣṛti*) as a result of exact knowledge of all conditioned things and 6. energetic effort (*uttapta梵īrya*) as a result of ardent desire for the knowledge belonging to the Buddha (*buddhajñāna*). The six referring to maturation of beings are: 1. production of limitless results (*apramāṇaphala*) starting from small wholesome roots

(3) What is unreal imagination (conceptualization) (*abhūtavikalpa*)? In brief, there are ten kinds.⁵³⁶

- (i) fundamental conceptualization (*mūlavikalpa*),
- (ii) conceptualization of a sign (*nimittavikalpa*),⁵³⁷
- (iii) conceptualization of the impression made on the mind by the sign (*nimittabhāsavikalpa*),⁵³⁸
- (iv) conceptualization of the transformation of the sign (*nimittaparināmavikalpa*),⁵³⁹
- (v) conceptualization of the transformation of the impression made on the mind by the sign (*nimittābhāsaparināmavikalpa*),⁵⁴⁰
- (vi) conceptualization provoked by another (*parānvayavikalpa*),⁵⁴¹
- (vii) superficial (incorrect) conceptualization (*ayoniśovikalpa*),
- (viii) profound (correct) conceptualization (*yoniśovikalpa*),
- (ix) conceptualization caused by attachment to wrong views (*abhiniveśavikalpa*) and
- (x) distracted conceptualization (*vikṣepavikalpa*).

Distracted conceptualization is itself of ten types.⁵⁴²

- (1) conceptualization of non-existence (*abhāvavikalpa*),
- (2) conceptualization of existence (*bhāvavikalpa*),
- (3) affirming conceptualization (*adhyāropavikalpa*),⁵⁴³
- (4) negative conceptualization (*apavādavikalpa*),
- (5) conceptualization of unity (*ekatvavikalpa*),
- (6) conceptualization of diversity (*nānātvavikalpa*),⁵⁴⁴

(*parīttakuśalamūla*), 2. production of immense limitless wholesome roots (*kuśalamūla*) without great effort, 3. suppression of beings' opposition to the teachings of the Buddha, 4. the fact of leading unbiased beings to the teachings, 5. the fact of ripening those who are led there and 6. liberation of those who are ripe.

⁵³⁶ For explanation of these ten kinds of *vikalpa*, see Mahāyanasamgraha, p. 112, verse 20.

⁵³⁷ Rahula translates *nimitta* as 'object'. Monier-Williams gives 'sign, motive, ground, reason'.

⁵³⁸ Pradhan's restoration: *nimittapratibhāsavikalpa*.. Rahula translates *bhāsa* as 'likeness'. Monier Williams gives 'light, brightness, fancy, impression made on the mind'.

⁵³⁹ Pradhan's restoration: *nimittakāravikalpa*.

⁵⁴⁰ Pradhan's restoration: *nimittapratibhāsavikāravikalpa*.

⁵⁴¹ Pradhan's restoration: *paropanītavikalpa*.

⁵⁴² See Samgraha, p. 115, v. 21,22, and Sūtrālamkāra, p. 76, v. 77 and commentary.

⁵⁴³ Pradhan's restoration: *samāropavikalpa*.

- (7) conceptualization of self nature (*svabhāvavikalpa*),
- (8) conceptualization of specificity (*viśeṣavikalpa*),
- (9) conceptualization of the object according to name (*yathānāmārthavikalpa*) and
- (10) conceptualization of the name according to the object (*yathārthanāmavikalpa*).

(4) What is nonconceptuality (*nirvikalpatā*)? In brief, it is threefold:

- (i) contentment (*santuṣṭinirvikalpatā*),
- (ii) absence of error (*aviparyāsanirvikalpatā*) and
- (iii) absence of vain speculation (*niṣprapañca-nirvikalpatā*).

These three types should be considered as belonging respectively

- (i) to the ordinary person (*prthagjana*),
- (ii) to the disciple (*śrāvaka*) and
- (iii) to the bodhisattva.

Nonconceptuality in the absence of vain speculation should not be considered to be non-thought (*amanasikāra*) or as transcending thought (*manasikārasamatikrama*), nor as tranquility (*vyupaśama*) nor as nature (*svabhāva*) or as mental fabrication concerning an object (*ālamabane abhisamāskāra*), but as mental non-fabrication concerning an object (*ālambane anabhisamāskāra*).

CCB.7.

HOW A BODHISATTVA DEVELOPS HIS FACULTIES

How does a bodhisattva who possesses keen faculties by nature (*tīkṣṇendriya*) develop (heat up) his faculties (*indriya*)?

Depending on a keen-weak faculty (*tīkṣṇa-mṛdvindriya*), he develops a keen-medium (*tīkṣṇa-madhyendriya*) faculty; depending on a keen-medium faculty, he develops a keen-keen faculty (*tīkṣṇa-tīkṣṇendriya*) faculty.

Herein is completed the Third Compendium entitled

Ascertainment of Acquisitions

in the Compendium of the Super-Doctrine

⁵⁴⁴ Pradhan's restoration: *prthagtvavikalpa*.

CD.

CHAPTER FOUR ASCERTAINMENT OF DIALECTIC (SĀMKATHYAVINIŚCAYA)

CDA.

THE SEVENFOLD ASCERTAINMENT OF DIALECTIC

What is the ascertainment of dialectic (*sāṃkathyaviniścaya*)?

In brief, it is sevenfold:

1. ascertainment of meaning (*arthaviniścaya*),
2. ascertainment of explanation (*vyākhyāviniścaya*),
3. ascertainment of analytical proof (*prabhidyasamdarśanaviniścaya*),
4. ascertainment of questions (*saṃpraśnaviniścaya*),
5. ascertainment of grouping (*samgrahaviniścaya*),
6. ascertainment of discussion (controversy) (*vādaviniścaya*) and
7. ascertainment of profound (hidden) meaning (*abhisandhviniścaya*).

CDA.1.

ASCERTAINMENT OF MEANING (ARTHAVINIŚCAYA)

1. What is the ascertainment of meaning (*arthaviniścaya*)? It is the ascertainment made in reference to the six types of meaning.

What are the six types of meaning?

- a. According to nature (*svabhāvārtha*),
- b. according to cause (*hetvartha*),
- c. according to result (*phalārtha*),
- d. according to action (*karmārtha*),
- e. according to union (*yogārtha*) and
- f. according to function (*vrtyartha*).

(a) The meaning according to nature (*svabhāvārtha*) concerns the three natures.⁵⁴⁵

(b) The meaning according to cause (*hetvartha*) concerns three causes.⁵⁴⁶

- (1) the cause of birth (*utpattihetu*),
- (2) the cause of evolution (continuity) (*pravṛttihetu*) and

⁵⁴⁵ The three natures are: *parikalpitasyabhāva* (imaginary nature), *paratantrasyabhāva* (relative nature) and *parinispannasyabhāva* (absolute nature). For details see Lankā, pp. 67, 132, 227.

⁵⁴⁶ The Tibetan version does not have ‘three causes’.

- (3) the cause of accomplishment (*siddhīhetu*).
- (c) The meaning according to result (*phalārtha*) concerns five results:⁵⁴⁷
 - (1) the result by maturation (*vipākaphala*),⁵⁴⁸
 - (2) the natural result (*nīṣyandaphala*),⁵⁴⁹
 - (3) the predominant result (*adhipatiphala*),⁵⁵⁰
 - (4) the result of human effort (*puruṣkāraphala*)⁵⁵¹ and
 - (5) the result of separation (*visamīyogaphala*).⁵⁵²
- (d) The meaning according to action (*karmārtha*) concerns five actions:⁵⁵³
 - (1) perception (or reception) (*upalabdhikarma*),
 - (2) operation (*kāritrakarma*),
 - (3) intention (*vyavasāyakarma*),
 - (4) transformation (*parinatikarma*) and
 - (5) acquisition (*prāptikarma*).⁵⁵⁴
- (e) The meaning according to union (*yogārtha*) concerns five unions:⁵⁵⁵
 - (1) collective union (*sāmūhikayoga*),⁵⁵⁶

⁵⁴⁷ The Tibetan version does not have ‘five results’.

⁵⁴⁸ *Vipākaphala*: this is the maturation of unwholesome (*akuśala*) actions and wholesome impure (*kuśalasāsrava*) actions in the unfortunate (*apāya*) and good (*sugati*) destinies respectively. Bobhūmi, p. 102.

⁵⁴⁹ *Nīṣyandaphala* is the delight in unwholesome (*akuśalārāmatā*) actions and the abundance of unwholesome actions (*akuśala bahulatā*) due to the habitual practice of unwholesome actions (*akuśalābhyaśa*) as well as the delight in wholesome actions (*kuśalārāmatā*) and their abundance (*kuśalabahulatā*) due to the habitual practice of wholesome actions (*kuśalābhyaśa*), or the production of results according to the preceding actions. Ibid., p. 102.

⁵⁵⁰ *Adhipatiphala*: visual consciousness (*cakṣurvijñāna*) is the predominant result of the visual faculty (*cakṣurindriya*)... mental consciousness (*manovijñāna*) is the predominant result of the mental faculty (*mano-indriya*)... The non-breaking up of life (*pranairaviyoga*) is the predominant result of the vital faculty (*jīvitendriya*). This is how the predominant results of all 22 faculties should be understood. Ibid., p. 103. For detailed list, see above.

⁵⁵¹ *Puruṣakāraphala* designates the results obtained in this very life (*dṛṣṭe dharme*) by human effort (*puruṣakāra*) in various occupations such as commerce, agriculture, etc. Ibid., p. 102.

⁵⁵² *Visamīyogaphala* is the cessation of the defilements (*kleśanirodha*) as the result of the eightfold noble Path. Ibid., p. 102.

⁵⁵³ The Tibetan text does not have ‘five actions’.

⁵⁵⁴ For the explanation of these five actions, see above.

⁵⁵⁵ The Tibetan version does not have ‘five unions’.

- (2) consequent union (*ānubandhikayoga*),⁵⁵⁷
 - (3) conjoint union (*sāmbandhikayoga*),⁵⁵⁸
 - (4) circumstantial union (*āvasthikayoga*)⁵⁵⁹ and
 - (5) transformative union (*vaikārikayoga*).⁵⁶⁰
- (f) The meaning according to function (*vṛttyartha*) concerns five functions:⁵⁶¹
- (1) characteristics (*lakṣanavṛtti*),⁵⁶²
 - (2) position (*avasthānavṛtti*),⁵⁶³
 - (3) that which is contrary to the truth (*viparyāsavṛtti*),⁵⁶⁴
 - (4) that which is not contrary to the truth (*aviparyāsavṛtti*)⁵⁶⁵ and
 - (5) division (*prabhedavṛtti*).⁵⁶⁶

CDA.2.

ASCERTAINMENT OF EXPLANATION (VYĀKHYĀVINIŚCAYA)

2. What is the ascertainment of explanation (*vyākhyāviniścaya*)?

It is the ascertainment by means of which the *sūtras* are explained.

But what is it? In brief, it is sixfold:⁵⁶⁷

- (i) the subject that is to be known (*parijñeyavastu*),⁵⁶⁸

⁵⁵⁶ For example, a house is the result of a collective union of wood, bricks, etc.

⁵⁵⁷ Those that exist and those that are manifested as a result of *anuśaya* (latent residues). For example, *rāga* exists and is manifested as a result of *rāgānuśaya*.

⁵⁵⁸ Union of dependents and relatives. For example, the parents are joined one to the other.

⁵⁵⁹ One is joined to happiness or misfortune according to the circumstances in which one is born and in which one finds oneself. A situation is related to pleasant feelings, etc., according to the circumstances.

⁵⁶⁰ This is the transformation produced by the association of external defilements (*āgantukakleśa*).

⁵⁶¹ The Tibetan version does not have ‘five functions’.

⁵⁶² These are the three characteristics of the *samskāras*: *utpāda* (birth), *sthitī* (duration) and *bhaṅga* (destruction).

⁵⁶³ This is the position in time during which things exist and persist.

⁵⁶⁴ For example, defiled things (*sāsrava*) do not function according to the Truth.

⁵⁶⁵ Pure things (*anāsrava*) function according to the Truth.

⁵⁶⁶ All composite things (*samskāra*) are divided into past, present and future, inner and outer, etc. It is a question here of their functioning according to this division.

⁵⁶⁷ The Tibetan version does not have ‘In brief, it is sixfold’.

⁵⁶⁸ I.e., the *skandhas*, *dhātus* and *āyatanas*.

- (ii) the meaning that is to be known (*parijñeyārtha*),⁵⁶⁹
- (iii) the approach to knowledge (*parijñopaniṣad*),⁵⁷⁰
- (iv) the nature of knowledge (*parijñā-svabhāva*),⁵⁷¹
- (v) the result of knowledge (*parijñāphala*)⁵⁷² and
- (vi) its experience (*tatpravedanā*).⁵⁷³

Furthermore, there are fourteen methods (*mukha*) applicable to the ascertainment of explanation (*vyākhyāviniścaya*):

- (1) grouping of explanations (*vyākhyāsamgrahamukha*),⁵⁷⁴
- (2) grouping of subjects (*vastusamgrahasamukha*),⁵⁷⁵
- (3) major and minor factors (*aṅgopāṅgamukha*),⁵⁷⁶
- (4) successive order (*uttarottara-nirhāramukha*),⁵⁷⁷
- (5) rejection (*pratikṣepamukha*),⁵⁷⁸
- (6) transforming the letters (*akṣarapariṇāmamukha*),⁵⁷⁹
- (7) elimination and non-elimination (*nāśānāśamukha*),⁵⁸⁰

⁵⁶⁹ I.e., the meaning of *anitya* (impermanence), *duḥkha* (suffering) and *anātma* (selflessness) with regard to the *skandhas*, *dhātus* and *āyatanas*.

⁵⁷⁰ This consists of the virtues: *śīla*, *indriyaguptadvāra*, etc.

Upaniṣad (*upa+ni+ṣad*) lit. means ‘to sit down close to’, ‘approach’. In Buddhist literature, the Sanskrit *upaniṣad* and its Pali equivalent *upanisā* means ‘basis’, ‘cause’, ‘means’, ‘approach’. Cf. *anyā hi lābhopaniṣad*, *anyā nirvāṇagāminī* (*Udānavarga*, XIII, 5) = *aññā hi lābhūpanisā*, *aññā nibbānagāminī* (*Dhp*. V, 16). For detailed discussion of this term see Kośa, II, p. 106, note 3, and also Edgerton’s BHS Dictionary.

⁵⁷¹ This refers to the 37 *bodhipākṣikadharmas*. See above, p. [], note

⁵⁷² I.e., *vimukti* ‘deliverance’.

⁵⁷³ I.e., *vimuktijñānadarśana*, ‘insight of deliverance’.

⁵⁷⁴ Explaining the phrases and ideas in sequential order as in the case of *pratītya-samutpāda*.

⁵⁷⁵ Grouping the main teachings such as in the *gāthā*: *sabbapāpassa akaranam*, etc. (*Dhp*, XIV, 5).

⁵⁷⁶ Mentioning a general term first and then explaining it by detailed phrases. For example, a general term such as *ātmaviśuddhi* must be explained in detail by other terms.

⁵⁷⁷ Explaining in sequence, such as in the case of the five *indriyas*: first, *śraddhā*; second, *vīrya*; etc.

⁵⁷⁸ This refers to the *kullūpama* ‘the parable of the raft’. In the *Alagaddūpama-sutta* (M, no. 22), it is said that even the *dhammas* should be abandoned after having freed saṃsāra (as one abandons the raft after having crossed the river), therefore how much more so the *adhammas*.

⁵⁷⁹ This is like the *gāthā*: *assaddho akataññū ca*, etc. (*Dhp*, VII, 8) in which the words which are clear are interpreted differently.

- (8) defining the individual (*pudgalavyavasthānamukha*),⁵⁸¹
- (9) defining the divisions (*prabhedavyavasthānamukha*),⁵⁸²
- (10) means (*nayamukha*),⁵⁸³
- (11) complete knowledge (*parijñādimukha*),⁵⁸⁴
- (12) strength and weakness (*balābalamukha*),⁵⁸⁵
- (13) abstracting (*pratyāhāramukha*)⁵⁸⁶ and
- (14) accomplishment (*abhinirhāramukha*).⁵⁸⁷

CDA.3.

ASCERTAINMENT OF ANALYTICAL PROOF (PRABHIDYASAMDARŚANAVINIŚCAYA)

3. **What is the ascertainment of analytical proof (*prabhidyasamdarśanaviniścaya*)?** It consists of such ascertainties as (i, a) those that are made up of one single case (*ekavacaraka*)⁵⁸⁸ (i, b) having as support the preceding word (case) (*pūrvapadaka*),⁵⁸⁹ (i, c) having as support the following word (case) (*paścātpadaka*),⁵⁹⁰ (ii) as those that are made up of two cases (*dvikoṭika*),⁵⁹¹ or (iii) three cases (*trikoṭika*),

⁵⁸⁰ Explaining by the process of elimination and non-elimination.

⁵⁸¹ I.e., the classification of individuals as in the *Puggalapaññatti*.

⁵⁸² This refers to *catuskoṭika* explanations: existence, non-existence, both existence and non-existence and neither existence nor non-existence.

⁵⁸³ There are six means: (1) the means of reality, (2) the means of experience, (3) the means of religion, (4) the means of avoiding the two extremes, (5) the inconceivable means (i.e., the method by which the Buddha explains the Dharma), (6) the method of pleasure of the mind.

⁵⁸⁴ This refers to the four functions in respect to the four noble truths: *duḥkha* must be understood (*parijñeya*), *samudaya* must be abandoned (destroyed) (*prahātavya*), *nirodha* must be realized (*sākṣātkartavya*) and *mārga* must be practiced (*bhāvitavya*).

⁵⁸⁵ This refers to *pratīyasamutpāda*. It shows the value of each word. If a word is omitted, the meaning is not understandable.

⁵⁸⁶ Asking a question and then answering in a simple way.

⁵⁸⁷ Explaining each phrase by several subsequent phrases.

⁵⁸⁸ I.e., a question and a direct answer.

⁵⁸⁹ The second word must be explained in reference to the first, as in the case of *jñāna* and *jñeyya*.

⁵⁹⁰ The first word must be explained in reference to the second, as in the case of *grāhya* and *grāhaka*.

⁵⁹¹ Having two alternatives.

or (iv) four cases (*catuṣkoṭika*), (v) as valid in both senses (*omkārika*),⁵⁹² (vi) rejecting the proposition (*pratikṣepika*)⁵⁹³ – all of these in regard to the aggregates (*skandha*), etc., as explained above.

CDA.4.

ASCERTAINMENT OF QUESTIONS (SAMPRAŚNAVINIŚCAYA)

4. What is the ascertainment of questions (*sampraśnaviniscaya*)?

It is the ascertainment of all that is true and false by replying to questions depending on the eight points above.

Furthermore, there are four ways of resolving questions: (i) by refuting (*dūṣaka*), (ii) by proving (*pratiṣṭhāpaka*), (iii) by analyzing (*cedaka*) and (iv) by explaining (making something understood) (*bodhaka*).

CDA.5.

ASCERTAINMENT OF GROUPING (SAMGRAHAVINIŚCAYA)

5. What is the ascertainment of grouping (*samgrahaviniścaya*)?

It is the ascertainment grouped according to ten points.

What are these ten points? The point of ascertainment according to

- (i) accomplishment of duty (*kṛtyānuṣṭhāna*),⁵⁹⁴
- (ii) according to entry into one of the three vehicles (*avatāra*),⁵⁹⁵
- (iii) according to devotion (*adhimukti*),⁵⁹⁶
- (iv) according to reasoning (*yukti*),⁵⁹⁷
- (v) according to discussion (*sāṃkathya*),⁵⁹⁸
- (vi) according to penetration (*prativivedhya*),⁵⁹⁹
- (vii) according to purity (*viśuddhi*),⁶⁰⁰

⁵⁹² For example: Are all the samskāras impermanent? Are all impermanent things samskāras? Both are valid and the answer ‘Yes’ to each is correct.

⁵⁹³ How many *skandhas* are there outside of the *samskāras*? This question must be rejected because there are no *skandhas* outside the *samskāras*.

⁵⁹⁴ This refers to the ability to explain all types of means (*upāya*) carried out in the world to maintain life.

⁵⁹⁵ This is what permits a bodhisattva to examine and decide which of the three *yānas* he should follow. He decides to follow the *bodhisattvayāna* and to lead others in the same direction.

⁵⁹⁶ This refers to the *śrutamayī prajñā* (knowledge acquired by means of the doctrine as one has understood it) which produces *śraddhā*.

⁵⁹⁷ This refers to *cintāmayī prajñā* according to which one reasons and judges.

⁵⁹⁸ This is to establish the Truth of the doctrine according to *śrutamayī prajñā* and *chintāmayī prajñā*.

⁵⁹⁹ This is penetration into the Truth by means of *darhanamārga* (the path of seeing).

- (viii) according to the various stages of accomplishing (*abhinirhārapada-prabheda*),⁶⁰¹
- (ix) according to non-effort (*ābhoga-nābhoga*)⁶⁰² and
- (x) according to achieving all aims (*sarvārtha-siddhi*).⁶⁰³

CDA.6.

ASCERTAINMENT OF DISCUSSION (CONTROVERSY) (VĀDAVINIŚCAYA)

6. What is the ascertainment of discussion (controversy) (vādaviniścaya)? In brief, it is sevenfold:⁶⁰⁴

- (i) discussion (*vāda*),
- (ii) discussion meeting (*vādādhikaraṇa*),
- (iii) subject of discussion (*vādādhīṣṭhāna*),
- (iv) discussion ornament (*vādālaṅkāra*),
- (v) defeat in discussion (*vādanigraha*),
- (vi) exit from discussion (*vādaniḥsarana*) and
- (vii) qualities very useful for discussion (*vāde bahukārā dharmāḥ*).

CDA.6.1.

DISCUSSION (VĀDA)

(i) Discussion (vāda) in turn is sixfold:

- (a) discussion (*vāda*),
- (b) rumor (*pravāda*),
- (c) debate (*vivāda*),
- (d) blame (*apavāda*),
- (e) agreement (*anuvāda*) and
- (f) advice (*avavāda*).⁶⁰⁵

⁶⁰⁰ This is purification of all the defilements by means of *bhāvanāmārga* (the path of cultivation or meditation).

⁶⁰¹ This refers to the *višeṣamārga* that produces the superior qualities.

⁶⁰² This is ascertainment according to two cases. *Ābhoga*, ‘effort’, is associated with ordinary beings. Buddhas and bodhisattvas are in an effortless state. The activities of a Buddha take place without *ābhoga*, without effort. (*Sūtrālaṅkāra*, IX, 18-19). A bodhisattva is ‘free of all effort (concerned) and reaches an effortless state’ – *sarvābhogavigato nābhoga-dharmatāprāptah* (*Daśabhūmi*, 64)

⁶⁰³ This refers to the Buddha’s knowledge (*buddhajñāna*).

⁶⁰⁴ The Tibetan version does not have: “In brief, it is sevenfold”.

- (a) Discussion (*vāda*) is common speech (*sarvalokavacana*).⁶⁰⁶
- (b) Rumor (*pravāda*) is debate based on popular belief (*lokānuśruto vādah*), because it is debate based on ordinary people's knowledge.⁶⁰⁷
- (c) Debate (*vivāda*) is discussion in which two adversaries are opposed.
- (d) Blame (*apavāda*) is angry, violent and harsh speech spoken by one of the adversaries against the other.
- (e) Agreement (*anuvāda*) is the conclusion of the discussion (*sāṃkathyaviniścaya*) according to inner pure vision (*viśuddhajñānadarśana*).
- (f) Advice (*avavāda*) is the teaching (*deśanā*) aiming at the mental stabilizing of those whose minds are not stabilized, and at the liberation of those whose minds are stabilized.

CDA.6.2.

DISCSSION MEETING (VĀDĀDHIKARAṄA)

(ii) The discussion meeting (*vādādhikaraṇa*) may be a royal court (*rājakula*) or an ordinary court (*prajākula*) or an assembly (*sabhā*) of qualified (*prāmānika*) śramaṇas and brāhmaṇas who are colleagues and learned in the meaning of the Dharma (*dharmaṛthakuśala*).

CDA.6.3.

SUJECT OF DISCUSSION (VĀDĀDHİŞTHĀNA)

(iii) The subject of discussion (*vādādhistiṣṭhāna*) is that on which the controversy is taking place. In general it is twofold: the thing to be proved (*sādhya*) and the proof (*sādhana*).

The thing to be proved is of two types: (1) natural (*svabhāva*) and (2) particular (*viśeṣa*).

There are eight types of proof (*sādhana*):

- (a) thesis (proposition, *pratijñā*),
- (b) reason (*hetu*),
- (c) example (*drṣṭānta*),
- (d) application (*upanaya*),
- (e) conclusion (*nigamana*),
- (f) direct cognition (*pratyakṣa*),
- (g) inference (indirect cognition, (*anumāna*) and

⁶⁰⁵ In Sanskrit the words *vāda*, *pravāda*, *vivāda*, *apavāda*, *anuvāda* and *avavāda*, thanks to prefixes, have different meanings, but are all derived from the root *vad* ‘to speak’ and are all related to one another. It is not possible to translate them into words derived from a single root.

⁶⁰⁶ It is the ordinary conversation of people.

⁶⁰⁷ The Tibetan version does not have ‘because it is...knowledge’.

(h) accepted tradition (*āptāgama*).

The nature of the thing to be proved (*sādhya*) can be its self-nature (*ātmavabhāva*) or the nature of the thing (*dharmasvabhāva*). The particularity can be its self-particularity (*ātmaviśeṣa*) or the particularity of the thing (*dharmaviśeṣa*).

- (a) The thesis (proposition) (*pratijñā*) is the communication (*vijñāpanā*) to others of the meaning preferred by oneself (*svarucitārtha*) of the thing to be proved (*sādhya*).
- (b) The reason (*hetu*) is the statement of the positive or negative experience chosen as the means to decide the not yet established meaning of the thing to be proved.
- (c) The example (*drṣṭānta*) is the comparison (*saṃkaraṇa*) of an unknown situation (*adrṣṭa-anta*) with a known situation (*drṣṭa-anta*).⁶⁰⁸
- (d) The application (*upanaya*) is the statement of agreement of the thesis with the interpretation by sages of the doctrine (*śiṣṭa*).
- (e) The conclusion (*nigamana*) is the statement of the final decision.
- (f) Direct cognition (*pratyakṣa*) is that which is perfectly clear in itself and nonerroneous.
- (g) Inference (indirect cognition) (*anumāna*) is belief based on the direct cognition of the sages.
- (h) Accepted tradition (*āptāgama*) is the teaching which is not contrary to the preceding two, i.e., not contrary to direct cognition and to inference.

CDA.6.4.

ORNAMENT OF DISCUSSION (*VĀDĀLAṄKĀRA*)

(iv) The ornament of discussion (*vādālaṅkāra*). A profoundly competent individual who properly deals with the subject under discussion before the assembly is called the ornament of the debate. The ornament of debate has six qualities:

- (1) knowledge of his own doctrine and also that of others (*svaparasamayajñata*),
- (2) perfection of eloquence (*vākkaraṇasampad*),
- (3) self-confidence (*vaiśāradya*),
- (4) liveliness of mind (*pratibhāna*),
- (5) steadiness (*sthairyā*) and
- (6) courtesy (*dākṣinīya*).

CDA.6.5.

DEFEAT IN THE DISCUSSION (*VĀDANIGRAHA*)

(v) Defeat in the discussion (*vādanigraha*) consists of

⁶⁰⁸ It is interesting to note here how the two words *drṣṭānta* (*drṣṭa+anta*) and *adrṣṭānta* (*adrṣṭa+anta*) are used to explain the meaning of *drṣṭānta* (example). The Tibetan version omits ‘with an unknown situation’.

- (1) magnanimous withdrawal from the discussion (*kathātyāga*),
 - (2) diversion in the discussion (*kathāsāda*) and
 - (3) error in the discussion (*kathādoṣa*).
- (1) Magnanimous withdrawal from the discussion (*kathātyāga*) is the recognition of one's own faults and the qualities of the adversary in the debate.
 - (2) Diversion of the discussion (*kathāsāda*) consists of moving away from the subject by taking refuge in another subject, of giving up the original thesis by dealing with an external subject or by showing anger, vanity, pride, hypocrisy, etc.
 - (3) As is said in the sūtra,⁶⁰⁹ error in debate (*kathādoṣa*) is, in brief, of nine kinds:
 - (i) confusion (*ākula*),
 - (ii) agitation (*samrabdha*),
 - (iii) unintelligibility (*agamaka*),
 - (iv) prolixity (*amita*),⁶¹⁰
 - (v) absence of meaning (*anarthaka*),
 - (vi) inopportunity (*akāla*),⁶¹¹
 - (vii) instability (*asthra*),⁶¹²
 - (viii) lack of clarity (luminosity) (*apradīpta*) and
 - (ix) lack of relativity (*aprababaddha*).⁶¹³

CDA.6.6.

EXIT FROM THE DISCUSSION (*VĀDANIHSARĀNA*)

(vi) Exit from the discussion (*vādanihsarāna*). Having considered the good and bad aspects, one withdraws from the discussion without taking part in it. Or, having understood the incompetence of the adversary, the inferiority of the assembly, or one's own incapability, one does not take part in the debate. Or, having understood the competence of the adversary, the quality of the assembly and one's own capability, one takes part in the debate.

⁶⁰⁹ This sūtra has not been identified.

⁶¹⁰ I.e., the case where the speeches are too long, 'limitless'.

⁶¹¹ To say certain things that should not be said at that particular moment.

⁶¹² I.e., the case when one changes opinion very frequently during the course of the discussion.

⁶¹³ I.e., discontinuity between different parts of the argument.

THE QUALITIES THAT ARE VERY USEFUL IN DEBATE (*VĀDE BAHUKĀRĀ DHARMĀḤ*)

(vii) **The qualities that are very useful in debate (*vāde bahukārā dharmāḥ*)** are, in brief, three in number:

- (a) the knowledge of one's own doctrine and that of others (*svaparasamayajñatā*) thanks to which one can take part in any debate no matter where;
- (b) self-confidence (*vaiśāradya*) thanks to which one can take part in any debate no matter in what assembly;
- (c) liveliness of mind (*pratibhāna*) thanks to which one can answer all difficult questions.

Furthermore, the person who desires his own edification should engage in debate with the aim of developing his knowledge and not to dispute with others.

The Blessed One has said in the *Mahāyānābhidharma-sūtra*: ‘A bodhisattva who cultivates energy, who is engaged in what is wholesome (*kuśala*), who values the practice of virtue (*pratipatti*), who practices the major and minor qualities, who helps all beings, who should soon attain complete perfect enlightenment, must not dispute with others for twelve reasons,’ (lit., seeing clearly twelve reasons).

What are these twelve reasons?

1. Rare is the belief in the teachings of the supreme doctrine which contains the incomparable meaning.
2. Rare is the mind among the questioners that accepts advice.
3. Rare are those who courteously examine virtue and vice (good and bad qualities).
4. Rare is the absence of the six errors among those engaged in a debate. **What are these six errors?**
 - (a) adherence to the wrong side,
 - (b) deceitful speech,
 - (c) untimely speech,
 - (d) diversion in debate,
 - (e) coarse speech and
 - (f) spitefulness of mind.
5. Rare is the absence of being carried away in debate.
6. Rare is the appreciation of another's point of view.
7. Even when there is appreciation, rare is the concentration of mind.
8. Rare is the willingness to admit one's own defeat and another's victory in a debate.

9. Even when one admits one's own defeat and another's victory, rare is the purity (absence of defilement) of mind.
10. When mind is defiled, rare is happy existence (*sparśavihāra*)
11. When there is no happy existence, rare is the cultivation of the wholesome (*kuśala*).
12. When there is no constant cultivation of the wholesome, rare is the rapid attainment of concentration by a person whose mind is not calm or the rapid attainment of liberation by a person whose mind is calm.

CDA.7.

ASCERTAINMENT OF THE PROFOUND MEANING (ABHISAMDHIVINIŚCAYA)

7. What is the ascertainment of the profound (hidden) meaning (*abhisamdhiviniścaya*)?⁶¹⁴

It is the transformation of the meaning expressed by the groups of names, words and consonants (*nāmapadavyañjanakāya*) to make the hidden sense, which is different from the first, apparent.

It is said in the sūtra: ‘A man who has killed his mother and father, the king and the two learned ones (brahmins)⁶¹⁵ and who has destroyed the kingdom with its ministers, is called very pure.’⁶¹⁶

Again it is said in the sūtra: ‘He who has no faith (*aśraddha*),⁶¹⁷ who is ungrateful (*akṛtajñā*),⁶¹⁸ he who robs by breaking and entering (*sandhicchedin*),⁶¹⁹ who has destroyed space (*hatāvakāśa*)⁶²⁰ and who loathes aspiration (*vantāśa*)⁶²¹ is truly the noblest of men.⁶²²

⁶¹⁴ For the four kinds of *abhisandhi* – *avatāraṇabhisandhi*, *lakṣaṇābhīsandhi*, *pratipakṣābhīsandhi* and *parināmanābhīsandhi* – see Sūtrālaṅkāra, XII, 16, 17. See also Saṃgraha, p. [].

⁶¹⁵ According to the Tibetan version: two śrotriya brahmins’. Dhp XXI, 6 also says: *dve ca sotthiye*.

⁶¹⁶ Cf. Dhp XXI, 5: *mātaram pitaram hantvā rājāno dve ca khattiye / ratṭham sānuvaraṇam hantvā anīgho yāti brāhmaṇo*. ‘Having killed his mother and father, the two warrior kings, and having destroyed the kingdom with its ministers, the brahmin is free of suffering.’

Here ‘mother’ means ‘thirst’ (*trṣṇā*, desire), ‘father’ means ‘ignorance (*avidyā*) or ‘pride of I-am’ (*asmimāna*), ‘the two kings’ means ‘the two wrong views’ eternalism (*śāsvatadrṣṭi*) and nihilism (*ucchedadrṣṭi*), the ‘kingdom with its ministers’ means ‘the six sense organs and their external objects (*dvādaśāyatana*) with attachment (*mandīrāga*)’.

Thus the real (hidden) meaning is: Having destroyed desire and ignorance (or pride) and the two wrong views of eternalism and nihilism, and the twelve spheres (*āyatana*) with attachment, an arhat (brahmin) goes to *nirvāṇa* free of suffering.’

It is interesting to note here that the brahmins claimed that a brahmin was blameless no matter what he did. Here the Buddha uses the term ‘brāhmaṇa’ to mean an arhat, and he speaks symbolically.

⁶¹⁷ The evident meaning is ‘he who has no faith or confidence’, but the hidden meaning is ‘he who is not gullible, so does not accept things on hear-say, out of belief, because he knows them by his own direct cognition.’

⁶¹⁸ The evident meaning is ‘ungrateful’ (*a-kṛtajñā*), but the hidden meaning is ‘he who knows the uncreated’ (*akṛta-jñā*), i.e., he who knows the absolute, *nirvāṇa*..

Again it is said in the sūtra: ‘Those who consider the non-essential as essential, who are well settled on the wrong side, who are thoroughly stained by their defilements, obtain supreme awakening.’⁶²³

Furthermore, it is said in the sūtra: ‘The bodhisattva, the great being, endowed with five qualities, quickly accomplishes the perfection of generosity (*dānapāramitā*).’ **What are these five qualities?** ‘(1) He cultivates (realizes) the nature of greed (*mātsaryadharmatā*),⁶²⁴ (2) he becomes weary with generosity,⁶²⁵ (3) he hates those who ask (*yācaka*),⁶²⁶ (4) he never gives a little,⁶²⁷ and (5) he is far from generosity.⁶²⁸

⁶¹⁹ The ordinary meaning is ‘robbery by breaking and entering’, but the hidden meaning is ‘he who has put an end (cut) (*chedin*) to the linkage (rebirth) (*sandhi* = *pratisandhi*).’

⁶²⁰ Literally, “he who has destroyed space”. The hidden meaning is ‘he who has put an end to the occasion of doing good and bad actions’. This means an arhat is free from good and bad karma.

⁶²¹ The hidden meaning is ‘he who has abandoned all desire’.

⁶²² Thus the *abhisandhi* or profound and hidden meaning of this verse is: ‘he who does not accept things on faith (because he knows them himself with his own direct knowledge), who knows the uncreated (*nirvāṇa*), who has put an end to rebirth, who has destroyed the occasion for producing good and bad karma, and who has abandoned all desire, is truly the noblest of men’.

Cf. Dhp. VII, 8, has exactly the same verse: *assaddho akataññū sandhicchedo ca yo naro / hatāvakāso vantāso sa ve uttamaporiso*.

⁶²³ This verse is cited as an example of *pariṇāmanābhīsandhi* in the Sūtrālankāra, p. 82: *asāre sāramatayo vipayāse susthitāḥ / kleśena ca susamkliṣṭā labhante bodhim uttamām*. This verse is also found in the Saṃgraha, p. 132.

The evident meaning of the word *asāra* is ‘non-essential’, but here it means *avikṣepa* ‘absence of distraction’, thus ‘concentration’. *Viśāra* (*vi+sṛ* ‘to go’, ‘to move’) means ‘distraction’, thus *asāra* means ‘non-distraction, concentration’.

The ordinary meaning of the word *viparyāsa* is ‘opposite’, ‘fault’, ‘error’, but here it is the opposite of the wrong idea of a permanent, happy, pure self (*nityasukhaśucyātagrāhaviparyayena*), i.e., the opposite of the idea of self, hence *nairātmya*. (It is interesting to compare the word *paṭisotagāmi* ‘counter-current’ which is used to describe the Buddha’s teaching. For example, M I, p. 168.)

Kleśa usually means ‘defilement’, ‘passion’. but here it means ‘sustained effort’, ‘difficult practice’, *duṣkaravyāyāma*. (Root *kliś* ‘to torment’, ‘to afflict’, ‘to suffer’). *Samkliṣṭa* = *parikliṣṭa* ‘wearied’.

Thus the hidden meaning (*abhisandhi*) of the verse is: ‘Those who consider mental stabilization as the essential thing, who are well settled in the idea of non-self, who are wearied by effort (i.e., who make great efforts), attain supreme awakening.’

Cf. also Dhp I, 11: *asāre sāramatino sāre cāsāradassino / te sāraṇā nādhigacchanti micchāsaṅkappagocarā*. But this has little to do with the verse cited.

⁶²⁴ By destroying the *anuśaya* and the *vāsanā* of greed (*mātsarya*), the bodhisattva realizes the *dharmatā* and *tathatā* of greed and obtains the *āśrayaparāvṛtti*. Thus he realizes *mātsaryadharmatā*, ‘the nature of greed’.

⁶²⁵ In order to practice generosity for a long time, he undergoes many difficulties and thus tires himself out with generosity.

⁶²⁶ Here *yācaka* means *ātmagrāha* ‘grasping at self’.

⁶²⁷ I.e., he gives everything at every moment.

Again it is said in the sūtra: ‘The bodhisattva, the great being, endowed with five qualities, becomes chaste (*brahmacārin*), possessing completely pure chastity. What are these five qualities? He does not seek freedom from sexual relations except in *maithuna*;⁶²⁹ he is not interested (*upekṣaka*) in giving up sexual relations;⁶³⁰ he gives himself up to his innate desire for sexual relations;⁶³¹ he is frightened by the teaching opposed to sexual relations;⁶³² and he frequently enages in *dvayadvaya* (copulation).’⁶³³

CDA.8.

THE REASON FOR THE NAME OF THE COMPENDIUM OF THE SUPER-DOCTRINE

Why is this treatise called the Compendium of the Super-Doctrine (*Abhidharmasamuccaya*)?

In brief, for three reasons:⁶³⁴

- (1) because it is a collection made with comprehension (*sametyoccaya*),
- (2) because it is an entire collection (of all the aspects) (*samantād uccaya*), and
- (3) because it is a complete collection (*samyag uccaya*).

The Fourth Compendium
entitled The Ascertainment of Dialectic
in the Compendium of the Super-Doctrine
is herein completed⁶³⁵

⁶²⁸ He does not await, he does not accept the results of generosity. Thus he is far from generosity.

⁶²⁹ Here *maithuna* means *yathābhūtaparijñāna* (knowledge of things such as they are).

⁶³⁰ He considers *prahāṇa-upekṣa* as not being a means of *brahamcarya*.

⁶³¹ When desire arises in him, he gives himself over to the effort of driving it away.

⁶³² I.e., he frightens others by the teaching opposed to *maithuna*.

⁶³³ Here *dvayadvaya* means ‘relationship of two’, i.e., *laukikalokottaramārga* ‘mundane and supramundane path’ and *śamatha-vipāśyanā* ‘mental stabilization and insight’.

⁶³⁴ ‘In brief... reasons’ does not occur in the Tibetan version.

⁶³⁵ Tibetan version: *chos mion pa kun las btus pa slob dpon thogs med kyis mjad pa rjogs ste*: ‘Here is finished the *Abhidharmasamuccaya* of Achārya Asaṅga’.

ABBREVIATIONS

D. ABREVIATIONS

A = *Ānguttaranikāya* (PTS ed.)

Abhisamuc = *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, ed. V.V. Gokhale (Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, NS, vol. 23, 1947), and Prahad Pradhan (Visvabharati, Santiniketan, 1950).

Abhisangaha = *Abhidhammatthasangaha*, ed. Devamitta (Colombo, 1929).

Bureau: Les Sectes = *Les Sectes Bouddhiques du Petit Véhicule* by André Bareau (EFEO, Saigon, 1955).

BEFEO = Bulletin of the EFEO.

BHS = Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit, Edgerton.

Bodhbhūmi = *Bodhisattvabhūmi*, ed. U. Wogihara, Tokyo, 1930.

D = *Dīghanikāya* (PTS ed.).

Daśabhūmi = *Daśabhūmikāśūtra* (Paris and Louvain, 1926).

Dhp = *Dhammapada* (PTS ed.).

DhpA = *Dhp Aṭṭhakathā*, the commentary on the Dhp.

Dhs = *Dhammasaṅgani* (PTS)

DhsA = Commentary on the Dhs (PTS).

EFEO = École Française d'Extrême-Orient.

Hist. Bud. Cey. = *History of Buddhism in Ceylon* by Walpola Rahula (M.D. Gunasena & Co., Colombo, 1956).

Hist. Ind. Lit. = *A History of Indian Literature*, by M. Winteritz (Calcutta, vol. I, 1927; vol. II, 1933).

Ind. Hist. Qu. = *Indian Historical Quarterly*.

Itv = *Itivuttaka* (PTS)

Jat = *Jātaka*, ed. Fausboll (London, 1877).

JRAS = Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society.

Kathā = *Kathāvatthu* (PTS).

Kośa = *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*, transl. and annotated by Louis de la Vallée Poussin (Paris, 1923-1931).

Kośakārikā = *Abhidharmakośakārikā of Vasubandhu*, ed. V.V. Gokhale (JRAS, Bombay Branch, vol. 22, 1946).

M = *Majjhimanikaṭṭya* (PTS).

MA = Commentary on MA (PTS).

Nd2 = *Cullaniddesa* (PTS).

Pañcavim = *Pañcavimśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā*, ed. Nalinaksa Dutt (Luzac & Co., London, 1934).

Paramajo = *Paramatthajotikā* (PTS).

Pradhan = *Abhidharmasamuccaya of Asanga*, ed. Pradhan (Santiniketan, 1950)

PTS = Pali Text Society of London.

Pug = *Puggalapaññatti* (PTS).

S = *Samyuttanikāya* (PTS).

Sandhi = *Sandhinirmocanasūtra*, l'Explication des Mystères, Tibetan text, ed. and transl. by Étienne Lamotte (Louvain and Paris, 1935).

Samgraha = *La Somme du Grand Véhicule d'Asanga (Mahāyanasamgraha)*, transl. by Étienne Lamotte (Louvain, 1938).

Smp = *Samantapāsādikā*, Commentary on the Vinaya (Colombo), 1900).

Sn = *Suttanipāta* (PTS).

SnA = Commentary on the Sn (PTS).

Sūtralaṅkāra = *Mahāyanasūtralaṅkāra*, ed. Sylvain Lévi (Paris, 1907).

Trimśikā = *Vijñāptimātratāsiddhi*, two treatises of Vasubandhu, *Vimśatikā* and *Triṃśikā*, by Sylvain Lévi (Paris, 1925).

The Life = *The Life of Vasubandhu by Paramārtha* (A.D. 499-599), transl. by J. Takakusu (T'oung-pao, 1904, or E.J. Brill, Leyden, 1904).

Ud = *Udāna* (PTS).

Vbh = *Vibhaṅga* (PTS).

Vsm = *Visuddhimagga* (PTS).